

SECTION VII

AIR CONDITIONING

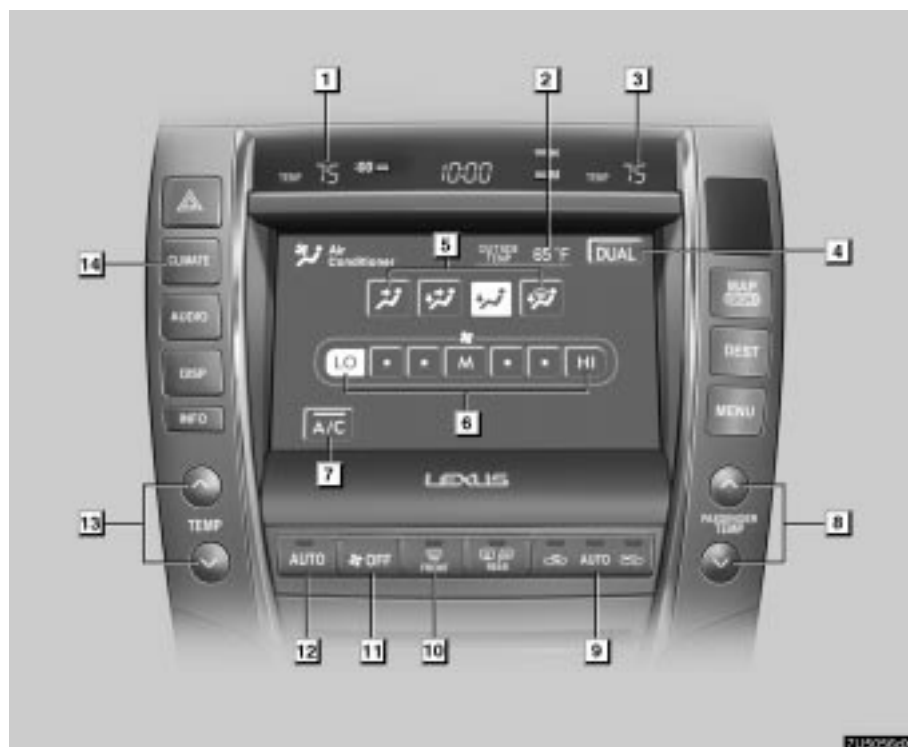
Air conditioning

- [Automatic air conditioning controls](#)

*For information about the “Rear window defogger”,
please refer to the “Owner’s Manual”.*

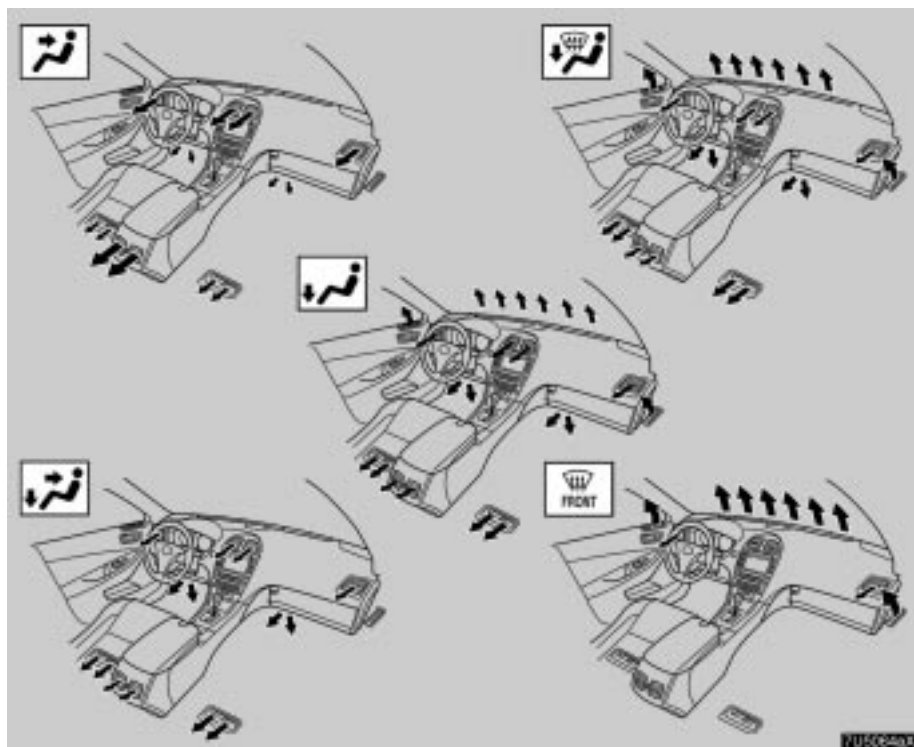


Automatic air conditioning controls



- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1 Driver side temperature display 236</p> <p>2 Outside temperature display 242</p> <p>3 Passenger side temperature display 236</p> <p>4 "DUAL"
(Temperature setting mode change touch-screen button) 237</p> <p>5 Air flow control touch-screen buttons 238</p> <p>6 Fan speed control touch-screen buttons 239</p> | <p>7 "A/C" 241</p> <p>8 "PASSENGER TEMP" buttons
(Passenger side temperature control button)
(Only for the independent mode that display shows "DUAL"; mainly for front passenger and secondarily for driver) 236</p> <p>9 Air intake control button 239</p> <p>10 Windshield air flow button 241</p> <p>11 "OFF" button 235</p> |
|--|--|

-
- 12** “**AUTO**” button 235
- 13** “**TEMP**” buttons
(Driver side temperature control button) (At the independent mode that display shows “**DUAL**”; mainly or driver and secondarily for front passenger)
(At the linked mode that display does not show “**DUAL**”; for driver)
..... 236
- 14** “**CLIMATE**” button
(Air conditioning operation screen display button) 235



► Air flow selection

The automatic air conditioning automatically maintains the set temperature.

In the automatic operation mode, the air conditioning selects the most suitable fan speed, air flow, air intake and on-off the air conditioning according to the temperature.

The engine switch must be in the "ON" mode.

"CLIMATE": Push this button to display touch-screen buttons for automatic air conditioning controls.

NOTICE

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the air conditioning on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

(a) Climate control

SETTING OPERATION - automatic control



1. Push the "AUTO" button.

An indicator light will illuminate to show that the automatic operation mode has been selected.

Air flow quantity, switching of the diffusers, on-off of the air conditioning and switching of the air intake between RECIRCULATED AIR and OUTSIDE AIR are automatically adjusted. When you push the "AUTO" button with the air intake mode at OUTSIDE AIR, internal circulation may be applied for maximum cooling. The operation status is shown by each indicator and display.

When one of the manual control buttons is depressed while operating in automatic mode, the operation corresponding to the depressed button is set. Other conditions continue to be adjusted automatically.

Push the "OFF" button to turn the air conditioning system off.

INFORMATION

- This automatic control has additional function as described below, when the "AUTO" button is pushed.

The fan speed is stopped for a little while until warm air preparation, when outside temperature is cold like a winter season in the "Floor", "Bi-level" or "Floor/Windshield" air flow mode. If quick removal for exterior frost, fog and inside fog on the windshield is desired, use the high fan speed setting after the "Windshield" air flow mode has been selected.

The fan speed is stopped few seconds until cool air preparation, when outside temperature is hot like a summer season in the "Panel" or "Bi-level" air flow mode.

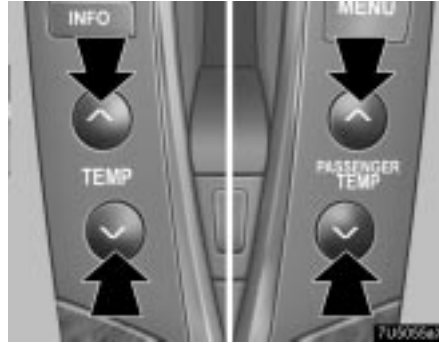
- The internal circulation may be applied for maximum cooling in the automatic operation mode, when outside temperature is hot like a summer season.

If fresh outside air is desired into the vehicle, push the air intake control button to select the OUTSIDE AIR mode.

- The "Floor/Windshield" air flow mode may be applied automatically, if the outside temperature is lowered down to below 5°C (41°F).

This is not malfunction. The "Floor/Windshield" air flow mode turns on the defogging and defrosting function with the purpose of cleaning your front view for safe driving.

If the "Floor" air flow mode is desired with the main purpose of heating, "Floor" air flow mode can be selected manually by touching the air flow control button.



2. Use the "TEMP" or "PASSENGER TEMP" button to set the desired vehicle interior temperature.

The "TEMP" or "PASSENGER TEMP" selector button is used to set the desired interior temperature. The interior temperature will be controlled on the driver and passenger side room zones simultaneously or individually.

To increase the interior temperature, push the "▲" side, to decrease it, push the "▼" side.

If quick heating or cooling is desired —

"LO" appears when you hold it until maximum cooling (decrease), and "HI" appears when you hold it until maximum warming (increase).

"TEMP" button — Changes the temperature on the driver and passenger sides simultaneously or the driver side only.

"PASSENGER TEMP" button — Changes the temperature settings separate from the driver side.



“DUAL” —

This button is used to set the temperatures independently for the driver's seat and front passenger seat.

Touching the button changes from the independent mode to the linked mode.

Independent mode: Temperatures can be set independently for the driver's seat and front passenger's seat. The indicator will come on to show that the independent mode has been selected.

Linked mode: The same temperature is set for the driver's seat and front passenger's seat. The indicator will come off to show that the simultaneous temperature setting mode has been selected.

When the temperature for the front passenger's seat is changed in linked mode, the mode is changed automatically to independent mode.

INFORMATION

Knowledge for the two-temperature selector operation:

This air conditioning system has two independent temperature selectors: left and right (for the use of driver and front passenger respectively).

- *There are cases where the temperature of the airflow may not accurately correlate on the driver and front passenger side according to circumstances, even if the left and right temperature selectors are set at the same temperature. If this situation occurs, use the fine tune operation to adjust the air temperature on one side.*
- *There are cases where one or both of the airflow temperatures may not accurately correlate with the set temperature according to circumstances, when the airflow temperature settings on the left and right are substantially different. For example, if the left controller is set at central or neutral temperature while the right one is set at maximum heating or maximum cooling, or vice versa. If this situation occurs, use the fine tune operation to adjust the air temperature on each side.*



- ➡ Driver side setting air flow
- ➡ Passenger side setting air flow
- ⇒ Mixed air flow

SETTING OPERATION — manual control

When one of the manual control touch-screen buttons is depressed while operating in automatic mode, the operation corresponding to the depressed button is set. Other conditions continue to be adjusted automatically.

If manual air flow selection is desired —



The outlets from which air is delivered can be selected manually by touching the touch-screen button. The function of each mode is as follows:

- 1 Panel** — Air flows mainly from the instrument panel vents and rear vents.
- 2 Bi-level** — Air flows from both the floor vents, instrument panel vents and rear vents.
- 3 Floor** — Air flows mainly from the floor vents and rear vents.
- 4 Floor/windshield** — Air flows mainly from the floor vents, windshield vents and rear vents.

When you set the temperature selector setting at about the middle in automatic operation, warm air flows out of the floor vents and relatively low-temperature air flows out of the instrument panel vents and rear vents.

Take in the fresh air with selecting the OUTSIDE AIR mode by the air intake control button.

The selected mode is highlighted.

If manual fan speed control is desired —



- **1** Fan speed at low
- 2** Fan speed at high

The fan speed can be set to your desired speed by touching the appropriate fan speed control button.

The higher the fan speed is, the more air is delivered.

Pushing the “OFF” button turns the fan off.

To remove the exterior windshield frost and interior windshield fog, use the high speed setting.

The selected mode is highlighted.

If manual switching of air intake is desired —



Each time you push the air intake control button, the mode changes in order from the RECIRCULATED AIR mode to AUTOMATIC mode to OUTSIDE AIR mode, then back to the RECIRCULATED AIR mode. Each indicator light shows which mode is now selected.

- 1** **RECIRCULATED AIR mode** — If quick circulation of cooled air is desired, select this mode.
- 2** **EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode** — If the outside air contains harmful substances like exhaust gas (i.e., when the vehicle running just in front of your vehicle accelerates rapidly), the system changes automatically from the OUTSIDE AIR mode (with indicators **2** and **3** on) to the RECIRCULATED AIR mode (with indicators **1** and **2** on).
- 3** **OUTSIDE AIR mode** — The system will take fresh outside air into the vehicle.

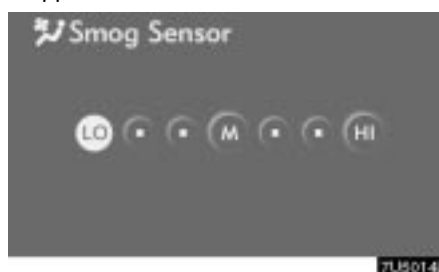
Turning off the air conditioning manually will cancel the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode. If you select the "AUTO" mode during fan operating, the air conditioning turns on and the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode will operate.

For normal use, it is best to keep the air intake control button set to OUTSIDE AIR mode. If recirculated air is used during heating, the windows will fog up more easily.

To change the sensitivity of the sensor switching between the RECIRCULATED AIR and OUTSIDE AIR in the AUTOMATIC mode, push the air intake control button and hold it for a few seconds.

The "Smog Sensor" screen will be displayed.

The sensitivity of the sensor can be adjusted only while the vehicle has been stopped.

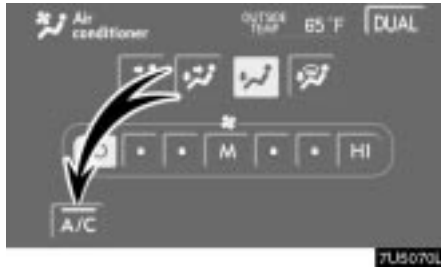


The sensitivity of the touch-screen button is set to be higher toward "HI" and lower toward "LO".

Touch the desired button on the screen.

When you push the "AUTO" button, the above screen goes off.

If manual on-off of the air conditioning is desired —



Touch “A/C” to turn the air conditioning on and touch it again to turn the air conditioning off. If you turn off the air conditioning manually, the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode will be cancelled.

If the outside temperature is below 5°C (41°F), the air conditioning will turn off automatically. At this time, the indicator on “A/C” is off and the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC indicator light remains on. However, the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode does not operate. When the air conditioning turns on as with the raised temperature, the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode resumes.

If the system is used for ventilation, heating in dry weather or removing frost or exterior fog on the windshield, turn the air conditioning off once it is no longer required. This will improve fuel economy. The air conditioning can be used for year-round automatic temperature control including cooling and dehumidifying operation.

If the air conditioning compressor does not operate, the indicator of “A/C” will blink. If the indicator of “A/C” blinks even when “A/C” is touched again, have the compressor checked by your Lexus dealer.

If the engine coolant temperature becomes extremely high, the air conditioning may shut off automatically to resolve emergency situation for engine cooling. This is not a malfunction. When the engine coolant temperature is lowered, the air conditioning comes on automatically.

(b) Windshield defogging and defrosting

To remove interior fog on the windshield —



Push the windshield air flow button.

To remove frost or exterior fog on the windshield—

1. Push the **"TEMP"** ("**^**") button to set the **"HI"**.
2. Push the windshield air flow button.

When the windshield air flow button is pushed, air flows mainly from the windshield vents and turns on the defogging function with the purpose of clearing the front view.

Pushing the windshield air flow button turns on the defroster-linked air conditioning. At this time, the indicator of **"A/C"** comes on regardless of whether or not **"A/C"** is touched in. This is to clean up the front view more quickly.

Pushing this button once again returns the air flow mode to the last one used.

This button automatically changes the air intake mode to select the **OUTSIDE AIR** mode. This clears the front view more quickly. It is not possible to return to **RE-CIRCULATED AIR** mode when the windshield air flow button is on.

**CAUTION**

Do not use the windshield air flow button during cooled air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up blocking your vision.

(c) Outside temperature display**Outside temperature is displayed on the screen.**

The displayed temperature ranges from -40°C (-40°F) up to 50°C (122°F).

If the temperature shows **"-"** or **"E"**, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

(d) Operating tips

- To cool off your Lexus after it has been parked in the hot sun, drive with the windows open for a few minutes. After the excess heat has blown away, close the windows. This vents the hot air, allowing the air conditioning to cool the interior more quickly.
- Make sure the air intake grilles in front of the windshield are not blocked (by leaves or snow, for example).
- If air flow control is not satisfactory, check the air outlets. (See "(e) Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets".)
- On humid days, do not blow cold air on the windshield. The windshield could fog up because of the difference in air temperature on the inside and outside of the windshield.
- Keep the area under the front seats clear to allow air to circulate throughout the vehicle.
- On cold days, set the fan speed to high for a minute to help clear the intake ducts of snow or moisture. This can reduce the amount of fogging on the windows.
- When driving on dusty roads, close all windows. If dust thrown up by the vehicle is still drawn into the vehicle after closing the windows, it is recommended that the air intake control button be set to the OUTSIDE AIR mode to take in the fresh air and set the fan speed selector to any setting except OFF.
- If following another vehicle on a dusty road, or driving in windy and dusty conditions, it is recommended that the air intake control button be temporarily pressed in to the RECIRCULATED AIR mode, which will close off the outside passage and prevent outside air and dust from entering the vehicle interior.

Heating

For best results, set controls to:

For automatic operation —

Push in the "AUTO" button.
Temperature — To the desired temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air conditioning — OFF

For manual operation —

Fan speed — To the desired fan speed
Temperature — Towards high temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — FLOOR
Air conditioning — OFF

- For quick heating, select RECIRCULATED AIR mode for a few minutes. To keep the windows from fogging, select OUTSIDE AIR mode after the vehicle interior has been warmed.
- Touch "A/C" on for dehumidified heating.
- Choose floor/windshield air flow to heat the vehicle interior while defrosting or defogging the windshield.

Air conditioning

For best results, set controls to:

For automatic operation —

Push in the “AUTO” button.
Temperature — To the desired temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air conditioning — ON

For manual operation —

Fan speed — To the desired fan speed
Temperature — Towards low temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — PANEL
Air conditioning — ON

- For quick cooling, select RECIRCULATED AIR mode for a few minutes.

Ventilation

For best results, set controls to:

For automatic operation —

Push in the “AUTO” button.
Temperature — Towards low temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air conditioning — OFF

For manual operation —

Fan speed — To the desired fan speed
Temperature — Towards low temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — PANEL
Air conditioning — OFF

Defogging and defrosting**- The inside of the windshield**

For best results, set controls to:

For automatic operation —

Temperature — Towards high temperature to heat; low temperature to cool
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — WINDSHIELD

For manual operation —

Fan speed — To the desired fan speed
Temperature — Towards high temperature to heat; low temperature to cool
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — WINDSHIELD

When the windshield air flow button is pushed, air flows mainly from the windshield vents and turns on the defogging function with the purpose of clearing the front view.

Pushing the windshield air flow button turns on the defroster-linked air conditioning. At this time, the indicator of “A/C” comes on regardless of whether or not “A/C” is touched in. This is to clean up the front view more quickly.

Pushing this button once again returns the air flow mode to the last one used.

This button allows the air intake to select OUTSIDE AIR mode automatically. This is to clean up the front view more quickly. It is not possible to return to RECIRCULATED AIR mode when the windshield air flow button is on.

- On humid days, do not blow cold air on the windshield - the difference between the outside and inside temperatures could make the fogging worse.

- The outside of the windshield

For best results, set controls to:

For automatic operation —

Temperature — Towards high temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — WINDSHIELD

For manual operation —

Fan speed — To the desired fan speed
Temperature — Towards high temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — WINDSHIELD

When the windshield air flow button is pushed, air flows mainly from the windshield vents and turns on the defogging function with the purpose of clearing the front view.

Pushing the windshield air flow button turns on the defroster-linked air conditioning. At this time, the indicator of "A/C" comes on regardless of whether or not "A/C" is touched in. This is to clean up the front view more quickly.

Pushing this button once again returns the air flow mode to the last one used.

This button allows the air intake to select OUTSIDE AIR mode automatically. This is to clean up the front view more quickly. It is not possible to return to RECIRCULATED AIR mode when the windshield air flow button is on.

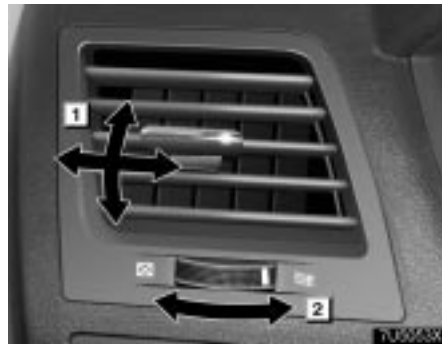
- To heat the vehicle interior while defrosting the windshield, choose floor/windshield air flow.

(e) Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets



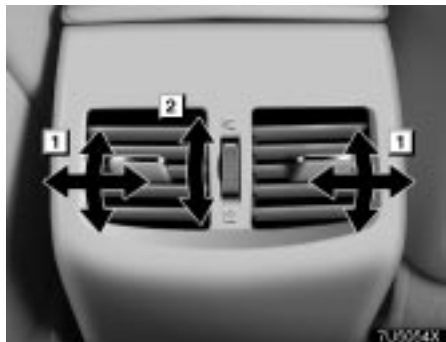
► Center outlets

- 1 Adjusting air flow direction



► Side outlets

- 1 Adjusting air flow direction
- 2 Open or close the vent



► **Rear seat outlets**

- 1** Adjusting air flow direction
- 2** Adjusting air flow direction or, open or close the vent

If air flow control is not satisfactory, check the center vents, side vents and rear vents. They may be opened or closed as shown.

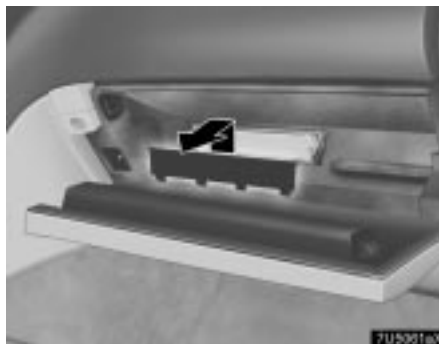
When outside temperature is cold like a winter season, air flow temperature from the center vents, side vents and rear vents may not be warmed up enough for a while until that the engine coolant temperature becomes high enough.

If air flow from the center vents, side vents and rear vents is not satisfactory, air flow direction can be changed manually by adjusting the vents fin direction or the vents may be closed.

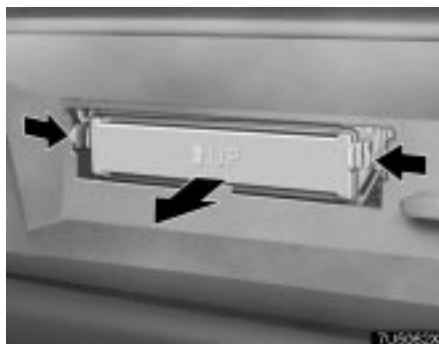
(f) Checking and replacing the air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

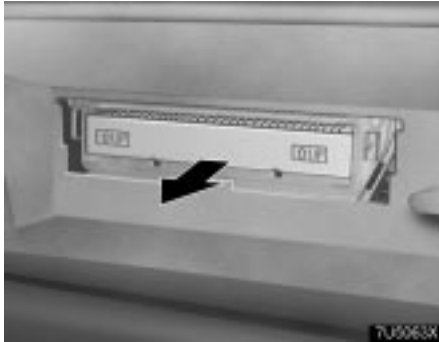
1. Turn the engine switch OFF.



2. Open the glove box. Remove the glove box cover.



3. Remove the filter cover.

**4. Remove the filter.**

Be sure that the correct side of the filter faces up when installing it.

Changing interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".)

If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

INFORMATION

The air conditioning filter should be installed properly in position. The use of air conditioning with the filter removed may cause deteriorated dustproof performance and then affect air conditioning performance.

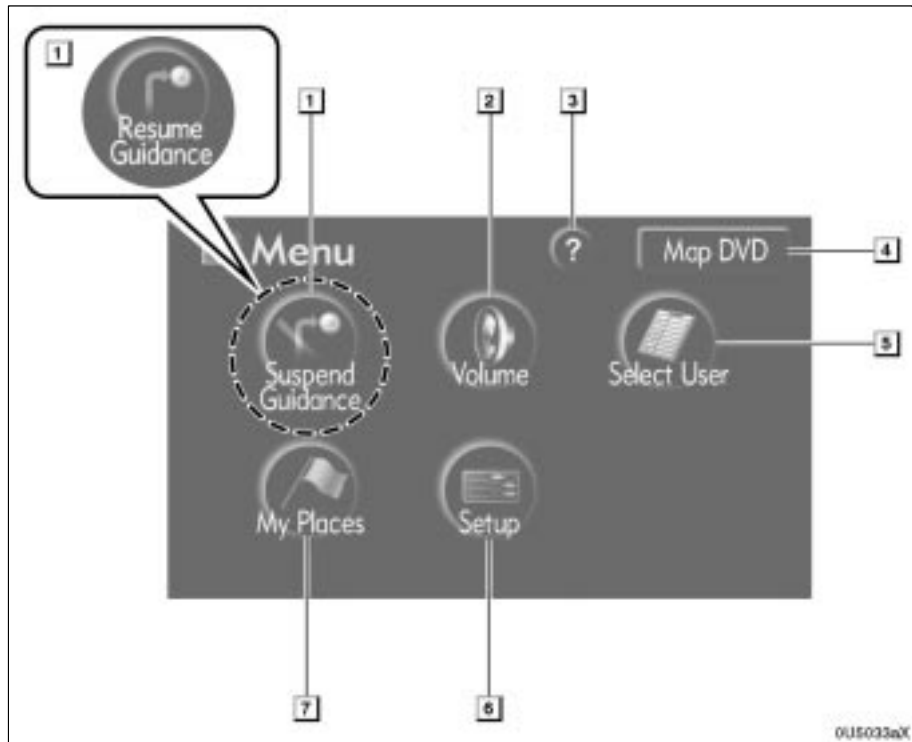
SECTION IV

ADVANCED FUNCTIONS

Descriptions of functions for more effective use

- Quick reference ("Menu" screen)
- Quick reference ("Setup" screen)
- Suspending and resuming guidance
- Volume
- User selection
- My places Registering memory points Editing memory points Deleting memory points Registering home Deleting home Registering area to avoid Editing area to avoid Deleting area to avoid Deleting previous points
- Setup

Quick reference (“Menu” screen)



1 “Suspend Guidance” and “Resume Guidance”

Suspends or resumes guidance. 66

2 “Volume”

Sets the volume for voice guidance.
 67

3 “?”

Function help for the “Menu” screen can be
 viewed on this screen. 7

4 “Map DVD”

Displays information regarding the disc
 version or covered area. 274

5 “Select User”

Up to 3 different settings for different users
 can be memorized. 68

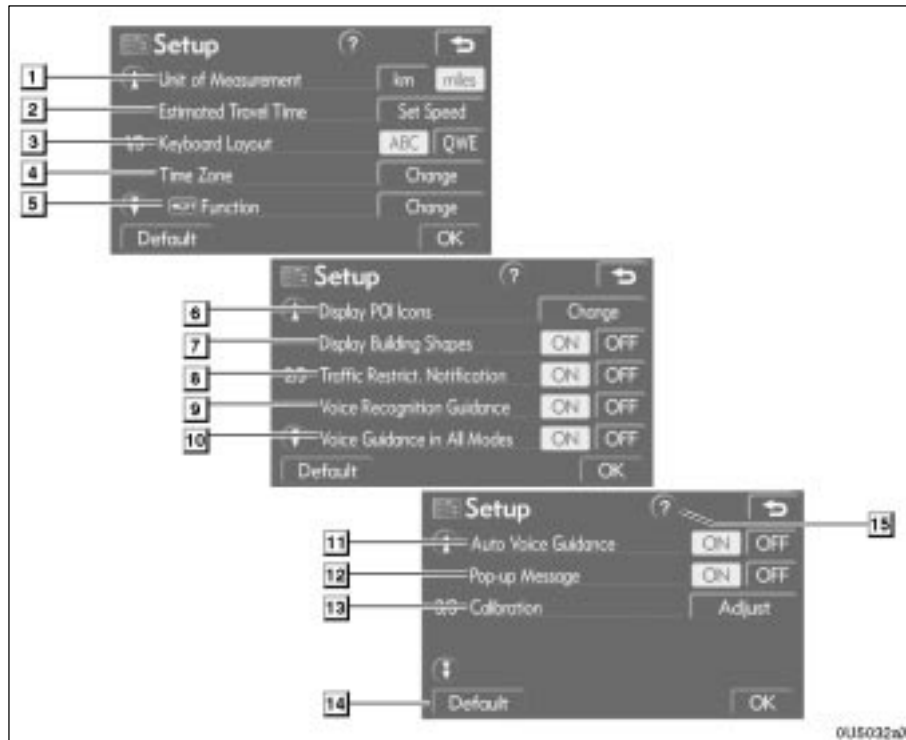
6 “Setup”

Enables various settings for the navigation
 system. 65, 83

7 “My Places”

Enables changes to “Memory points”,
 “Home” and “Areas to avoid”. Enables
 deletion of the previous point. 70

Quick reference (“Setup” screen)



1 “Unit of Measurement”

The distance units “km” or “miles” can be selected. 84

2 “Estimated Travel Time”

The system to display the travel time and the arrival time to the destination on the route guidance screen can be set. 84

3 “Keyboard Layout”

Key layout can be changed. 85

4 “Time Zone”

The desired time zone can be selected. 86

5 “ Function”

The choice whether to display each touch-screen button and current street name on the map screen can be set. 87

6 “Display POI Icons”

A selection of 6 icons displayed on the “Display POI Icons” top screen is possible. 87

7 “Display Building Shapes”

Selection of either ON or OFF to display the building shape on the map screen is possible. 88

8 “Traffic Restrict. Notification”

Notification of seasonal restrictions can be selected. 89

9 “Voice Recognition Guidance”

Voice recognition guidance can be set. 89

10 “Voice Guidance in All Modes”

Voice guidance can be set in all modes. 90

11 “Auto Voice Guidance”

Automatic voice guidance can be set. 90

12 “Pop-up Message”

Selection of either ON or OFF to display the pop-up message is possible. . . . 91

13 “Calibration”

Adjustment of the current vehicle position mark can be done manually. 92

14 “Default”

This touch-screen button initializes all of the settings. 83

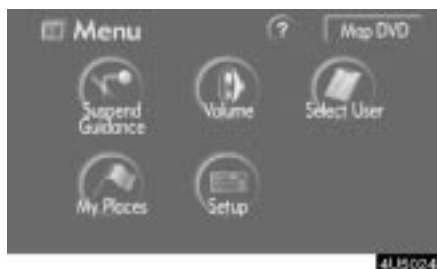
15 “?”

Function help for the “Setup” screen can be viewed. 7

Suspending and resuming guidance

- To suspend guidance

1. Push the “MENU” button.



2. Touch “Suspend Guidance”.

INFORMATION

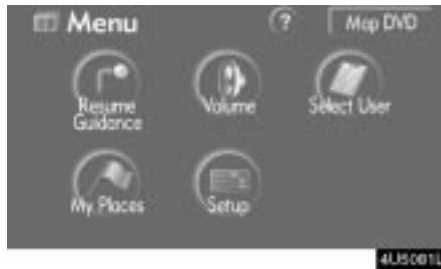
Without route guidance, “Suspend Guidance” cannot be used.



The screen will return to the current position map without route guidance.

- To resume guidance

1. Push the “MENU” button.



2. Touch “Resume Guidance”.

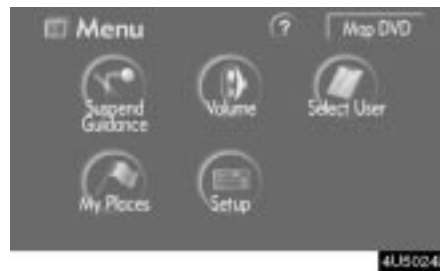


The screen will change to the current position map with route guidance.

Volume

The voice guidance volume can be adjusted or switched off.

1. Push the “MENU” button.



2. Touch “Volume”.



To adjust the volume, select the desired level by touching the appropriate number.

If voice guidance is not needed, touch “OFF” to disable the feature.

When selected the number or “OFF” will be highlighted.

3. Touch “OK” to confirm your selection.

INFORMATION

During route guidance, the voice guidance continues even if the navigation screen is changed to other screens.

“Adaptive Volume Control”: By turning “Adaptive Volume Control” on, the volume is turned up automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds 50 mph (80 km/h).

To turn the “Adaptive Volume Control” system on, touch the button. The indicator will be highlighted.

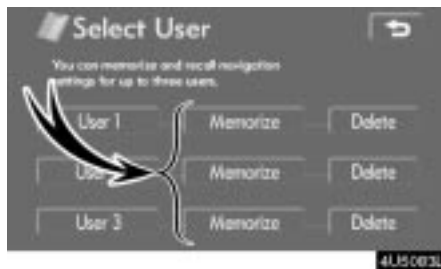
User selection

The system can memorize the following settings for up to three users.

- Map direction
- Map scale
- Map configuration
- Guidance mode
- Setup
- Volume
- Language
- Route trace
- Travel time/arrival time
- Right screen of dual map
- Road preference
- Maintenance notification

1. Push the “MENU” button.**2. Touch “Select User”.**

- To register



1. Touch "Memorize".

The confirmation screen will be displayed.



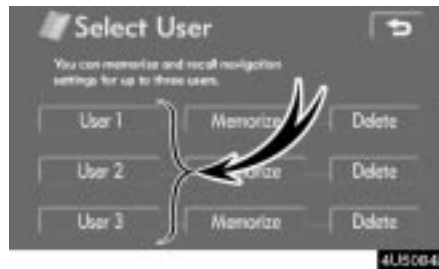
2. To register, touch "Yes". To return to the previous screen, touch "No" or .

When a button that is already registered is touched, the following screen appears.



To replace, touch "Yes". To cancel the replacement, touch "No" or .

- To change user



Touch "User number".



The above message appears, then the map screen will be displayed.

- To delete user



1. Touch "Delete".

The confirmation screen will be displayed.



2. To delete, touch "Yes". To return to the previous screen, touch "No" or



My places —

Points or areas on the map can be registered.

The registered points can be used on the "Destination" screen. (See " — Destination search by Home" on page 22, " — Destination search by Quick access" on page 22 and " — Designation search by Memory" on page 34.)

Registered areas are avoided at the time of route search.

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch "My Places".

— Registering memory points



On this screen, the following operations can be performed.

- 1 **Registers memory points**
(See “ — Registering memory points” on page 71.)
- 2 **Edits memory points**
(See “ — Editing memory points” on page 72.)
- 3 **Deletes memory points**
(See “ — Deleting memory points” on page 77.)
- 4 **Registers or deletes home**
(See “ — Registering home” on page 77 or “ — Deleting home” on page 78.)
- 5 **Registers areas to avoid**
(See “ — Registering area to avoid” on page 78.)
- 6 **Edits areas to avoid**
(See “ — Editing area to avoid” on page 79.)
- 7 **Deletes areas to avoid**
(See “ — Deleting area to avoid” on page 82.)
- 8 **Deletes previous points**
(See “ — Deleting previous points” on page 83.)
- 9 **Number of remaining memory points**
- 10 **Number of remaining areas to avoid**

1. Touch “Register”.



2. Enter the location in the same way as for a destination search. (See “Destination search” on page 19.)

After memory point registration is completed, the “Memory Point” screen will be displayed.



3. Touch “OK”.

To edit registered information, see “ — Editing memory Points” on page 72.

INFORMATION

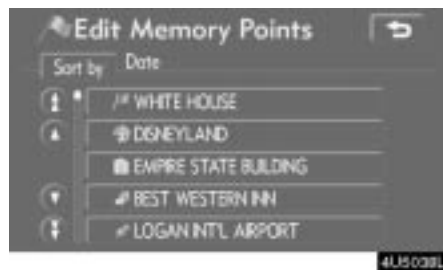
Up to 106 memory points can be registered.

— Editing memory points

The icon, attribute, name, location and/or telephone number of a registered memory point can be edited.



1. Touch "Edit".



2. Touch the desired memory point button.



3. Touch the button to be edited.

"Icon": To select icons to be displayed on the map. (See page 73.)

"Quick Access": To set an attribute. Memory points with a set attribute can be used as a "Quick access" or "Home" button. (See page 74.)

"Name": To edit memory point names. The names can be displayed on the map. (See page 75.)

"Location": To edit location information. (See page 76.)

"Phone #": To edit telephone numbers. (See page 76.)

4. Touch "OK".

- To change “Icon”

1. Touch “Icon” on the “Memory Point” screen.



2. Touch the desired icon.

Turn the page by touching “Page 1”, “Page 2” or “with Sound”.

SOUND ICONS

When the vehicle approaches the memory point, the selected sound will be heard.

1. Touch “with Sound” on the “Change Icon” screen.



2. Touch the desired sound icon.

The next screen appears when “Bell (with Direction)” is touched.



Touch either  or  to adjust the direction. Touch “Enter”.

The bell sounds only when the vehicle approaches this point in the direction that has been set.

- **To change “Quick Access”**

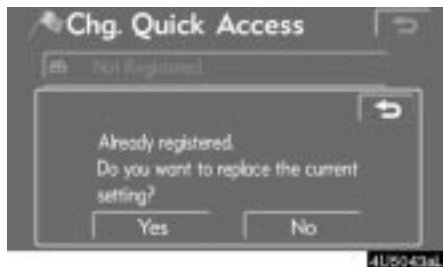
It is possible to change attributes of the quick access points. Memory points with a set attribute can be used as a “Quick Access” or “Home” touch-screen button. (See “ — Destination search by Home” on page 22 and “ — Destination search by Quick access” on page 22.)

1. Touch “Quick Access” on the “Memory Point” screen.



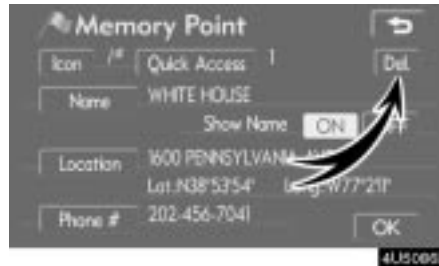
2. Touch the desired attribute.

It is possible to replace a registered attribute.



3. To replace the attribute, touch “Yes”. To return to the previous screen, touch “No” or .

DELETING “Quick Access”



1. Touch “Del.”.



2. To delete an attribute, touch “Yes”. To return to the previous screen, touch “No” or .

INFORMATION

One “Home” and five “Quick Access” can be set.

- To change “Name”

1. Touch “Name” on the “Memory Point” screen.



2. Enter the name using the alphanumeric keys.

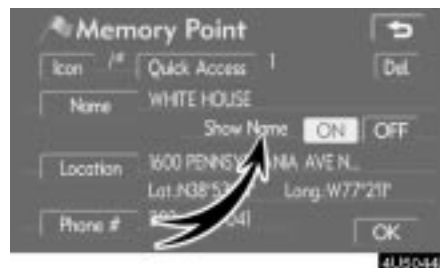
Up to 24 letters can be entered.

3. Touch “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

DISPLAYING MEMORY POINT NAMES

The name of a memory point that may be displayed on the map can be set.



To show the name, touch “ON” on the “Memory Point” screen. To not show it, touch “OFF”.

- To change “Location”

1. Touch “Location” on the “Memory Point” screen.



2. Touch the eight directional touch-screen button to move the cursor  to the desired point on the map.
3. Touch “Enter”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

- To change “Phone #” (telephone number)

1. Touch “Phone #” on the “Memory Point” screen.



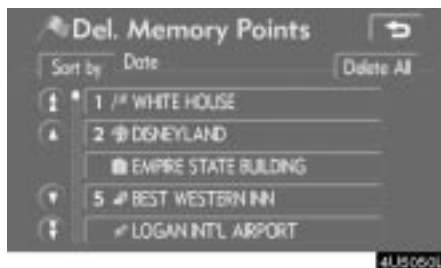
2. Enter the number using number keys.
3. Touch “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

— Deleting memory points



1. Touch "Delete".



2. Touch the button to be deleted.
"Delete All": To delete all memory points in the system.
3. To delete the memory point, touch **"Yes"**. To cancel the deletion, touch **"No"**.

— Registering home

If home has been registered, that information can be recalled by using the "Home" touch-screen button on the "Destination" screen. (See " — Destination search by Home" on page 22.)

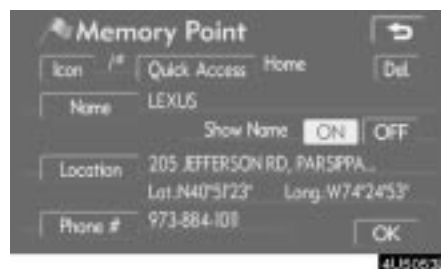


1. Touch "Register".



2. Enter the location in the same way as for a destination search. (See "Destination search" on page 19.)

When registration of home is completed, the "Memory Point" screen will be displayed.



3. Touch "OK".

To edit registered information, see " — Editing memory points" on page 72.

— Deleting home



1. Touch "Delete".
2. To delete home, touch "Yes". To cancel the deletion, touch "No".

— Registering area to avoid

Areas you want to avoid because of traffic jams, construction work or other reasons can be registered as areas to avoid.



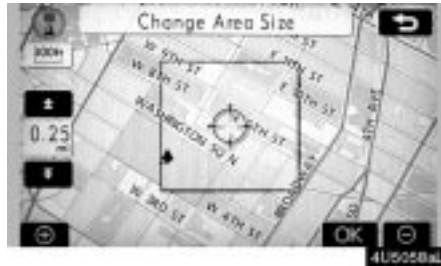
1. Touch "Register".



2. Enter the location in the same way as for a destination search, or display the map of the area to be avoided. (See "Destination search" on page 19.)



3. Touch the eight directional touch-screen button to move the cursor to the desired point on the map.
4. Touch "Enter".



5. Touch either  or  to change the size of the area to be avoided.
6. Touch "OK".

INFORMATION

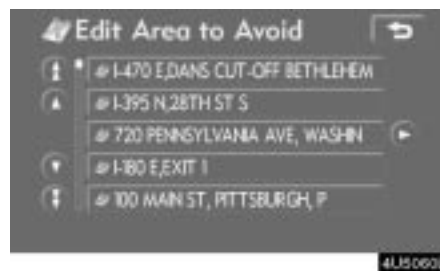
- If a destination is input in the area to avoid or the route calculation cannot be made without running through the area to avoid, a route passing through the area to be avoided may be shown.
- Up to 10 locations can be registered as points/areas to avoid. If there are 10 locations already registered, the following message will be displayed: "Unable to register additional points. Perform operation again after deleting unnecessary points."

— Editing area to avoid

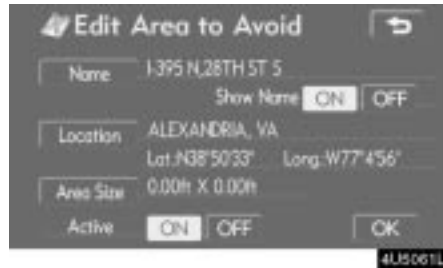
The name, location and/or area size of a registered area can be edited.



1. Touch "Edit".



2. Touch the desired area button.



3. Touch the button to be edited.

“Name”: To edit the name of the area to avoid. The names can be displayed on the map. (See page 80.)

“Location”: To edit area location. (See page 81.)

“Area Size”: To edit area size. (See page 82.)

“Active”: To turn on or off the area to avoid feature. To turn on the feature touch **“ON”** on the “Edit Area to Avoid” screen. To turn off the feature touch **“OFF”** on the “Edit Area to Avoid” screen.

4. Touch “OK”.

● To change “Name”

1. Touch **“Name”** on the “Edit Area to Avoid” screen.



2. Enter the name using alphanumeric keys.

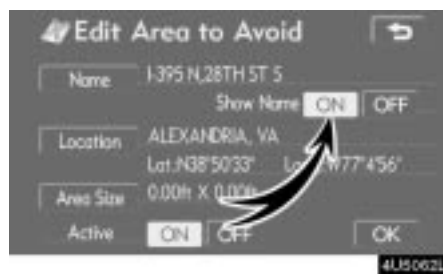
Up to 24 letters can be entered.

3. Touch **“OK”**.

The previous screen will be displayed.

DISPLAYING NAMES OF AREAS TO BE AVOIDED

The name of an area to be avoided that may be displayed on the map can be set.



To show the name, touch “ON” on the “Edit Area to Avoid” screen. To not show it, touch “OFF”.

- To change “Location”

1. Touch “Location” on the “Edit Area to Avoid” screen.



2. Touch the eight directional touch-screen button to move the cursor  to the desired point on the map.

3. Touch “Enter”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

- To change “Area Size”

1. Touch “Area Size” on the “Edit Area to Avoid” screen.



2. Touch either  or  to change the size of the area to be avoided.

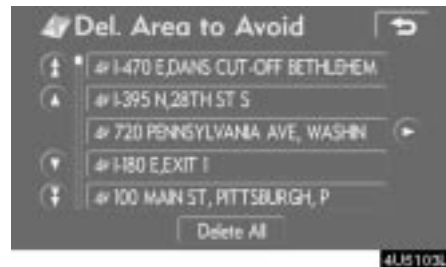
3. Touch “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

— Deleting area to avoid



1. Touch “Delete”.



2. Touch the button to be deleted.

“Delete All”: To delete all registered areas to avoid in the system.

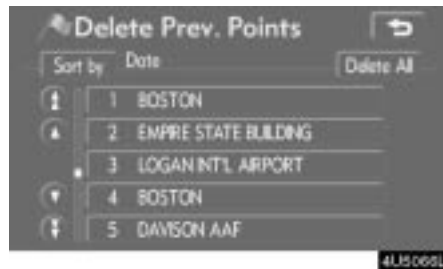
3. To delete the area, touch “Yes”. To cancel the deletion, touch “No”.

— Deleting previous points

The previous destination can be deleted.



1. Touch "Delete Previous Points".



2. Touch the button you want to delete.
"Delete All": To delete all previous points in the system.

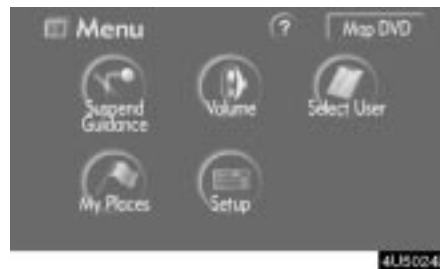


3. To delete the point, touch "Yes". To cancel the deletion, touch "No".

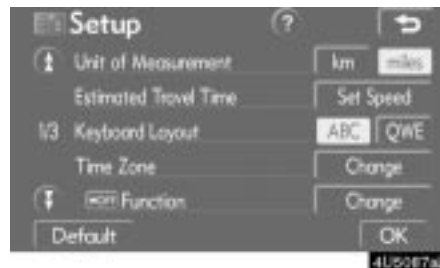
Setup

Setting the items shown on the "Setup" screen can be done. (See page 65.)

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch "Setup".



3. Touch the items to be set.
4. Touch "OK".

The previous screen will be displayed.

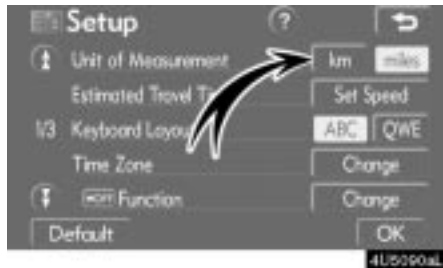
INFORMATION

To reset all setup items, touch "Default".

- **Unit of Measurement**

Unit of measurement can be changed.

1. Touch “Setup” on the “Menu” screen.



2. Touch “km” or “miles” of “Unit of Measurement” to choose the distance unit.

The selected button is highlighted.

3. Touch “OK”.

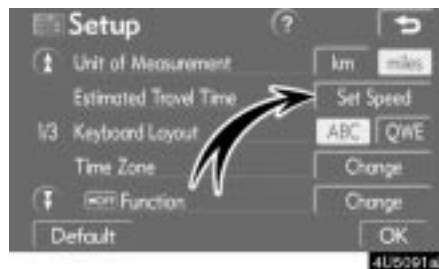
INFORMATION

This function is available only in English or Spanish. To switch language, see “Selecting a language” on page 158.

- **Estimated travel time**

The speed that is used for the calculation of the estimated travel time and the estimated arrival time can be set.

1. Touch “Setup” on the “Menu” screen.



2. Touch “Set Speed” of the “Estimated Travel Time”.



3. Touch  or  to set the average vehicle speeds for “Residential”, “Main street”, and “Freeway”.

To set the default speeds, touch “Default”.

4. After setting of the desired speeds is completed, touch “OK”.

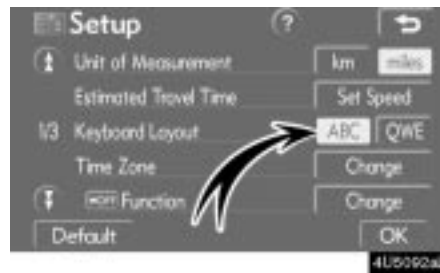
INFORMATION

- The displayed time to the destination is the approximate driving time that is calculated based on the selected speeds and the actual position along the guidance route.
- The time shown on the screen may vary greatly depending on progress along the route, which may be affected by road conditions such as traffic jams, and construction work.
- It is possible to display up to 99 hours 59 minutes.

• Input key layout

Key layout can be changed.

1. Touch "Setup" on the "Menu" screen.



2. Touch "ABC" or "QWE" of "Keyboard Layout" to choose the input key layout.

LAYOUT TYPE



► “ABC” type



► “QWE” type

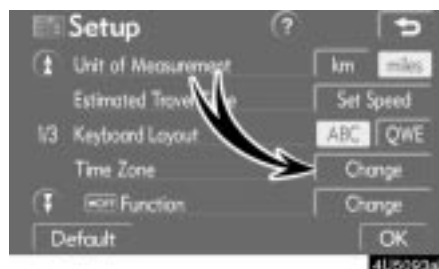
The selected button is highlighted.

3. Touch “OK”.

● Time zone

Time zone can be changed.

1. Touch “Setup” on the “Menu” screen.



2. Touch “Change” of “Time Zone”.

The “Adjust Time Zone” screen will be displayed on the display.



3. Touch the desired time zone.

The selected button is highlighted.

“Daylight Saving Time”: Daylight saving time can be set or cancelled.

To set daylight saving time, touch “ON”, and to cancel it, touch “OFF”.

4. Touch “OK”.

- **Screen layout function**
(**Screen** Function)

Each touch-screen button and current street name on the map screen can be displayed or hidden.

1. Touch **"Setup"** on the **"Menu"** screen.



2. Touch **"Change"** of **"Screen"** Function.



3. Touch the button to be turned off. The button becomes dimmed.

To set the default, touch **"Default"**.

4. Touch **"OK"**.

- **POI category change**
(**Display POI Icons**)

Select from among the 6 icons displayed on the **"Display POI Icons"** top screen, so that setting of the icons to be displayed on the map screen can be done easily.

1. Touch **"Setup"** on the **"Menu"** screen.

Then touch **?** to display page 2 of the **"Setup"** screen.



2. Touch **"Change"** of **"Display POI Icons"**.



3. Touch the category button to be changed.



4. Touch the category button to be displayed on the “Display POI Icons” top screen.

5. Touch “OK”.

● Display of building shape

When the “Display Building Shapes” feature is turned on, the system will display the building shape on the map screen using a scale of 150 feet (50 m) to 300 feet (100 m).

To turn the “Display Building Shapes” on:

1. Touch “Setup” on the “Menu” screen.

Then touch ⓘ to display page 2 of the “Setup” screen.



2. Touch “ON” of “Display Building Shapes”.

The selected button is highlighted.

3. Touch “OK”.

- **Notifying traffic restriction**

When the “Traffic Restrict. Notification” feature is turned on, the system notifies you of traffic or seasonal restrictions.

To turn the “Traffic Restrict. Notification” on:

1. Touch **“Setup”** on the **“Menu”** screen.

Then touch ⓘ to display page 2 of the “Setup” screen.



2. Touch **“ON”** of **“Traffic Restrict. Notification”**.

The selected button is highlighted.

3. Touch **“OK”**.

- **Voice recognition guidance**

When the “Voice Recognition Guidance” feature is turned on, the voice recognition guidance can be heard automatically.

To turn the “Voice Recognition Guidance” on:

1. Touch **“Setup”** on the **“Menu”** screen.

Then touch ⓘ to display page 2 of the “Setup” screen.



2. Touch **“ON”** of **“Voice Recognition Guidance”**.

The selected button is highlighted.

3. Touch **“OK”**.

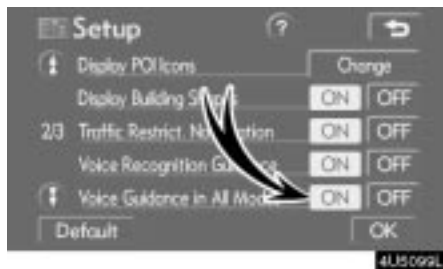
● Voice guidance in all modes

When the “Voice Guidance in All Modes” feature is turned on, the voice guidance in all modes can be heard.

When the “Voice Guidance in All Modes” feature is turned off, voice guidance cannot be heard when using the audio system. To turn the “Voice Guidance in All Modes” on:

1. Touch “Setup” on the “Menu” screen.

Then touch ⓘ to display page 2 of the “Setup” screen.



2. Touch “ON” of “Voice Guidance in All Modes”.

The selected button is highlighted.

3. Touch “OK”.

● Auto voice guidance

When the “Auto Voice Guidance” feature is turned on, the voice guidance can be heard automatically.

When the “Auto Voice Guidance” feature is turned off, the voice guidance can be heard only if the “MAP/VOICE” button is pushed.

To turn the “Auto Voice Guidance” mode on:

1. Touch “Setup” on the “Menu” screen.

Then touch ⓘ twice to display page 3 of the “Setup” screen.



2. Touch “ON” of “Auto Voice Guidance”.

The selected button is highlighted.

3. Touch “OK”.

- **Pop-up message**

When the “Pop-up Message” is turned on, the pop-up message will be displayed.

To turn the “Pop-up Message” on:

1. Touch “Setup” on the “Menu” screen.

Then touch ⓘ twice to display page 3 of the “Setup” screen.



2. Touch “ON” of “Pop-up Message”.

The selected button is highlighted.

3. Touch “OK”.

When the “Pop-up Message” is turned off, the following messages will not be displayed.



This message appears when the system is in the POI mode and the map scale is 1 mile (1.6 km) or greater.



The message appears when the map is switched to the dual map screen mode.

- **Current position/tire change calibration**

The current vehicle position mark can be adjusted manually. Miscalculation of the distance caused by tire replacement can also be adjusted.

1. Touch “Setup” on the “Menu” screen.

Then touch  twice to display page 3 of the “Setup” screen.



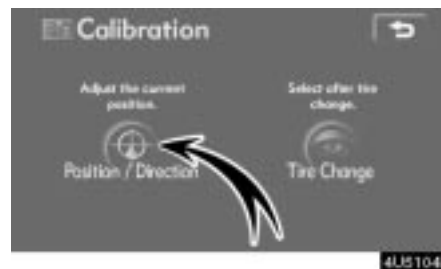
2. Touch “Adjust” of “Calibration”.



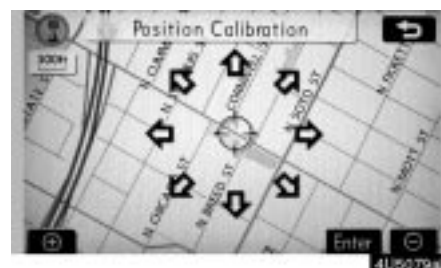
3. Touch the desired button.

POSITION/DIRECTION CALIBRATION

When driving, the current vehicle position mark will be automatically corrected by GPS signals. If GPS reception is poor due to location, you can manually adjust the current vehicle position mark.



1. Touch “Position/Direction”.

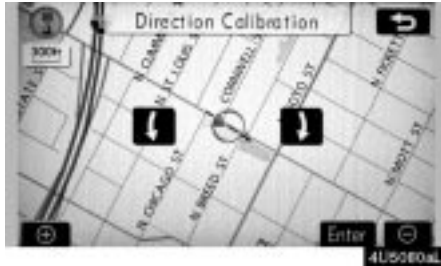


2. Touch the eight directional touch-screen button to move the cursor to the desired point on the map.

3. Touch “Enter”.

INFORMATION

For additional information on the accuracy of a current vehicle position, see “Limitations of the navigation system” on page 272.



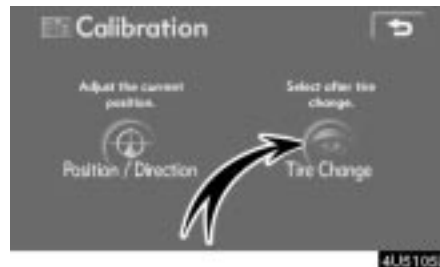
4. Touch either  or  to adjust the direction of the current vehicle position mark.

5. Touch “Enter”.

The map screen will be displayed.

TIRE CHANGE CALIBRATION

The tire change calibration function will be used when replacing the tires. This function will adjust the miscalculation caused by the circumference difference between the old and new tires. If this procedure is not performed when the tires are replaced, the current vehicle position mark may be incorrectly displayed.



To perform a distance calibration procedure, touch “Tire Change” on the “Calibration” screen.

The message appears and the quick distance calibration is automatically started. A few seconds later, a map screen will be displayed.

SECTION X

APPENDIX

Appendix

- [Limitations of the navigation system](#)
- [Map database information and updates](#)



Limitations of the navigation system

This navigation system calculates the current vehicle position using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, map data, etc. However, the accurate position may not be shown depending on the satellite condition, road configuration, vehicle condition or other circumstances.

The Global Positioning System (GPS) developed and operated by the U.S. Department of Defense provides an accurate current vehicle position using 3 to 4 satellites. The GPS system has a certain level of inaccuracy. While the navigation system will compensate for this most of the time, occasional positioning errors of up to 300 feet (100 m) can and should be expected. Generally, position errors will be corrected within a few seconds.



When your vehicle is receiving signals from the satellites, the “GPS” mark appears at the top left of the screen.

The GPS signal may be physically obstructed, leading to inaccurate vehicle position on the map display. Tunnels, tall buildings, trucks, or even the placement of objects on the instrument panel may obstruct the GPS signals.

The GPS satellites may not send signals due to repairs or improvements being made to them.

Even when the navigation system is receiving clear GPS signals, the vehicle position may not be shown accurately or inappropriate route guidance may occur in some cases.

NOTICE

The installation of window tinting may obstruct the GPS signals. Most window tinting contains some metallic content that will interfere with GPS signal reception. We advise against the use of window tinting on vehicles equipped with navigation systems.

(a) Accurate current vehicle position may not be shown in the following cases:

- When driving on a small angled Y-shaped road.
- When driving on a winding road.
- When driving on a slippery road such as in sand, gravel, snow, etc.
- When driving on a long straight road.
- When freeway and surface streets run in parallel.
- After moving by ferry or vehicle carrier.
- When a long route is searched during high speed driving.
- When driving without setting the current position calibration correctly.
- After repeating a change of direction by going forward and backward, or turning on a turntable in the parking lot.
- When leaving a covered parking lot or parking garage.
- When a roof carrier is installed.
- When driving with tire chains installed.
- When the tires are worn.
- After replacing a tire or tires.
- When using tires that are smaller or larger than the factory specifications.
- When the tire pressure in any of the four tires is not correct.

INFORMATION

If your vehicle cannot receive GPS signals, you can correct the current position manually. For information on setting the current position calibration, see page 92.

(b) Inappropriate route guidance may occur in the following cases:

- When turning at an intersection off the designated route guidance.
- If you set more than one destination but skip any of them, auto reroute will display a route returning to the destination on the previous route.
- When turning at an intersection for which there is no route guidance.
- When passing through an intersection for which there is no route guidance.
- During auto reroute, the route guidance may not be available for the next turn to the right or left.
- It may take a long time to operate auto reroute during high speed driving. In auto reroute, a detour route may be shown.
- After auto reroute, the route may not be changed.
- An unnecessary U-turn may be shown or announced.
- A location may have multiple names and the system will announce one or more.
- Some routes may not be searched.
- If the route to your destination includes gravel, unpaved roads or alleys, the route guidance may not be shown.
- Your destination point might be shown on the opposite side of the street.
- When a portion of the route has regulations prohibiting the entry of the vehicle that vary by time or season or other reasons.
- The road and map data stored in your navigation system may not be complete or may not be the latest version.

After replacing a tire, implement the operation described in the “TIRE CHANGE CALIBRATION”. (See page 93.)

This navigation system uses tire turning data and is designed to work with factory-specified tires for your vehicle. Installing tires that are larger or smaller than the originally equipped diameter may cause inaccurate display of the vehicle's position. The tire pressure also affects the diameter of the tires so please make sure the tire pressure of all four tires is correct.

Map database information and updates

This system uses the maps of DENSO.

© GDT, Geographic Data Technology, Inc.

© 2004 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.
Data by infoUSA Copyright ©2004, All Rights Reserved.

© 2005 VISA Corporation

National Research Bureau ©2004

The Bullseye Design is a registered trademark of Target Brands, Inc.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE READ THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

THIS IS A LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR YOUR COPY OF THE MAP DATABASE (“The DATABASE”), ORIGINALLY MADE BY Geographic Data Technology, Inc. (“GDT”), USED IN THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM. BY USING THE DATABASE, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO ALL TERMS AND CONDITIONS SET FORTH BELOW.

OWNERSHIP

The DATABASE and the copyrights and intellectual property or neighboring rights therein are owned by GDT or its licensors.

LICENSE GRANT

GDT grants you a non-exclusive license to use your copy of the DATABASE for your personal use or for use in your business' internal operations. This license does not include the right to grant sub-licenses.

LIMITATIONS ON USE

The DATABASE is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory laws, you may not extract or re-utilize any portion of the contents of the DATABASE, nor reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the DATABASE.

TRANSFER

You may not transfer the DATABASE to third parties, except together with the system for which it was created, provided that you do not retain any copy of the DATABASE, and provided that the transferee agrees to all terms and conditions of this AGREEMENT.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY

GDT does not warrant or make any representations regarding, either express or implied, regarding the use or results of the use of the DATABASE in terms of its correctness, accuracy, reliability, or otherwise, and expressly disclaims any implied warranties of quality, performance, merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose or non-infringement. GDT does not warrant that the DATABASE is or will be error free. No oral or written information or advice provided by GDT, your supplier or any other person shall create a warranty.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

The price of the DATABASE does not include any consideration for assumption of risk of consequential, indirect or unlimited direct damages which may arise in connection with your use of the DATABASE. Accordingly, in no event shall GDT or supplier of the navigation system using the DATABASE ("Supplier") be liable for any consequential, special, incidental or indirect damages, including without limitation, loss of revenue, data, or use, incurred by you or any third party arising out of your use of the DATABASE, whether in an action in contract or tort or based on a warranty, even if GDT or the Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. In any event GDT's liability for direct damages is limited to the price of your copy of the DATABASE.

THE DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY, SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, DO NOT AFFECT OR PREJUDICE YOUR STATUTORY RIGHTS WHERE YOU HAVE ACQUIRED THE DATABASE OTHERWISE THAN IN THE COURSE OF A BUSINESS. Some states and laws do not allow the exclusion of implied warranties, so the above disclaimer may not apply to you.

WARNINGS

The DATABASE reflects reality as existing before you received the DATABASE and it comprises data and information from government and other sources, which may contain errors and omissions. Accordingly, the DATABASE may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, and due to the nature of the sources used. The DATABASE does not include or reflect information on - inter alia - neighborhood safety; law enforcement; emergency assistance; construction work; road or lane closures; vehicle or speed restrictions; road slope or grade; bridge height, weight or other limits; road or traffic conditions; special events; traffic congestion; or travel time.

GOVERNMENT END USERS

If the DATABASE is for a region of North America and is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, the DATABASE is licensed with "limited rights." Utilization of the DATABASE is subject to the restrictions specified in the "Rights in Technical Data and Computer Database" clause at DFARS 252.227-7013, or the equivalent clause for non-defense agencies. Manufacturer of the DATABASE for North America is Geographic Data Technology, Inc., at 11 Lafayette Street, Lebanon, New Hampshire 03766, USA.

END USER NOTICE

PLEASE READ THIS NOTICE CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THIS NAVIGATION SYSTEM

The Point Of Interest Data ("POI" Data) in the navigation system is in part provided by infoUSA Inc. ("infoUSA"). By using the POI Data, you accept and agree to all terms and conditions set forth below.

1. Ownership

All rights, title and interest to the infoUSA POI Data shall be retained by infoUSA.

2. Limitations on use

Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory laws, you may not extract or re-utilize any portion of the contents of the POI Data, nor reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the POI Data.

3. Transfer

You may not transfer the POI Data to third parties, except together with the system for which it was created, provided that you do not retain any copy of the POI Data.

4. Disclaimer of warranty

EXCEPT AS STATED HEREIN, INFOUSA MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY.

5. Limitation of Liability
EITHER INFOUSA OR SUPPLIER OF
POI DATA SHALL NOT BE LIABLE
FOR ANY INDIRECT, CONSEQUEN-
TIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES
MADE OR ALLEGED IN CONNEC-
TION WITH YOUR USE OF THE POI
DATA.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

Personal Use Only. You agree to use this information for solely personal, non-commercial purposes, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. You may not modify the information or remove any copyright notices that appear on the information in any way. You may not decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this information, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose. Without limiting the foregoing, you may not use this information with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications.

No Warranty. This information is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. DENSO and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers, collectively "DENSO") make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, and DENSO expressly disclaims any warranties regarding content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, non-infringement, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this information, or that the information or server will be uninterrupted or error-free. Some states, territories and countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent, the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: DENSO SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF ITS NATURE, ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, WHETHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE OR CONTRACTS ARISING OUT OF YOUR POSSESSION, USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF DENSO OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some states, territories and countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Indemnity. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold DENSO and its licensors (including their respective licensors, suppliers, assignees, subsidiaries, affiliated companies, and the respective officers, directors, employees, shareholders, agents and representatives of each of them) free and harmless from and against any liability, loss, injury (including injuries resulting in death), demand, action, cost, expense, or claim of any kind or character, including but not limited to attorney's fees, arising out of or in connection with any use or possession by you of this information.

END USER NOTICE

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

END-USER TERMS

The Map Data Disc ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and DENSO CORPORATION ("LICENSEE") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. Such licensors include NAVTEQ North America, LLC. Without limiting the foregoing, you agree that NAVTEQ North America, LLC shall have the right to enforce these Terms directly against you.

© 2004 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, Geobase ®.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Personal Use Only. You agree to use this Data for the solely personal, non commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. You may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if you retain no copies and the recipient agrees to these End-User Terms. Multi-disc sets may not be transferred on a divided basis.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by [LICENSEE] and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. [LICENSEE] and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: [LICENSEE] AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT.

Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: [LICENSEE] AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF [LICENSEE] OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between [LICENSEE] (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Licensed Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, (i) for acquisitions conducted by the Department of Defense, the Licensed Data is licensed with "Limited Rights" in accordance with the rights set forth at DFARS 252.227-7013(b)(3), TECHNICAL DATA-NONCOMMERCIAL ITEMS, and Licensed Data delivered or otherwise furnished with "Limited Rights" shall be marked with the following "Limited Rights Notice" set forth at DFARS 252.227-7013(f)(3), and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

LIMITED RIGHTS

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME:

NAVTEQ North America, LLC

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER) ADDRESS:

222 Merchandise Mart Plaza,
Suite 900, Chicago, Illinois 60654

The Government's rights to use, modify, reproduce, release, perform, display, or disclose these technical data are restricted by paragraph (b)(3) of the Rights in Technical Data-Noncommercial Items clause contained in the above identified contract. Any reproduction of technical data or portions thereof marked with this legend must also reproduce the markings. Any person, other than the Government, who has been provided access to such data must promptly notify the above named Contractor.

and; (ii) for civilian agency acquisitions, the Licensed Data is licensed in accordance with the rights set forth at FAR 52.227-14(g)(1), RIGHTS IN DATA-GENERAL (*Protection of limited rights data and computer software*). In the event that the Contracting Officer requires the delivery of limited rights Licensed Data that has been withheld or would otherwise be withholdable in accordance with FAR 52.227-14(g)(1), the Licensed Data is licensed with "Limited Rights" as set forth in the following "Limited Rights Notice" at FAR 52.227-14(g)(2) (Alternate II), which shall be affixed to the Licensed Data and the Licensed Data shall be treated in accordance with such Notice (which shall be marked on any reproduction of these data, in whole or in part):

**LIMITED RIGHTS NOTICE
(JUN 1987)**

These data may be reproduced and used by the Government with the express limitation that they will not, without written permission of the Contractor, be used for purposes of manufacture nor disclosed outside the Government; except that the Government may disclose these data outside the Government for the following purposes, if any, provided that the Government makes such disclosure subject to prohibition against further use and disclosure: *There are no additional purposes permitting disclosure of such Data.*

The manufacturer/supplier of the Data is NAVTEQ North America, LLC, 222 Merchandise Mart Plaza, Suite 900, Chicago, Illinois 60654.

If the Contracting Officer refuses to use either of the licenses provided in (i) or (ii), herein, the Contracting Officer must notify NAVTEQ North America, LLC prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Licensed Data.

There are two types of areas available for route guidance. In one type of area, primarily around metropolitan centers, detailed route guidance is available for the entire area. In the other type of area, all roads are displayed on the map but route guidance is limited. The navigation route might lack precision because the data (no right turns, one-way traffic, etc.) is not complete. It is still possible to reach the destination by following the arrow direction and distance as shown on the bottom left of the screen. The arrow points in the direction of the destination. The distance shown is as measured in a straight line from the current vehicle position to the destination area.

In order to provide you with as accurate map information as possible, we are always gathering information such as on road repairs and carrying out on-site investigations. However, the names of roads, streets, facilities, and their locations frequently change. In some places, construction on roads may be in progress. For that reason, information on some areas in this system might be different from the actual location.

The map database is normally updated once a year. Contact your Lexus dealer for information about the availability and pricing of an update.

— Changing the map DVD-ROM

When changing the Map DVD-ROM, we recommend using your Lexus dealer.

To change the Map DVD-ROM yourself, follow these instructions carefully.

1. Set the engine switch in “ACC” mode.

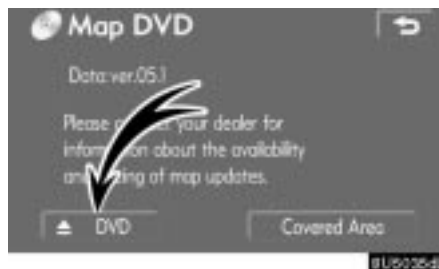


2. Push the cover, and slide it upward to remove it.

3. Push the “MENU” button.



4. Touch “Map DVD”.



5. Touch “▲ DVD” to eject the map DVD-ROM.

6. Insert the new map DVD-ROM with the label side up.

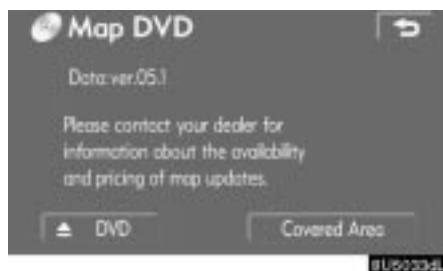
7. Install the cover.

- To confirm the database version and disc coverage area

1. Push the “MENU” button.



2. Touch “Map DVD”.



Make sure the version of the database on this screen. (The database version on the screen above may be different from the actual screen.)

To display the disc coverage area, touch “**Covered Area**”. Confirm the covered area on the screen.

Contact your Lexus dealer to find out if there is a more recent update available.

SECTION VI

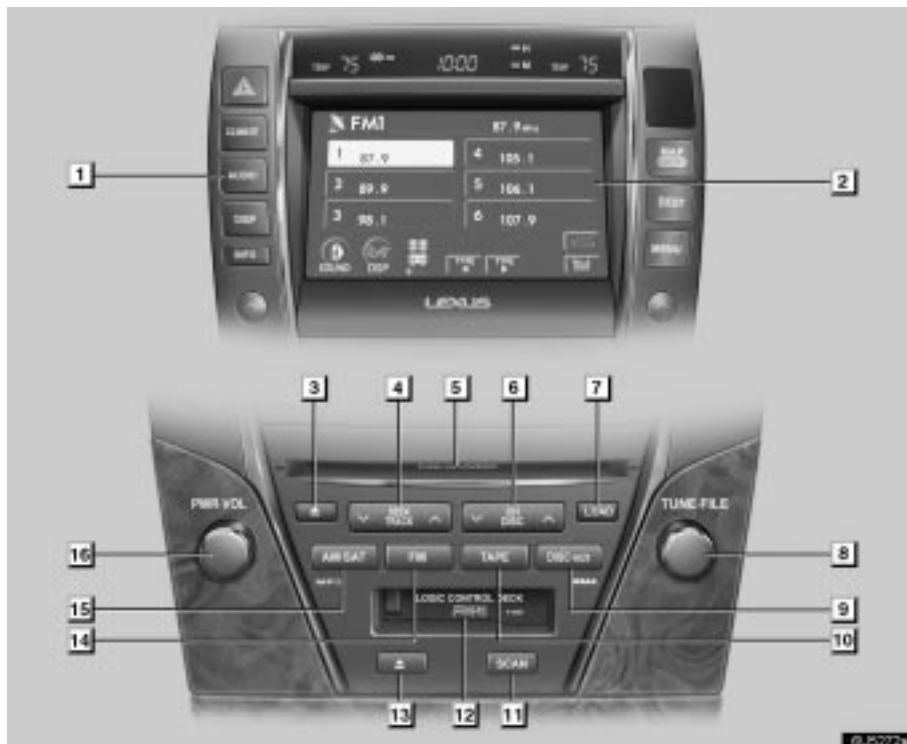
AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

Audio/video system

- [Quick reference](#)
- [Using your audio/video system](#) Some basics [Radio operation](#) [Cassette tape player operation](#) [CD changer operation](#) [DVD changer operation](#)
- [Audio/video remote controls](#)
- [Audio/video system operating hints](#)



Quick reference



► If a Mark Levinson brand audio system is installed, the “Mark Levinson” logo is shown on the panel.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1 “AUDIO” button
Push this button to display the audio control screen. For details, see page 163, 189, 192, 203 and 215.</p> <p>2 Function button display screen
Touch the buttons displayed on the screen to control the radio, cassette tape player, CD changer or DVD changer. For details, see page 164.</p> <p>3 ▲ button for the discs
Push this button to stop and eject the disc. For details, see page 186 and 200.</p> <p>4 “SEEK/TRACK” button
Push “▲” or “▼” button to seek up or down for a station, or to access a desired program, track, file or chapter. For details, see pages 171, 177, 189, 193, 206 and 216.</p> | <p>5 Disc slot
Insert discs into the slot after pushing “LOAD” button. For details, see pages 184 and 198.</p> <p>6 “CH/DISC” button
Push “▲” or “▼” button to select a program type or a selected disc. For details, see pages 171, 186, 188, 200 and 202.</p> <p>7 “LOAD” button
Push this button to insert the disc. For details, see pages 184 and 198.</p> <p>8 “TUNE-FILE” knob
Turn this knob to move up or down the station band or file. For details, see pages 169, 170 and 193.</p> |
|---|--|

- 9 "DISC·AUX" button**
Push this button to turn the CD changer, DVD changer or AUX on. For details, see pages 163, 188, 189 and 201.
- 10 "TAPE" button**
Push this button to turn the cassette tape player on. For details, see pages 163 and 181.
- 11 "SCAN" button**
Push this button to scan radio stations or scan the tracks, discs, files or folders. For details, see page 171.
- 12 Cassette tape slot**
Insert a cassette tape into the slot. For details, see page 181.
- 13  button for the cassette tape**
Push this button to stop and eject the cassette tape. For details, see page 181.
- 14 "FM" button**
Push this button to choose an FM station. For details, see pages 163 and 169.
- 15 "AM·SAT" button**
Push this button to choose either an AM or SAT station. For details, see pages 163, 169 and 175.
- 16 "PWR·VOL" knob**
Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off, and turn it to adjust the volume. For details, see page 163.

Using your audio/video system — — Some basics

This section describes some of the basic features on Lexus audio/video systems. Some information may not pertain to your system.

Your audio/video system works when the engine switch is in the “ACC” or “IG-ON” mode.

NOTICE

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the audio/video system on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

CAUTION

For vehicles sold in U.S.A. and Canada:

- **Part 15 of the FCC Rules**

FCC Warning:

Any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment will void the user's authority to operate this device.

- **Laser products**

- Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes yourself. This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.

- This product utilizes a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

- Turning the system on and off



“PWR·VOL”: Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off. Turn this knob to adjust the volume. The system turns on in the last mode used.

“AUDIO”: Push this button to display touch-screen buttons for audio system (audio control mode).

You can select the function that enables automatic return to the previous screen from the audio screen. See “(a) Automatic transition” on page 156 for details.

- Switching between functions



Push “AM·SAT”, “FM”, “TAPE” or “DISC·AUX” button to turn on the desired mode. The selected mode turns on immediately.

Push these buttons if you want to switch from one mode to another.

If the tape or disc is not set, the cassette tape player, CD changer or DVD changer does not turn on.

You can turn off each player by ejecting the cassette tape or disc. If the audio system was previously off, then the entire audio system will be turned off when you eject the cassette tape or disc. If another function was previously playing, it will come on again.



The buttons for radio, cassette tape player, CD changer and DVD changer operation are displayed on the function button display screen when the audio control mode is selected.

Touch them lightly and directly on the screen.

The selected button is highlighted.



INFORMATION

- *If the system does not respond to a touch of a touch-screen button, move your finger away from the screen and then touch it again.*
- *You cannot operate dimmed touch-screen buttons.*
- *Wipe off fingerprints on the surface of the display using a glass cleaning cloth.*

• Tone and balance

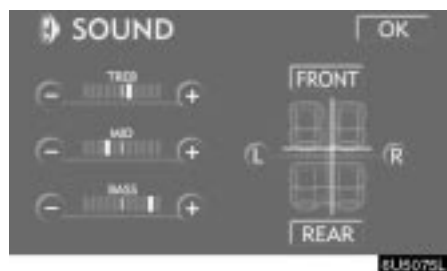
How good an audio program sounds to you is largely determined by the mix of the treble, midrange, and bass levels. In fact, different kinds of music and vocal programs usually sound better with different levels of treble, midrange, and bass.

A good balance of the left and right stereo channels and of the front and rear sound levels is also important.

Keep in mind that if you are listening to a stereo recording or broadcast, changing the right/left balance will increase the volume of one group of sounds while decreasing the volume of another.



1. Touching "SOUND" displays the sound adjustment screen.



2. Touch the desired button.

“TREB” “+” or “-”: Adjusts high-pitched tones.

“MID” “+” or “-”: Adjusts mid-pitched tones.

“BASS” “+” or “-”: Adjusts low-pitched tones.

“FRONT” or “REAR”: Adjusts sound balance between the front and rear speakers.

“L” or “R”: Adjusts sound balance between the left and right speakers.

3. Touch “OK”.

The tone of each mode (for such as AM, FM and DVD changer) can be adjusted.

• DSP control

You can change the listening position or turn on/off the surround function and the automatic sound levelizer.

To display the DSP control mode screen, touch “DSP” on the audio control mode screen.



► With CD changer



► With DVD changer

Surround function (DVD changer only):
Select “ON” of “SURROUND” and touch “OK”.

The surround function will turn on.

Automatic sound levelizer (ASL):

When the audio sound becomes difficult to hear due to road noise, wind noise or other noises while driving, touch “ON”. The system adjusts to the optimum volume and tone quality according to the noise level.

When the system is on, the sound adjustment level is displayed on the screen.

Positioning selector (CD changer only):

By selecting the listening position, the system controls the output timing of the speakers to allow sound to be heard evenly, creating the ideal music environment.

Touching “CHANGE” switches the position in the following order: all seats, driver's seat, front seat, rear seat.

The position currently selected is displayed on the screen.

● **Selecting screen size**



Touching “WIDE MODE” displayed on the screen in the video control mode will display the wide mode control screen.

“NORMAL”: When a 3 × 4 screen is displayed, the remaining parts will be in black.

“WIDE 1”: When a 3 × 4 screen is displayed, the screen will be widened horizontally to fill the display.

“WIDE 2”: When a 3 × 4 screen is displayed, the screen will be widened vertically and horizontally, in the same ratio, to fill the display.

When a 9 × 16 screen is displayed, this mode should be selected.

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

- **Your cassette tape player**

When you insert a cassette, the exposed tape should face to the right.

NOTICE

Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the cassette player. Do not insert anything other than cassette tapes into the slot.

- **Your CD or DVD changer**

Your CD or DVD changer can store up to 6 discs and play selected discs or continuously play all the discs load in the changer.

When you load discs into the changer, make sure their labels are face up. If not, "CD × × Check" or "DISC × Check" will appear on the screen.



NOTICE

- *Do not stack up two discs for insertion, or it will cause damage to the changer. Insert only one disc into slot at a time.*
- *Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the changer. Do not insert anything other than discs into the slot.*

The changer is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in.) discs only.

- **AUX adapter**

The sound of portable audio players connected to the AUX adapter can be enjoyed. Push the **"DISC·AUX"** button to switch to AUX mode. For details, refer to the *"Owner's Manual"*.

— Radio operation

- **Listening to the radio**



Push **"AM·SAT"** or **"FM"** to choose either an AM or FM station.

"AM", "FM1" or "FM2" appears on the screen.

If your vehicle is equipped with a satellite radio broadcast system, when you push the **"AM·SAT"** button, "AM", "SAT1", "SAT2", "SAT3" station appears on the display. For details about satellite radio broadcast, see "— Radio operation (XM satellite radio broadcast)" on page 174.



Turn the knob clockwise to step up the station band or counterclockwise to step down.

Your radio automatically changes to stereo reception when a stereo broadcast is received. "ST" appears on the screen. If the signal becomes weak, the radio reduces the amount of channel separation to prevent the weak signal from creating noise. If the signal becomes extremely weak, the radio switches from stereo to mono reception. In this case, "ST" disappears from the screen.

- **Presetting a station**



1. Tune in the desired station.
2. Touch one of the channel selector touch-screen buttons (1 — 6) you want and hold it until a beep is heard.

This sets the station to the button and the frequency appears on the touch-screen button.

Each radio mode can store up to 6 stations. To change the preset station to a different one, follow the same procedure.

The preset station memory is cancelled when the power source is interrupted by battery disconnection or a blown fuse.

- **Selecting a station**

Tune in the desired station using one of the following methods.

Preset tuning: Touch the channel selector touch-screen button (1 — 6) or push the “^” or “v” button of “CH/DISC” for the station you want. The touch-screen button is highlighted and the station frequency appears on the screen.

Seek tuning: Push the “^” or “v” button of “SEEK/TRACK”. The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station of the nearest frequency and will stop on reception. Each time you push the button, the stations will be searched automatically one after another.

To scan all the frequencies: Touch “SCAN” on the screen or push the “SCAN” button briefly. “SCAN” appears on the screen. The radio will find the next station and stay there for a few seconds, and then scan again. To select a station, touch “SCAN” or push the “SCAN” button again.

To scan the preset stations: Touch “SCAN” on the screen or push the “SCAN” button for longer than approximately a second. “P-SCAN” appears on the screen. The radio will tune in the next preset station, stay there for a few seconds, and then move to the next preset station. To select a station, touch “SCAN” or push the “SCAN” button again.

- **RDS (Radio Data System)**

Your audio system is equipped with Radio Data Systems (RDS). RDS mode allows you to receive text messages from radio stations that utilize RDS transmitters.

When RDS is on, the radio can

- select only stations of a particular program type,
- display messages from radio stations,
- search for a stronger signal station.

RDS features are available for use only on FM stations which broadcast RDS information.

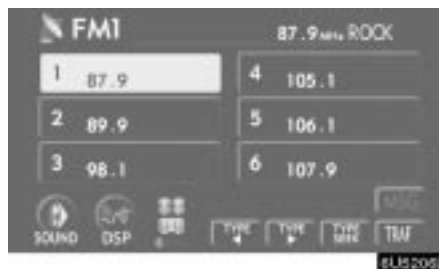
If the system receives no RDS stations, “NO PTY” appears on the display.



**“TYPE ◀▶”**

Each time you touch “**TYPE ◀**” or “**TYPE ▶**”, the program type changes as follows:

- ROCK
- MISC (Miscellaneous)
- INFORM (Information)
- EASY LIS (Easy listening)
- CLS/JAZZ (Classical music and Jazz)
- R & B (Rhythm and Blues)
- RELIGION
- ALARM (Emergency message)

**“TYPE SEEK”**

When a program is set, “**TYPE SEEK**” appears. Touch this button and the system starts to seek the station in the relevant program type.

If any type program station is not found, “**NOTHING**” appears on the display.



“MSG” (MESSAGE)

If the system receives a radio text from an RDS station, “MSG” appears on the display. Touch “MSG”, and a text message is displayed on the screen. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

In case a text message is not accepted in a screen, you can touch “MSG” and hold it to display the rest of the message.

When the system can show the station name, “RDS” appears on the display. Each time you touch “MSG”, indication on the display changes from the band to the station name, a radio text in this order. After six seconds passes, indication returns to the band.

When you touch “MSG OFF”, the display returns.

● Traffic announcement



“TRAF”

The tuner automatically seeks a station that regularly broadcasts traffic information.

When you touch “TRAF”, “TRAF SEEK” appears on the display, and the radio will start seeking any station broadcasting traffic program information.

If no traffic program station is found, “NOTHING” appears on the display.

Traffic information may not be broadcasted when searching.

If a traffic program station is found, the name for traffic program station is displayed and “TRAF” is lit for a while until a traffic announcement is received.

— Radio operation (XM satellite radio broadcast)

To listen to a satellite radio broadcast in your vehicle, an additional genuine Lexus satellite receiver and antenna must be purchased and installed, and the subscription to the XM satellite radio is necessary.

- **How to subscribe to an XM satellite radio**

An XM satellite radio is a tuner designed exclusively to receive broadcasts provided under a separate subscription. Availability is limited to the 48 contiguous states.

How to subscribe: You must enter into a separate service agreement with the XM radio in order to receive satellite broadcast programming in the vehicle. Additional activation and service subscription fees apply that are not included in the purchase price of the vehicle and optional digital satellite tuner. For complete information on subscription rates and terms, or to subscribe to the XM radio, visit XM on the web at www.xmradio.com or call an XM's Listener Care at (800) 967-2346. The XM radio is solely responsible for the quality, availability and content of the satellite radio services provided, which are subject to the terms and conditions of the XM radio customer service agreement.

Customers should have their radio ID ready; the radio ID can be found by selecting "channel 000" on the radio. For details, see the "Displaying the radio ID" that follows.

All fees and programming are the responsibility of the XM satellite radio and are subject to change.

Satellite tuner technology notice: Toyota's satellite radio tuners are awarded Type Approval Certificates from XM Satellite Radio Inc. as proof of compatibility with the services offered by the XM satellite radio.

- **Displaying the radio ID**

Each XM tuner is identified with a unique radio ID. You will need the radio ID when activating XM service or when reporting a problem.

If you select the "CH 000" using the "TUNE" knob, the ID code of 8 alphanumeric characters appears. If you select another channel, display of the ID code is canceled. The channel (000) alternates the display between the radio ID and the specific radio ID code.

- Listening to satellite radio



Push the “AM-SAT” button to choose either an AM station or an SAT channel. Besides “AM”, “SAT1”, “SAT2” or “SAT3” appears on the display.



Turn this knob to select the next or previous channel.

If you turn continuously, you can rapidly scroll forward or down through the channels.

- Channel category



Touch either “TYPE◀” or “TYPE▶” to go to the next or previous category.

- Presetting a channel

1. Tune in the desired channel.



2. Touch one of the channel selector touch-screen buttons (1 — 6) and hold it until a beep is heard.

This sets the channel to the button and the name and number of the channel appears on the touch-screen button.

Each SAT mode can store up to 6 stations. To change the preset channel to a different one, follow the same procedure.

The preset channel memory is cancelled when the power source is interrupted by battery disconnection or a blown fuse.

● Selecting a channel

Tune in the desired channel using one of the following methods.

Preset tuning: Touch the channel selector touch-screen button (1 — 6) for the channel you want. The touch-screen button (1 — 6) is highlighted and channel number appears on the display.

To select channel within the current category: Push the “^” or “v” button of “SEEK/TRACK”.



To scan the currently selected channel category: Touch “TYPE SCAN” or push the “SCAN” button briefly. “SCAN” appears on the display. The radio will find the next channel in the same channel category, stay there for a few seconds, and then scan again. To select a channel, touch “TYPE SCAN” or push the “SCAN” button a second time.

To scan the preset channels: Push the “SCAN” button and hold it until you hear a beep. “P.SCAN” appears on the display. The radio will find the next preset channel, stay there for a few seconds, and then move to the next preset channel. To select a channel, push the “SCAN” button a second time.



- **Displaying the title and name**

When you touch “TEXT”, the song/program title and the artist name/feature are displayed.

Up to 10 alphanumeric characters can be displayed. (Some information will not be fully displayed.)

When you touch “TEXT” again, the display returns.

● **If the satellite radio tuner malfunctions**

When problems occur with the XM tuner, a message will appear on the display. Referring to the table below to identify the problem, take the suggested corrective action.

ANTENNA	The XM antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM antenna cable is attached securely.
	A short circuit occurs in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Lexus certified dealer for assistance.
UPDATING	You have not subscribed to the XM satellite radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact the XM satellite radio for subscription information. When a contract is canceled, you can choose the "CH000" and all free-to-air channels.
	The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact the XM satellite radio.
NO SIGNAL	The XM signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal.
LOADING	The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information.
OFF AIR	The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel.
-----	There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action needed.
---	The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel.

The XM Listener Care Center is also available on the phone, please call 1-800-XM-RADIO (1-800-967-2346) during the following hours:

Monday — Saturday: 6 a.m. — 2 a.m. Sunday: 8 p.m. — 8 a.m. (ET)

NOTICE

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.*
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.*
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.*
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.*

Information to user

Alteration or modifications carried out without appropriate authorization may invalidate the user's right to operate the equipment.

INFORMATION

This XM tuner supports "Audio Services" (Music and Talk) of only XM satellite radio and "Text Information" linked to the respective "Audio Services".*

**Text Information includes, Station Name, (Artist) Name, (Song) Title and Category Name.*

— Cassette tape player operation

● Playing a cassette tape



When you insert a cassette tape, the exposed tape should face to the right.

The player will automatically start when you insert a cassette tape. At this time, "TAPE" appears on the display.

If a metal or chrome equivalent cassette tape is put in the cassette player, the player will automatically recognize it and "MTL" appears on the display.

To stop or eject the cassette tape, push the  button.



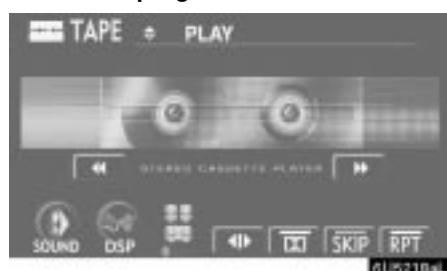
If a cassette is already in the slot, push the "TAPE" button.

Dolby® Noise Reduction* feature: If you are listening to a tape that was recorded with Dolby® B Noise Reduction, touch "". The "" touch-screen button will be highlighted. Touch "" again to turn off Dolby® B NR.

The Dolby NR mode reduces tape noise by about 10 dB. For best sound reproduction, play your tapes with these buttons on or off according to the mode used for recording the tape.

* Dolby noise reduction manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. "DOLBY" and the double-D symbol  are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

- Manual program selection



Reverse button: You can reverse the tape by touching **◀▶**. The display will show the opposite direction after reversing the tape. Also if the tape reaches the end of one side, it is automatically reversed to the other side.

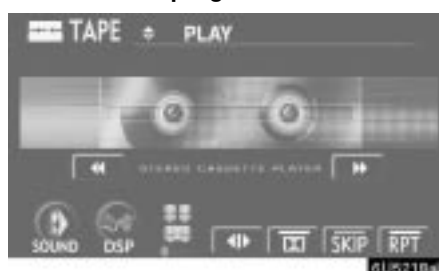
Fast forward and Rewind buttons: You can fast forward or fast rewind by touching **◀◀** or **▶▶**.

To stop the tape while it is fast forwarding, touch **▶▶**, to stop the tape while it is rewinding, touch **◀◀**.

If a tape rewinds completely, the cassette player will stop and then play the same side. If a tape fast forwards completely, the cassette player will play the other side of the tape using the auto-reverse feature.

Auto-reverse feature: After the cassette player reaches the end of a tape, it automatically reverses and begins to play the other side, regardless of whether the cassette was playing or fast forwarding.

- Automatic program selection



“RPT”: The repeat feature automatically replays the current program.

Touch **“RPT”** on the screen while the program is playing. When the program ends, it will automatically be rewound and replayed. Touch this button again to turn off the repeat feature.

There must be at least 3 seconds of blank space between programs for the repeat feature to work correctly.

“SKIP”: The skip feature allows you to fast forward past long stretches of blank tape. This is especially useful at the end of cassettes.

Touch **“SKIP”** on the screen. The player will automatically skip any blank portions of 15 seconds or more and play the next program. To cancel it, touch the button once again.



There must be at least 3 seconds of blank space between programs for this feature to work correctly.

“RPT”, “SKIP” or “Automatic program selection” features: These features may not work well with some spoken word, live or classical recordings.

“Automatic program selection” button:

The automatic program selection feature allows you to program your cassette player to skip forward or backward to locate the song you want to hear. You can skip up to 9 programs at a time.

Push this button on the “^” side to skip forward. “FF” and the number will appear on the screen. Push the button until the number you want to skip appears on the screen. After that, the player will automatically skip forward.

When the end of the tape is reached, the player automatically reverses sides and resumes normal play.

Push this button on the “v” side to skip backward. Push the button until “REW” and the number you want to skip appear on the screen.

- If you set “REW 1”, the player will rewind to the beginning of the current program.
- When counting the number of programs you want to rewind, remember to count the current program as well. For example, if you want to rewind to a song that is two before the song you are listening to, push this button until “REW 3” appears on the screen.

When the beginning of the tape is reached, the player automatically resumes normal play.

— CD changer operation

The CD changer can play audio CDs, CD text, WMA discs and MP3 discs.

- Audio CD, CD text 189
- MP3/WMA disc 192

For appropriate discs for this changer, see "Audio/video system operating hints" on page 221.

(a) Inserting or ejecting discs

The engine switch must be in the "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode.

Your CD changer can store up to 6 discs.

• Setting a single disc:



1. Push the "LOAD" button briefly.

The amber indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking. After the amber indicators change to green and stay on, the CD changer door will open.



2. Insert only one disc while the CD changer door is open.

You can set a disc at the lowest empty disc number.

After insertion, the set disc is automatically loaded.

If the label faces down, the disc cannot be played. In this case, "CD × × Check" appears on the screen.

If you do not insert the disc within 15 seconds after pushing the "LOAD" button, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

If you need to insert the next disc, repeat the same procedure to insert another disc.

● **Setting all the discs:**



1. Push the "LOAD" button until you hear a beep.

The amber indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking. After the amber indicators change to green and stay on, the CD changer door will open.



2. Insert only one disc while the CD changer door is open.

The CD changer door closes and the amber indicators start blinking.

3. Insert the next disc after the amber indicators change to green and stay on and the CD changer door opens.

4. Repeat this procedure until you insert all the discs.

To cancel the operation, push the “LOAD” or “DISC·AUX” button.

If you do not insert the discs within 15 seconds after pushing the “LOAD” button, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

NOTICE

Do not insert one disc stacked on top of another one or feed them in continuously, to prevent discs from getting stuck in the changer.

● Ejecting a single disc alone:



1. Push the “^” or “v” button of “CH/DISC” or touch the disc number button on the screen to highlight the disc number you want to eject.



2. Push the ▲ button for the disc briefly.

At this time, the amber indicators of the slot start blinking and the disc is ejected.

3. After the blinking indicators stay on, remove the disc.

● **Ejecting all the discs:**



The numbers of the trays where the disc is not set are dimmed.

1. Push the button for the disc until you hear a beep.

At this time, the amber indicators of the slot start blinking and a disc is ejected.

2. After the blinking indicators stay on, remove the disc.

The indicators start blinking again and the next disc is ejected.

To cancel the operation, push the “LOAD” or “DISC-AUX” button.

If you do not remove the disc within 15 seconds after it is ejected, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

When all the discs are removed, the indicators go out.



(b) Playing a disc

Push the **"DISC-AUX"** button if the disc are already loaded in the CD changer. The **"CD CHANGER"** screen will be displayed.

The discs set in the CD changer are played continuously, starting with the last disc you inserted. The disc number of the disc currently being played, the track or title and chapter number and the time from the beginning of the program are shown on the display.

When play of one disc ends, the first track of the following disc starts. When play of the final disc ends, play of the first disc starts again.

The changer will skip any empty disc trays.

(c) Selecting a desired disc**On the screen:****Touch the desired disc number.**

The selected disc number is highlighted.

The changer will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

On the audio panel:**Push the **"^"** or **"v"** button of **"CH/DISC"**.**

When you release the button, the changer will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

(d) Operating an audio CD

- Playing an audio CD



Push the “AUDIO” button to display this screen.

CD text only — The disc title and track title will appear on the screen when pushing the “DISC·AUX” button.

You can operate the touch-screen buttons and choose the number of the disc you want to play. The selected disc is automatically played.

- Selecting a desired track



“SEEK/TRACK” button: Use for a direct access to a desired track.

Push the “^” or “v” button of “SEEK/TRACK” and repeat it until the desired track number appears on the screen. As you release the button, the changer will start playing the selected track from the beginning.

“TRACK LIST”: The desired track can be selected from a list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Touch “TRACK LIST”. The track list is displayed.



Touch the desired track number. The changer will start playing the selected track from the beginning.

▲: By touching this button, the list moves up by 6 track groups. If this button is touched when the top page of the list is displayed, the last page is displayed.

▼: By touching this button, the list moves down by 6 track groups. If this button is touched when the last page of the list is displayed, the top page is displayed.

Fast forward: Push the “▲” button of “SEEK/TRACK” and hold it to fast forward the disc. When you release the button, the changer will resume playing from that position.

Reverse: Push the “▼” button of “SEEK/TRACK” and hold it to reverse the disc. When you release the button, the changer will resume playing.

- **Searching for a desired track or a disc**



Searching for a desired track —

While the disc is playing, touch “SCAN” on the screen briefly.

“SCAN” appears on the screen. The changer will play the next track for 10 seconds, then scan again. To select a track, touch “SCAN” once again. If the changer reaches the end of the disc, it will continue scanning at track 1.

After all the tracks are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

Searching for a desired disc —

While the disc is playing, touch “SCAN” on the screen and hold it until the “D-SCAN” appears on the screen.

The program at the beginning of each audio disc will be played for 10 seconds. To continue listening to the program of your choice, touch “SCAN” once again.

After all the audio discs are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

- **Other functions**



“RPT”: Use it for automatic repeat of the track or disc you are currently listening to.

Repeating a track —

While the track is playing, touch “RPT” briefly.

“RPT” appears on the screen. When the track is finished, the changer will automatically go back to the beginning of the track and play the track again. To cancel it, touch “RPT” once again.

Repeating a disc —

While the disc is playing, touch “RPT” and hold it until the “D-RPT” appears on the screen.

When the disc is finished, the changer will automatically go back to the beginning of the disc and play the disc again. To cancel it, touch “RPT” once again.

“RAND”: Use it for automatic and random selection.

Playing the tracks on one disc in random order —

While the disc is playing, touch “RAND” briefly.

“RAND” appears on the screen. The system selects a track on the disc being listened to in random order. To cancel it, touch “RAND” once again.

Playing the tracks on all the audio discs in random order —

While the disc is playing, touch “RAND” and hold it until the “D-RAND” appears on the screen.

The system selects a track on all the audio discs in the changer in random order. To cancel it, touch “RAND” once again.

If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the title of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 29 letters can be displayed.

(e) Operating a MP3/WMA disc

● Playing a MP3/WMA disc



Push the “AUDIO” button and touch a MP3/WMA disc number to display this screen.

You can operate the touch-screen buttons and choose the number of the disc you want to play. The selected disc is automatically played.

● Selecting a desired folder



“FOLDER▲”: Touch “FOLDER▲” to go to the next folder.

“FOLDER▼”: Touch “FOLDER▼” briefly to go to the previous folder. To jump up to the first folder, touch “FOLDER▼” and hold it until the beep sounds.

“FOLDER LIST”: The desired folder can be selected in a list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Touch “FOLDER LIST”. The folder list is displayed.



Touch the desired folder number. The changer will start playing the first file of the selected folder.

▲: By touching this button, the list moves up by 6 folder groups. If this button is touched when the top page of the list is displayed, the last page is displayed.

▼: By touching this button, the list moves down by 6 folder groups. If this button is touched when the last page of the list is displayed, the top page is displayed.

"FILE": The file list is displayed.

"DETAIL": Details of the file currently playing is displayed. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

● Selecting a desired file



"SEEK/TRACK" button: Use for direct access to a desired file.

Push the "**▲**" or "**▼**" button of "**SEEK/TRACK**" and repeat it until the desired file number appears on the display. As you release the button, the changer will start playing the selected file from the beginning. When "**RAND**" or "**FLD-RPT**" is on, the file number within the folder you are currently being listened to appears.

Fast forward: Push the "**▲**" button of "**SEEK/TRACK**" and hold it to fast forward the disc. When you release the button, the changer will resume playing from that position.

Reverse: Push the "**▼**" button of "**SEEK/TRACK**" and hold it to reverse the disc. When you release the button, the changer will resume playing.



“TUNE-FILE” knob: Use for direct access to a desired file in the disc.

Turn the **“TUNE-FILE”** knob to step up or down all the files in the disc you are currently listening to. The file number appears on the display. When “RAND” or “FLD-RPT” is on, all the files in the folder you are currently being listened to can be stepped up or down.



“FILE”: The desired file can be selected in a list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Touch **“FILE”**. The file list is displayed.



Touch the desired file number. The changer will start playing the selected file from the beginning.

- ▲: By touching this button, the list moves up by 6 file groups. If this button is touched when the top page of the list is displayed, the last page is displayed.
- ▼: By touching this button, the list moves down by 6 file groups. If this button is touched when the last page of the list is displayed, the top page is displayed.

"FOLDER": The folder list is displayed.

"DETAIL": Details of the file currently playing is displayed. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

● Searching for a desired file



While the disc is playing, touch "SCAN" on the screen briefly.

"SCAN" appears on the screen. The changer will play the next file in the folder for 10 seconds, then scan again. To select a file, touch **"SCAN"** on the screen once again. If the changer reaches the end of the folder, it will continue scanning from file 1.

After all the files are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

- Searching for a desired folder



While the disc is playing, touch **“SCAN”** on the screen and hold it until the **“FLD·SCAN”** appears on the screen.

The program at the beginning of each folder will be played for 10 seconds. To continue listening to the program of your choice, touch **“SCAN”** on the screen once again.

After all the folders are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

- Other functions



“RPT”: Use it for automatic repeat of the file or folder you are currently listening to.

Repeating a file —

While the file is playing, touch **“RPT”** briefly.

“RPT” appears on the screen. When the file is finished, the changer will automatically go back to the beginning of the file and play the file again. To cancel it, touch **“RPT”** button once again.

Repeating a folder —

While the folder is playing, touch **“RPT”** and hold it until the **“FLD·RPT”** appears on the screen.

When the folder is finished, the changer will automatically go back to the beginning of the folder and play the folder again. To cancel it, touch **“RPT”** once again.

"RAND": Use it for automatic and random selection of the folder or the disc which you are currently listening to.

Playing the files in one folder in random order —

While the disc is playing, touch "RAND" briefly.

"RAND" appears on the screen. The system selects a file in the folder you are currently listening to. To cancel it, touch "RAND" once again.

Playing the files in all the folders on one disc in random order —

While the disc is playing, touch "RAND" and hold it until the "FLD·RAND" appears on the screen.

The system selects a file in all the folders. To cancel it, touch "RAND" once again.

When a file is skipped or the system is inoperative, touch "RAND" to reset.

(f) If the changer malfunctions

If the changer or another unit equipped with the changer malfunctions, your audio system will display following messages.

If "No CD" appears on the display: It indicates that there is no disc in the CD changer.

If "CD × × Check" appears on the display: It indicates that the disc dirty, damaged, or it was inserted upside down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly. If a disc which is not playable is inserted, "CD × × Check" will also appear on the screen. For appropriate discs for this player, see "Audio/video system operating hints" on page 221.

If "CD Error" appears on the display: The following causes are possible.

- There is a trouble inside the system. Eject the disc.
- The inside of the changer unit may be too hot due to the very high ambient temperature. Eject the disc and allow the changer to cool down.

If "NO MUSIC FILE" appears on the display: It indicates that the disc has no playable data.

If the malfunction is not rectified: Take your vehicle to your dealer.

If an MP3/WMA disc contains CD-DA files, only CD-DA files are played. If an MP3/WMA disc contains files other than CD-DA, only MP3/WMA files are played.

— DVD changer operation

The DVD changer can play audio CDs, video CDs, CD text, WMA discs, MP3 discs, DVD video discs and DVD audio discs.

- Audio CD, CD text 189
- MP3/WMA disc 192
- DVD video, DVD audio 202
- Video CD 215

For appropriate discs for this changer, see "Audio/video system operating hints" on page 221.

For safety reasons, you can enjoy DVD video discs, DVD audio discs and video CDs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the engine switch is in the "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, you can hear audio alone even in the DVD video, DVD audio or video CD mode.

(a) Inserting or ejecting discs

The engine switch must be in the "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode.

Your DVD changer can store up to 6 discs.

● Setting a single disc:



1. Push the "LOAD" button briefly.

The amber indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking. After the amber indicators change to green and stay on, the DVD changer door will open.



2. Insert only one disc while the DVD changer door is open.

You can set a disc at the lowest empty disc number.

After insertion, the set disc is automatically loaded.

If the label faces down, the disc cannot be played. In this case, "DISC × Check" appears on the screen.

If you do not insert the disc within 15 seconds after pushing the "LOAD" button, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

If you need to insert the next disc, repeat the same procedure to insert another disc.

● **Setting all the discs:**



1. Push the "LOAD" button until you hear a beep.

The amber indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking. After the amber indicators change to green and stay on, the DVD changer door will open.



2. Insert only one disc while the DVD changer door is open.

The DVD changer door closes and the amber indicators start blinking.

3. Insert the next disc after the amber indicators change to green and stay on and the DVD changer door opens.

4. Repeat this procedure until you insert all the discs.

To cancel the operation, push the “LOAD” or “DISC·AUX” button.

If you do not insert the discs within 15 seconds after pushing the “LOAD” button, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

NOTICE

Do not insert one disc stacked on top of another one or feed them in continuously, to prevent discs from getting stuck in the changer.

● Ejecting a single disc alone:



1. Push the “^” or “v” button of “CH/DISC” or touch the disc number button on the screen to highlight the disc number you want to eject.



2. Push the  button for the disc briefly.

At this time, the amber indicators of the slot start blinking and the disc is ejected.

3. After the blinking indicators stay on, remove the disc.

● Ejecting all the discs:



1. Push the button for the disc until you hear a beep.

At this time, the amber indicators of the slot start blinking and a disc is ejected.

2. After the blinking indicators stay on, remove the disc.

The indicators start blinking again and the next disc is ejected.

To cancel the operation, push the “LOAD” or “DISC-AUX” button.

If you do not remove the disc within 15 seconds after it is ejected, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

When all the discs are removed, the indicators go out.



The numbers of the trays where the disc is not set are dimmed.

(b) Playing a disc



Push the “DISC-AUX” button if the disc are already loaded in the DVD changer.

The “DVD CHANGER” screen will be displayed.

The discs set in the DVD changer are played continuously, starting with the last disc you inserted. The disc number of the disc currently being played, the track or title and chapter number and the time from the beginning of the program are shown on the display.

Audio disc and MP3/WMA disc only —

When play of one disc ends, the first track of the following disc starts. When play of the final disc ends, play of the first disc starts again.

The changer will skip any empty disc trays.

(c) Selecting a desired disc**On the screen:****Touch the desired disc number.**

The selected disc number is highlighted.

The changer will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

On the audio panel:**Push the “^” or “v” button of “CH/DISC”.**

When you release the button, the changer will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

(d) Operating a DVD disc

NOTE: The playback condition of some DVD discs may be determined by a DVD software producer. This DVD changer plays a disc as the software producer intended. So some functions may not work properly. Be sure to read the instruction manual for the DVD disc separately provided. For the detailed information about DVD video discs, see “(g) DVD player and DVD video disc information” on page 217.

- **Precautions on DVD video disc**

When recording with a DVD video, DVD audio or video CD, audio tracks may not record in some cases while the menu is displayed. As audio will not play in this case, verify that the video tracks are playing and then activate playback.

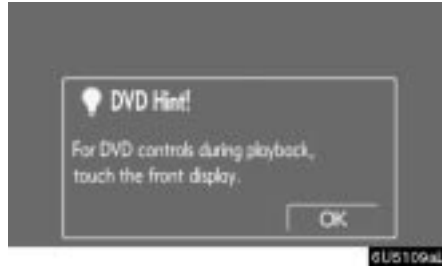
When playback of a disc is completed:

- If an audio CD or MP3/WMA disc is playing, the first track or file starts.
- If a DVD video, DVD audio or video CD is playing, playback will stop or the menu screen will be displayed.

The title/chapter number and playback time display may not appear while playing back certain DVD video discs.

CAUTION

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. The louder sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.



This "DVD Hint!" screen appears when the video screen is first displayed after the engine switch is in the "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode.

Touch "OK" when you read the message.

- Playing a DVD disc



Push the "AUDIO" button to display this screen. You can operate the touch-screen buttons and choose the number of the disc you want to play. The selected disc is automatically played.

When you touch "WIDE", the screen mode can be changed.

It you touch "PICTURE" when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied, the video screen returns.

- Displaying DVD controls



- ▶ DVD video

- ▶ DVD audio

If you touch a part of the screen, where controls are not located while watching video, DVD controls will appear.

"> **Page2**": Touching this will display on the second page of DVD controls.

"< **Page1**": Touching this will display the top page of DVD controls.

"**Hide Buttons**": Touching this will turn off the controls from the screen.

If "⊘" appears on the screen when you touch a control, the operation relevant to the control is not permitted.

● Description of DVD controls

TOP PAGE OF DVD VIDEO CONTROLS

“Menu” and “Top Menu”: If you touch either button, the menu screen for DVD video appears. (For the operation, see the manual that come with the DVD video disc provided separately.)

: The menu control key appears on the screen. (See page 206.)

: Touching this will pause the video screen.

: Touching this will fast reverse.

: Touching this will stop the DVD video disc.

: Touching this will resume normal play after stop or pause.

: Touch this button to fast forward during the playback. During pause, touch this button briefly to advance frame by frame, or touch and hold it to play slowly.

SECOND PAGE OF DVD VIDEO CONTROLS

“Setup”: The initial setup screen appears. (See page 211.)

“Search”: The title search screen appears. (See page 206.)

“Return”: Touching this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

“AUDIO”: The audio changing screen appears. (See page 209.)

“Subtitle”: The subtitle changing screen appears. (See page 209.)

“Angle”: The angle selection screen appears. (See page 210.)

TOP PAGE OF DVD AUDIO CONTROLS

“Top Menu”: If you touch this button, the menu screen for DVD audio appears. (For operation, refer to the DVD audio disc manual that is provided separately.)

“AUDIO”: The audio changing screen appears. (See page 210.)

: The menu control key appears on the screen. (See page 206.)

: Touch this button to pause the disc.

: Touching this will fast reverse.

: Touching this will stop the disc.

: Touching this will resume normal play after stop or pause.

: Touch this button to fast forward during the playback. During pause, touch this button briefly to advance frame by frame, or touch and hold it to play slowly.

SECOND PAGE OF DVD AUDIO CONTROLS

“Setup”: The initial setup screen appears. (See page 211.)

“Select Number”: The track or number search screen appears. (See page 207.)

“Search”: The group search screen appears. (See page 206.)

“Return”: Touching this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

“Prev. Still”: Touch this button to reverse the still pictures. (See page 208.)

“Next Still”: Touch this button to forward the still pictures. (See page 208.)

“Subtitle”: The subtitle changing screen appears. (See page 209.)

“Angle”: The angle selection screen appears. (See page 210.)

- **Selecting a menu item**



Enter the menu item using ▲, ►, ▼ and ◀ buttons and touch “Enter”.

The changer starts playing video for that menu item. (For details, see the manual that comes with the DVD video disc provided separately.)

Each time you touch “**Move Buttons**”, the controls on the screen move upward and downward.

When you touch “<<**OFF**”, the controls will disappear. To display them again, touch “>>**ON**”.

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

- **Searching by title**



DVD video only —

Enter the title number and touch “**Enter**”.

The player starts playing video for that title number.

When you push the “^” or “v” button of “**SEEK/TRACK**”, you can select a chapter.

If you enter the wrong numbers, touch “**Clear**” to delete the numbers.

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

- Searching by track



DVD audio only —

Enter the track numbers on the searching track screen and touch “Enter”.

The changer starts playing video for that title number.

You can select a track number by pushing the “^” or “v” button of “SEEK/TRACK”.

If you enter the wrong numbers, touch “Clear” to delete the numbers.

Touch , and the previous screen returns.

- Searching by group



DVD audio only —

Enter the group number and touch “Enter”.

The selected group number will appear on the screen.

The changer starts playing the disc from the entered group number.

When you push the “^” or “v” button of “SEEK/TRACK”, you can select a track.

If you enter the wrong numbers, touch “Clear” to delete the numbers.

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

- **Selecting the bonus group**



DVD audio only —

Enter the bonus group number on the searching group screen and touch “Enter”.

The “Enter Key Code” screen will appear. To enter the number of the group you want to play, push the group number.

If you enter the wrong number, touch ◀ to delete the number.

Touch “Enter” on the screen.

The changer starts playing the disc from the selected bonus group number.

- **Changing the still picture**



DVD audio only —

Touch “Prev. Still” or “Next Still” on the screen to forward or reverse the still pictures.

- Changing the subtitle language



Each time you touch "Subtitle", the language is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.

To turn off the subtitle, touch "Hide".

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

- Changing the audio language



DVD video only —

Each time you touch "AUDIO", the language is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.

When you touch , the previous screen returns.



- Changing the audio format



DVD audio only —

Each time you touch “AUDIO”, another audio format stored on the disc is selected.

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

- Changing the angle



The angle can be selected for discs that are multi-angle compatible when the angle mark appears on the screen.

Each time you touch “Angle”, the angle changes.

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

● Setup menu



The initial setting can be changed.

After you change the initial setting, touch **"Enter"**. The previous picture will be displayed.

When **"Default"** is touched, all menus are initialized.

AUDIO LANGUAGE

You can change the audio language.

1. Touch **"Audio Language"**.
2. Touch the language you want to hear on the **"Select Audio Language"** screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to hear on this screen, touch **"Other"** and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see page 212.

SUBTITLE LANGUAGE

You can change the subtitle language.

1. Touch **"Subtitle Language"**.
2. Touch a language you want to read on the **"Select Subtitle Language"** screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to read on this screen, touch **"Other"** and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see page 212.

To return to the "Setup Menu" screen, touch .

DVD LANGUAGE

You can change the language on the DVD video menu.

1. Touch **"DVD Language"**.
2. Touch the language you want to read on the **"DVD Language"** screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to read on this screen, touch **"Other"** and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see page 212.

To return to the "Setup Menu" screen, touch .

ANGLE MARK

The multi-angle mark can be turned on or off on the screen while the disc which is multi-angle compatible is being played.

Each time you touch **"Angle Mark"**, the angle mark on the screen turns on or off alternately.

PARENTAL LOCK

The level of viewer restrictions can be changed.

1. Touch "Parental Lock".**2. Enter the 4-digit personal code on the "Enter Personal Code" screen.**

If you enter the wrong numbers, touch **"Clear"** to delete the numbers.

10 touches of **"Clear"** will initialize the personal code.

3. Touch a parental level (1 — 8) on the "Restriction Level".

To return to the "Setup Menu" screen, touch .

● Enter subtitle language code

If you touch **"Other"** on the "Select Audio Language" screen, "Select Subtitle Language" screen or "DVD Language" screen, you can select the language you want to hear or read by entering a language code.

1. Enter the 4-digit language code.

If you enter the wrong numbers, touch **"Clear"** to delete the numbers.

2. Touch "Enter".

Code	Language
1001	Japanese
0514	English
0618	French
0405	German
0920	Italian
0519	Spanish
2608	Chinese
1412	Dutch
1620	Portuguese
1922	Swedish
1821	Russian
1115	Korean
0512	Greek

0101	Afar	0704	Scots-Gaelic
0102	Abkhazian	0712	Galician
0106	Afrikaans	0714	Guarani
0113	Amharic	0721	Gujarati
0118	Arabic	0801	Hausa
0119	Assamese	0809	Hindi
0125	Aymara	0818	Croatian
0126	Azerbaijani	0821	Hungarian
0201	Bashkir	0825	Armenian
0205	Byelorussian	0901	Interlingua
0207	Bulgarian	0905	Interlingue
0208	Bihari	0911	Inupiak
0209	Bislama	0914	Indonesian
0214	Bengali	0919	Icelandic
0215	Tibetan	0923	Hebrew
0218	Breton	1009	Yiddish
0301	Catalan	1023	Javanese
0315	Corsican	1101	Georgian
0319	Czech	1111	Kazakh
0325	Welsh	1112	Greenlandic
0401	Danish	1113	Cambodian
0426	Bhutani	1114	Kannada
0515	Esperanto	1119	Kashmiri
0520	Estonian	1121	Kurdish
0521	Basque	1125	Kirghiz
0601	Persian	1201	Latin
0609	Finnish	1214	Lingala
0610	Fiji	1215	Laotian
0615	Faroese	1220	Lithuanian
0625	Frisian	1222	Latvian
0701	Irish	1307	Malagasy

1309	Maori
1311	Macedonian
1312	Malayalam
1314	Mongolian
1315	Moldavian
1318	Marathi
1319	Malay
1320	Maltese
1325	Burmese
1401	Nauru
1405	Nepali
1415	Norwegian
1503	Occitan
1513	(Afan)Oromo
1518	Oriya
1601	Panjabi
1612	Polish
1619	Pashto, Pushto
1721	Quechua
1813	Rhaeto-Romance
1814	Kirundi
1815	Romanian
1823	Kinyarwanda
1901	Sanskrit
1904	Sindhi
1907	Sangho
1908	Serbo-Croatian
1909	Sinhalese
1911	Slovak
1912	Slovenian
1913	Samoan

1914	Shona
1915	Somali
1917	Albanian
1918	Serbian
1919	Siswati
1920	Sesotho
1921	Sundanese
1923	Swahili
2001	Tamil
2005	Telugu
2007	Tajik
2008	Thai
2009	Tigrinya
2011	Turkmen
2012	Tagalog
2014	Setswana
2015	Tonga
2018	Turkish
2019	Tsonga
2020	Tatar
2023	Twi
2111	Ukrainian
2118	Urdu
2126	Uzbek
2209	Vietnamese
2215	Volapük
2315	Wolof
2408	Xhosa
2515	Yoruba
2621	Zulu

(e) Operating a video CD

● Playing a video CD



Push the “AUDIO” button to display this screen.

When you touch “WIDE”, the screen mode can be changed.

If you touch “PICTURE” when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied, the video screen returns.

● Displaying operation buttons



If you touch the part where touch-screen buttons are not located while you are watching video on the video CD, video CD operation buttons will appear.

“>Page2”: Use this button to display the operation buttons on the second page.

“<Page1”: Use this button to display the operation buttons on the top page.

“Hide Buttons”: Use this button to turn off the operation buttons from the display.

If “⊘” appears on the display when you touch the button, the operation is not permitted.

- **Description of each button**

BUTTONS ON TOP PAGE

“Select Number”: The track or number search screen appears. (See page 216.)

“Return”: Touching this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

“Prev. Menu”: When you touch this button while the disc menu is displayed, the previous page appears on the screen. If you touch this button while the changer is playing video, the previous track is searched and played.

“Next Menu”: When you touch this button while the disc menu is displayed, the next page appears on the display. If you touch this button while the changer is playing video, the next track is searched and played.

“Main/Sub”: A multiplex transmission changing button. The mode changes from Main/Sub to Main, to Sub and back to Main/Sub by touching this button.

BUTTONS ON SECOND PAGE

 : Use this button to pause the video screen.

 : Touch this button to fast reverse during playback.

 : Touch this button during pause to resume playing.

 : Touch this button to fast forward during the playback. During pause, touch this button briefly to advance frame by frame, or touch and hold it to play slowly.

- **Searching by track**



Enter the track numbers on the searching track screen and touch “Enter”.

The changer starts playing video for that title number.

You can select a track number by pushing the “^” or “v” button of “**SEEK/ TRACK**”.

If you enter the wrong numbers, touch “**Clear**” to delete the numbers.

Touch  , and the previous screen returns.

(f) If the changer malfunctions

If the changer or another unit equipped with the changer malfunction, your audio/video system will display following messages.

If “No Disc” appears on the display: It indicates that there is no disc in the DVD changer.

If “DISC × Check” appears on the display: It indicates that the disc dirty, damaged, or it was inserted upside down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly. If a disc which is not playable is inserted, “DISC × Check” will also appear on the screen. For appropriate discs for this player, see “Audio/video system operating hints” on page 221.

If “Region Code Error” appears on the display: It indicates that the DVD region code is not set properly.

If “DVD Error” appears on the display: The following causes are possible.

- There is a trouble inside the system. Eject the disc.
- The inside of the changer unit may be too hot due to the very high ambient temperature. Eject the disc and allow the changer to cool down.

If “NO MUSIC FILE” appears on the display: It indicates that the disc has no playable data.

If the malfunction is not rectified: Take your vehicle to your dealer.

If an MP3/WMA disc contains CD-DA files, only CD-DA files are played. If an MP3/WMA disc contains files other than CD-DA, only MP3/WMA files are played.

(g) DVD player and DVD video disc information

- **DVD video discs**

This DVD player conforms to NTSC color TV formats.

Region codes: Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating a country where you can use the DVD video disc on this DVD player. If the DVD video disc is not labeled as “ALL” or “1”, you cannot use it on this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc on this player, “Region Code Error” appears on the display. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, there is a case that you cannot use it.

Marks shown on DVD video discs:

	Indicates NTSC format of color TV.
	Indicates the number of audio tracks.
	Indicates the number of language subtitles.
	Indicates the number of angles.
	Indicates the screen to be selected. Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
	Indicates a region code by which this video disc can be played. ALL: in all countries Number: region code

• DVD video disc glossary

DVD video discs: Digital versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted "MPEG2", one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoded technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.

Viewer restrictions: This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with a level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

Level 2 - 7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movie can be played.

Level 8: All types of the DVD video discs can be played.

Multi-angle feature: You can enjoy the same scene at different angles.

Multi-language feature: You can select a language of the subtitle and audio.

Region codes: The region codes are provided on DVD players and DVD discs. If the DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on the DVD player. For region codes, see page 218.

Audio: This DVD player can play liner PCM, Dolby digital, DTS and MPEG audio format DVD. Other decoded type cannot be played.

Title and chapter: Video and audio programs stored in DVD video disc are divided in parts by title and chapter.

Audio/video remote controls — — Steering switches

Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one piece of movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

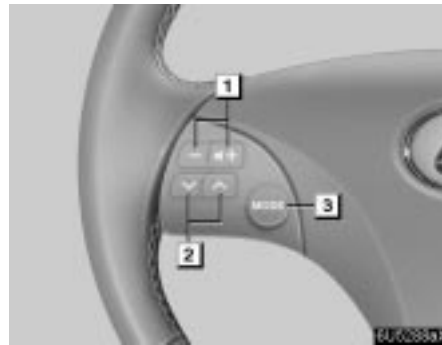
Chapter: The unit smaller than that of title. A title comprises plural chapters.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. “Dolby”, “Pro Logic”, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories. Confidential unpublished works.

©1992-1997 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

“DTS” is a trademark of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.



Some parts of the audio/video system can be adjusted with the switches on the steering wheel.

Details of the specific switches, controls, and features are described below.

- 1** Volume control switch
- 2** “^” “v” switches
- 3** “MODE” switch

1 Volume control switch

Push “+” side to increase the volume. The volume continues to increase while the switch is being pressed.

Push “-” side to decrease the volume. The volume continues to decrease while the switch is being pressed.

2 “^” “v” switches**Radio**

To select a preset station:

Quickly push and release the “^” or “v” switch. Do this again to select the next preset station.

To seek a station:

Push and hold the “^” or “v” switch until you hear a beep. Do this again to find the next station. If you push either the “^” or “v” switch in seek mode, the seek mode will cancel.

Cassette tape player

To skip to a different track in either direction:

Quickly push and release the “^” or “v” switch. “FF 1” or “REW 1” will appear on the display.

Next, push the “^” or “v” switch until the track you want to listen to is set. If you push the switch ten times, the skip function will turn off. (You can skip up to nine tracks at a time.)

When counting the number of the tracks you want to rewind, remember to count the current track as well. For example, if you want to rewind to a song that is two before the song you are listening to, push the “v” button three times.

If you push the switch further than you wanted to, push the other side of the switch. The track number will be increased or reduced.

The track number you select is not valid if it is higher than the number of the tracks remaining on the current side of the cassette.

- When the tape reaches to the beginning, the player will automatically start playing that side.
- After the tape reaches to the end, the player will automatically reverse and start playing the other side.

There must be at least 3 seconds of blank space between tracks for the switch to work correctly. In addition, the feature may not work well with some spoken, live, or classical recordings.

To fast-forward or reverse:

Push and hold the “^” switch to fast-forward a cassette tape. “FF” will appear on the display. Push and hold the “v” switch to rewind a tape. “REW” will appear on the display.

To stop the tape while it is fast-forwarding, push the “^” switch. To stop the tape while it is rewinding, push the “v” switch.

If a tape rewinds completely, the cassette tape player will stop and then play that same side. If a tape fast-forwards completely, the cassette will play the other side of the tape using the auto-reverse feature.

CD changer or DVD changer

Use this button to skip up or down to a different track, file or chapter in either direction.

To select a desired track, file or chapter: Quickly push and release the “^” or “v” switch until the track, file or chapter you want to play is set. If you want to return to the beginning of the current track, file or chapter, push the “v” switch once, quickly.

To select a desired disc:

Push and hold the “^” or “v” switch until you hear a beep to change to the next or the previous disc. Repeat this operation until you reach the disc you want to listen to.

Audio / video system operating hints

3 "MODE" switch

Each time you push the "MODE" switch, the system changes the audio mode.

To turn the audio/video system on, push the "MODE" switch.

To turn the audio/video system off, push and hold the "MODE" switch until you hear a beep.

NOTICE

To ensure correct audio/video system operations:

- *Be careful not to spill beverages over the audio/video system.*
- *Do not put anything other than a cassette tape or appropriate discs into the cassette tape slot, CD changer or DVD changer slot.*
- *The use of a cellular phone inside or near the vehicle may cause a noise from the speakers of the audio/video system which you are listening to. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.*

Radio reception

Usually, the problem with radio reception does not mean there is a problem with your radio - it is just the normal result of conditions outside the vehicle.

For example, nearby buildings and terrain can interfere with FM reception. Power lines or telephone wires can interfere with AM signals. And of course, radio signals have a limited range, and the farther you are from a station, the weaker its signal will be. In addition, reception conditions change constantly as your vehicle moves.

Here are some common reception problems that probably do not indicate a problem with your radio:

FM

Fading and drifting stations — Generally, the effective range of FM is about 40 km (25 miles). Once outside this range, you may notice fading and drifting, which increase with the distance from the radio transmitter. They are often accompanied by distortion.

Multi-path — FM signals are reflective, making it possible for two signals to reach your antenna at the same time. If this happens, the signals will cancel each other out, causing a momentary flutter or loss of reception.

Static and fluttering — These occur when signals are blocked by buildings, trees, or other large objects. Increasing the bass level may reduce static and fluttering.

Station swapping — If the FM signal you are listening to is interrupted or weakened, and there is another strong station nearby on the FM band, your radio may tune in the second station until the original signal can be picked up again.

AM

Fading — AM broadcasts are reflected by the upper atmosphere — especially at night. These reflected signals can interfere with those received directly from the radio station, causing the radio station to sound alternately strong and weak.

Station interference — When a reflected signal and a signal received directly from a radio station are very nearly the same frequency, they can interfere with each other, making it difficult to hear the broadcast.

Static — AM is easily affected by external sources of electrical noise, such as high tension power lines, lightening, or electrical motors. This results in static.

CARING FOR YOUR CASSETTE TAPE PLAYER AND TAPES

For high performance from your cassette tape player and tapes:

Clean the tape head and other parts regularly.

- A dirty tape head or tape path can decrease sound quality and tangle your cassette tapes. The easiest way to clean them is by using a cleaning tape. (A wet type is recommended.)

Use high-quality cassettes:

- Low-quality cassette tapes can cause many problems, including poor sound, inconsistent playing speed, and constant auto-reversing. They can also get stuck or tangled in the cassette tape player.
- Do not use a cassette if it has been damaged or tangled or if its label is peeling off.
- Do not leave a cassette in the player if you are not listening to it, especially if it is hot outside.
- Store cassettes in their cases and out of direct sunlight.
- Avoid using cassettes with a total playing time longer than 100 minutes (50 minutes per side). The tape used in these cassettes is thin and could get stuck or tangled in the cassette tape player.

MP3/WMA files

- MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer 3) and WMA (Windows Media Audio) are audio compression standards.
- The MP3/WMA player can play MP3 and WMA files on CD-ROM, CD-R and CD-RW discs.

The unit can play disc recordings compatible with ISO 9660 level 1 and level 2 and with the Romeo and Joliet file system.

- When naming an MP3 or WMA file, add the appropriate file extension (.mp3 or .wma).
- The MP3/WMA player plays back files with .mp3 or .wma file extensions as MP3 or WMA files. To prevent noise and playback errors, use the appropriate file extensions.
- The player can play only the first session using multi-session compatible CDs.
- MP3 files are compatible with the ID3 Tag Ver. 1.0, Ver. 1.1, Ver. 2.2, and Ver. 2.3 formats. The unit cannot display disc title, track title and artist name in other formats.
- WMA files can contain a WMA tag that is used in the same way as an ID3 tag. WMA tags carry information such as track title, artist name.
- The emphasis function is available only when playing MP3/WMA files recorded at 32, 44.1 and 48 kHz. (The system can play MP3 files with sampling frequencies of 16, 22.05, and 24 kHz. However, the emphasis function is not available for files recorded at these frequencies.)
- The sound quality of MP3/WMA files generally improves with higher bit rates. In order to achieve a reasonable level of sound quality, discs recorded with a bit rate of at least 128 kbps are recommended.

Playable bit rates

MP3 files:

MPEG1 LAYER3—64 to 320 kbps

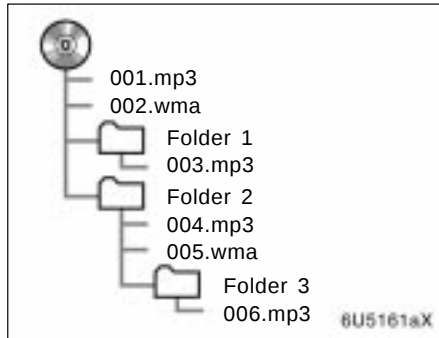
MPEG2 LSF LAYER3—64 to 160 kbps

WMA files:

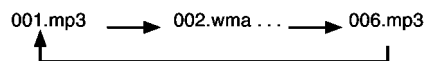
Ver. 7, 8 CBR—48 to 192 kbps

Ver. 9 CBR—48 to 320 kbps

- The MP3/WMA player does not play back MP3/WMA files from discs recorder using packet write data transfer (UDF format). Discs should be recorded using “pre-mastering” software rather than packet-write software.
- The m3u playlists are not compatible with the audio player.
- MP3i (MP3 interactive) and MP3PRO formats are not compatible with the audio player.
- The MP3 player is compatible with VBR (Variable Bit Rate).
- When playing back files recorded as VBR (Variable Bit Rate) files, the play time will not be correctly displayed if fast-forward or reverse operations are used.
- It is not possible to check folders that do not include MP3/WMA files.
- MP3/WMA files in folders up to 8 levels deep can be played. However, the start of playback may be delayed when using discs containing numerous levels of folders. For this reason, we recommend creating discs with no more than two levels of folders.
- It is possible to play up to 192 folders or 255 files on one disc.



- The play order of the compact disc with the structure shown on the left is as follows:



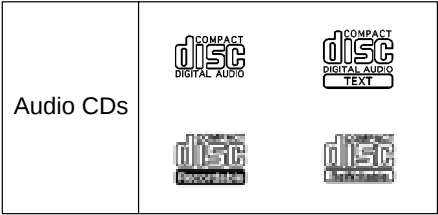
CD-R AND CD-RW DISCS

- CD-R/CD-R W discs that have not been subject to the “finalizing process” (a process that allows discs to be played on a conventional CD player) cannot be played.
- It may not be possible to play CD-R/CD-R W discs recorded on a music CD recorder or a personal computer because of disc characteristics, scratches or dirt on the disc, or dirt, condensation, etc. on the lens of the unit.
- It may not be possible to play discs recorded on a personal computer depending on the application settings and the environment. Record with the correct format. (For details, contact the appropriate application manufacturers of the applications.)
- CD-R/CD-R W discs may be damaged by direct exposure to sunlight, high temperatures or other storage conditions. The unit may be unable to play some damaged discs.
- If you insert a CD-RW disc into the MP3/WMA player, playback will begin more slowly than with a conventional CD or CD-R disc.
- Recordings on CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played using the DDCD (Double Density CD) system.

CARING FOR YOUR CD CHANGER, DVD CHANGER AND DISCS

- Your CD changer and DVD changer is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in.) discs only.
- Extremely high temperature can keep your CD changer and DVD changer from working. On hot days, use air conditioning to cool the vehicle interior before you listen to a disc.
- Bumpy roads or other vibrations may make your CD changer and DVD changer skip.
- If moisture gets into your CD changer and DVD changer, you may not hear any sound even though your CD changer and DVD changer appears to be working. Remove the discs from the CD changer and DVD changer and wait until it dries.

CD changer



- Use only compact discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your CD changer.
SACDs
dts-CDs
Copy-protected CDs

 **CAUTION**

CD changer and DVD changer player use an invisible laser beam which could cause hazardous radiation exposure if directed outside the unit. Be sure to operate the changer correctly.



DVD changer

Audio CDs	   
DVD video discs	 
DVD audio discs	
Video CDs	 

- Use only discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your DVD changer.

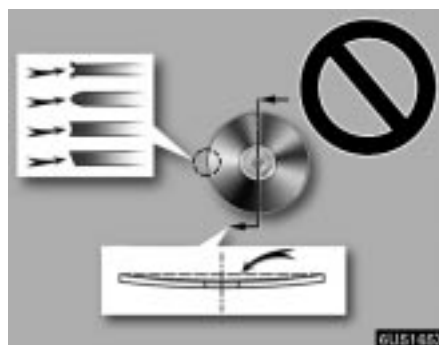
SACDs
 dts-CDs
 Copy-protected CDs
 DVD-Rs
 DVD+Rs
 DVD-R Ws
 DVD+RWs
 DVD-ROMs
 DVD-RAMs



► Special shaped discs



► Transparent / translucent discs



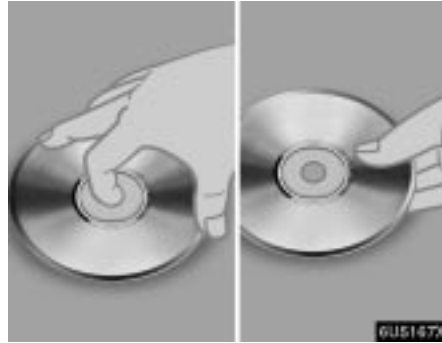
► Low quality discs



► Labeled discs

NOTICE

Do not use special shaped, transparent/translucent, low quality or labeled discs such as those shown in the illustrations. The use of such discs may damage the player or changer, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.



► Correct

► Wrong

- Handle discs carefully, especially when you are inserting them. Hold them on the edge and do not bend them. Avoid getting fingerprints on them, particularly on the shiny side.
- Dirt, scratches, warping, pin holes, or other disc damage could cause the changer to skip or to repeat a section of a track. (To see a pin hole, hold the disc up to the light.)
- Remove discs from the changer when you are not using them. Store them in their plastic cases away from moisture, heat, and direct sunlight.



To clean a disc: Wipe it with a soft, lint-free cloth that has been dampened with water. Wipe in a straight line from the center to the edge of the disc (not in a circle). Do not use a conventional record cleaner or anti-static device.

TERMS

Packet write—

This is a general term that describes the process of writing data on-demand to CD-R, etc., in the same way that data is written to floppy or hard discs.

ID3 Tag—

This is a method of embedding track-related information in an MP3 file. This embedded information can include the track title, the artist's name, the album title, the music genre, the year of production, comments and other data. The contents can be freely edited using software with ID3 tag editing functions. Although the tags are restricted to the number of characters, the information can be viewed when the track is played back.

WMA Tag—

WMA files can contain a WMA tag that is used in the same way as an ID3 tag. WMA tags carry information such as track title, artist name.

ISO 9660 format—

This is the international standard for the formatting of CD-ROM folders and files. For the ISO 9660 format, there are two levels of regulations.

Level 1:

The file name is in 8.3 format (8 character file names, with a 3 character file extension. File names must be composed of one-byte capital letters and numbers. The “_” symbol may also be included.)

Level 2:

The file name can have up to 31 characters (including the separation mark “.” and file extension). Each folder must contain fewer than 8 hierarchies.

m3u—

Playlists created using “WINAMP” software have a playlist file extension (.m3u).

MP3—

MP3 is an audio compression standard determined by a working group (MPEG) of the ISO (International Standard Organization). MP3 compresses audio data to about 1/10 the size of that on conventional discs.

WMA—

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is an audio compression format developed by Microsoft. It compresses files into a size smaller than that of MP3 files. The decoding formats for WMA files are Ver. 7, 8, and 9.



SECTION I

BASIC FUNCTIONS

Basic information before operation

- Initial screen
- Touch screen operation
- Inputting letters and numbers/List screen operation
- Function help
- Map screen operation Current position display Screen scroll operation
Switching the screens Map scale Foot print map Orientation of the
map

Initial screen



When the engine switch is in the “ACC” or “IG-ON” mode, the initial screen will be displayed and the system will begin operating.



After a few seconds, the “CAUTION” screen will be displayed.



Touch “English”, “Français” or “Español” to select a language.

When “I Agree” is touched on the screen, the map screen will be displayed.

The “CAUTION” screen will be displayed when the “INFO” button is pushed and “Language” is touched. Then select a language. (See “Selecting a language” on page 158.)

● Maintenance information

This system informs about when to replace certain parts or components and shows dealer information (if registered) on the screen.

When the vehicle reaches a previously set driving distance or date specified for a scheduled maintenance check, the “Information” screen will be displayed when the navigation system is in operation.



To disable this screen, touch “Do Not Display This Message Again.”. This screen goes off if the screen is not operated for several seconds.

To prevent this information screen from being displayed again, touch “Do Not Display This Message Again.”.

To register “Maintenance information”, see “Maintenance information” on page 96.

● Memo information

This system notifies about a memo entry. At the specified date, the memo information will be displayed when the navigation system is in operation. The memo information screen will be displayed every time the system is turned on.



The memo of the current date can be viewed by touching "Memo". (See " — Editing a memo" on page 101.)

To disable this screen, touch "Do Not Display This Message Again.". This screen goes off if the screen is not operated for several seconds.

To prevent this information screen from being displayed again, touch "Do Not Display This Message Again.".

To register "Memo information", see "Calendar with memo" on page 99.

Touch screen operation

This system is operated mainly by the touch-screen buttons on the screen.

To prevent damage to the screen, lightly touch buttons on the screen with the finger. When a button on the screen is touched, a beep sounds.

Do not use objects other than the finger to touch the screen.

INFORMATION

- *If the system does not respond to a touch on a touch-screen button, move the finger away from the screen and then touch it again.*
- *Dimmed touch-screen buttons cannot be operated.*
- *Wipe off fingerprints using a glass cleaning cloth. Do not use chemical cleaners to clean the touch screen.*
- *The displayed image may become darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the display is cold.*
- *Under extremely cold conditions, the map may not be displayed and the data input by a user may be deleted. Also, the touch-screen buttons may be harder than usual to depress.*
- *When you look at the screen through polarised material such as polarised sunglasses, the screen may be dark and hard to see. If so, change the angle of the screen or take off your sunglasses.*

Inputting letters and numbers/List screen operation

When searching for an address or a name, or entering a memo, letters and numbers can be input via the touch screen.

INFORMATION

*Keyboard layout can be changed.
(See page 85.)*

● To input letters

To display the alphabet keys, touch “A-Z” or “A-Y”.



Enter letters by touching the alphabet keys directly.



: Touching this button erases one letter. By holding this button, letters will continue to be erased.

On certain letter entry screens, letters can be entered in upper or lower case.



: To enter in lower case.



: To enter in upper case.

- To input numbers and symbols

To display the number keys and symbol keys, touch “0-9”.



Enter numbers and symbols by touching the number keys and symbol keys directly.

 : Touching this button erases one letter. By holding this button, letters will continue to be erased.

 : Touching this button displays other symbols.

 : Touching this button displays other symbols.

- To display the list



To search for an address or a name, touch “List”. Matching items from the database are listed even if the entered address or name is incomplete.

If the number of matches is four or less, the list is displayed without touching “List”.



INFORMATION

*The number of matching items is shown to the right side of the screen. If the number of matching items is more than 9,999, the system displays “****” on the screen.*

• List screen operation

When a list is displayed, use the appropriate button to scroll through the list.



To shift to the next or previous page.



To scroll up or down one item at a time.



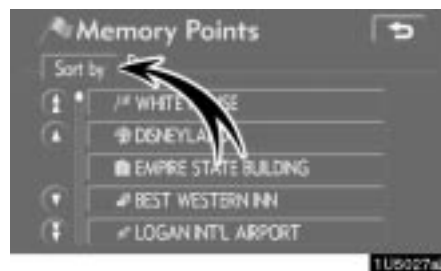
This expresses a displayed screen position.

- If  appears to the right of the item name, the complete name is too long for the display. Touch  to scroll to the end of the name.
- Touch  to scroll to the beginning of the name.

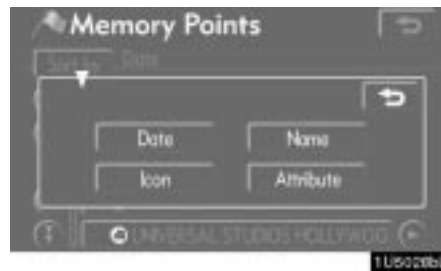
• Sorting

The order of a list displayed on the screen can be rearranged.

TYPE A



1. Touch "Sort by".



2. Select the desired sorting criteria.

Sorting criteria are as follows:

"Distance": To sort in the order of distance from your current location.

"Date": To sort in the order of the date.

"Category": To sort in the order of the category.

"Icon": To sort in the order of the icons.

"Name": To sort in order by name.

"Attribute": To sort in order by attribute.

TYPE B



“Dist. Sort”: To sort in the order of distance from the current vehicle location. The distance from current vehicle position up to the destination is displayed to the right of the name.

“Name Sort”: To sort in alphabetical order by name.

Function help

Explanations for the functions of the “Destination”, “Setup” and “Menu” screens can be viewed.



Touch **?**.



!: To view the previous page.

!: To view the next page.

↩: To return to the previous screen.

Map screen operation — — Current position display

When starting the navigation system, the current position is displayed first.

This screen displays the current vehicle position and a map of the surrounding local area.



The current vehicle position mark (1) appears in the center or bottom center of the map screen.

A street name will appear on the bottom of the screen, depending on the scale of the map (2).

You can return to this map screen that shows your current position at any time from any screen by pushing the “MAP/VOICE” button.

While driving, the current vehicle position mark is fixed on the screen and the map moves.

The current position is automatically set as the vehicle receives signals from the GPS (Global Positioning System). If the current position is not correct, it is automatically corrected after the vehicle receives signals from the GPS.

INFORMATION

- After battery disconnection, or on a new vehicle, the current position may not be correct. As soon as the system receives signals from the GPS, the correct current position is displayed.
- To correct the current position manually, see page 92.

— Screen scroll operation (one-touch scroll)

When any point on the map is touched, that point moves to the center of the screen and is shown by the cursor mark (1).



Use the scroll feature to move the desired point to the center of the screen for looking at a point on the map that is different from the current position of the vehicle.

If the finger is continuously held on the screen, the map will continue scrolling in that direction until the finger is removed.

A street name, city name, etc. of the touched point will be shown, depending on the scale of the map (2). Distance from the current position to the touched point will also be shown (3).

After the screen is scrolled, the map remains centered at the selected location until another function is activated. The current vehicle position mark will continue to move along your actual route and may move off the screen. When the “MAP/VOICE” button is pushed, the current vehicle position mark returns to the center of the screen and the map moves as the vehicle proceeds along the designated route.

INFORMATION

When the one-touch scroll feature is used, the current vehicle position mark may disappear from the screen. Move the map with a one-touch scroll again or push the “MAP/VOICE” button to return to the current vehicle position map location display.

- **To set the cursor position as a destination**

A specific point on the map can be set as a destination using the one-touch scroll function.



Touch “Enter” (target icon).

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

- **To register the cursor position as a memory point**

Memory point registration enables easy access to a specific point.



Touch “Mark”.

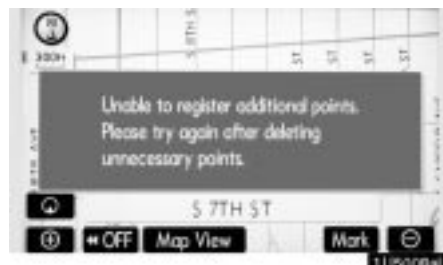
When you touch “Mark”, the following screen appears for a few seconds, and then the map screen returns.



The registered point is shown by (location pin icon) on the map.

To change the icon or name, etc., see “ — Editing memory points” on page 72.

Up to 106 memory points can be registered. If there is an attempt to register more than 106, a message appears for confirmation.



- To see information about the icon where the cursor is set



To display information about an icon, set the cursor on it.

POI INFORMATION

When the cursor is set on a POI icon, the name and “Info.” are displayed on the top of the screen.



Touch “Info.”



Information such as the name, address, and phone number are displayed.

If “Enter” (with a target icon) is touched, the position of the cursor is set as a destination.

If there is already a set destination, “Add to” (with a target icon) and “Replace” (with a target icon) are displayed.

“Add to” (with a target icon): To add a destination.

“Replace” (with a target icon): To delete the existing destinations and set a new one.

To register this POI as a memory point, touch “Mark”. (See page 71.)

If the phone icon is touched, the registered telephone number can be called.

INFORMATION

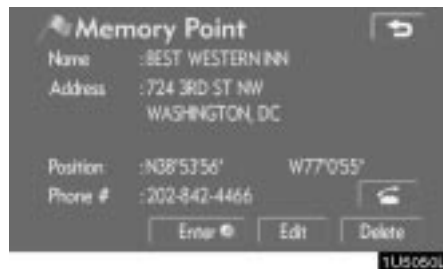
The desired Point of Interest can be displayed on the map screen. (See “ — Display POI icons” on page 56.)

MEMORY POINT INFORMATION

When the cursor is set on a memory point icon, the name and **"Info."** are displayed on the top of the screen.



Touch **"Info."**



Information such as the name, address, and phone number are displayed.

If **"Enter"** is touched, the position of the cursor is set as a destination.

If there is already a set destination, **"Add to"** and **"Replace"** are displayed.

"Add to": To add a destination.

"Replace": To delete the existing destinations and set a new one.

To edit a memory point, touch **"Edit"**. (See "— Editing memory points" on page 72.)

To delete a memory point, touch **"Delete"**.

If  is touched, the registered telephone number can be called.

DESTINATION INFORMATION

When the cursor is set on a destination icon, the name and **"Info."** are displayed on the top of the screen.



Touch **"Info."**



Information such as the name, address, and phone number are displayed.

To delete a destination, touch **"Delete"**.

If  is touched, the registered telephone number can be called.

— Switching the screens

Any one of the screen configurations can be selected .



1. Touch this button to display the following screen.



2. To select the desired screen configuration, touch one of the following buttons.

Depending on the conditions, certain screen configuration buttons cannot be selected.

-  : To display the single map screen. (See page 13.)
-  : To display the dual map screen. (See page 13.)
-  : To display the compass mode screen. (See page 14.)
-  : To display the turn list screen. (See page 46.)
-  : To display the arrow screen. (See page 46.)
-  : To display the freeway information screen. (See page 45.)
-  : To display the intersection guidance screen or the guidance screen on the freeway. (See page 45.)

● Screen configurations

SINGLE MAP

This is a regular map screen.

While on a different screen, touching  will display the single map screen.



The screen shows the single map.

DUAL MAP

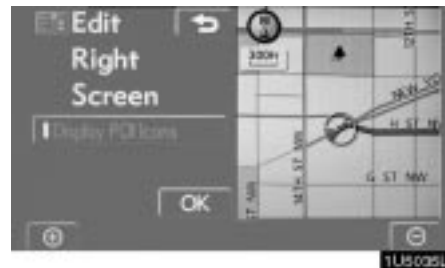
A map can be displayed split in two.

While on a different screen, touching  will display the dual map screen.



The screen shows the dual map. The map on the left is the main map.

The right side map can be edited by touching any specific point on the right side map.



This screen can perform the following procedures:

1. Changing the map scale
2. Displaying the POI icon
3. Changing the orientation of the map

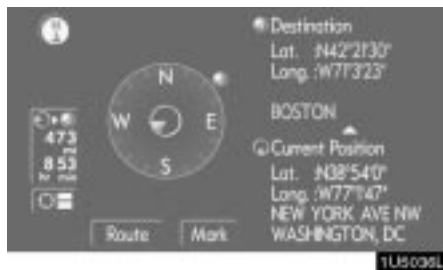
Touch "OK" when you complete editing.

The screen returns to the dual map screen.

COMPASS MODE

Current vehicle position is indicated with a compass, not with a map.

While on a different screen, touching  will display the compass mode screen.



Information about the destination and current position, as well as a compass, is displayed on the screen.

The destination mark is displayed in the direction of the destination. When driving refer to the longitude and latitude coordinates, and the compass, to make sure that your vehicle is headed in the direction of the destination.

INFORMATION

When the vehicle travels out of the coverage area, the guidance screen changes to the compass mode screen.

— Map scale

Touch  or  to change the scale of the map display. The scale bar and indicator at the bottom of the screen indicates the map scale menu. The scale range is 150 feet (50 m) to 250 miles (400 km).

Touch  or  until the scale bar changes normally. By continuing to touch the button, the scale bar changes smoothly.

The scale of the map display can be changed by touching the scale bar directly. It is not available while driving.

The map scale is displayed under the north-up symbol or heading-up symbol at the top left of the screen.

INFORMATION

When the map scale is at the maximum range of 250 miles (400 km),  is not shown. When the map scale is at the minimum range of 150 feet (50 m),  is not shown. In areas where the foot print map is available the map scale changes from  to  when at the minimum range.

Foot print map

For the area which is covered by the foot print map (Some areas in the following cities: Detroit, Chicago, N.Y., L.A), you can switch to the foot print map on a scale of 75 feet (25 m).

- **To switch to the foot print map**

 changes into  when the map is scaled down to 150 feet (50 m).



To display the foot print map, touch .

To delete the foot print map display, touch .

INFORMATION

- If the map or the current position is moved to the area which is not covered by the foot print map, the screen scale automatically changes to 150 feet (50 m).
- On the foot print map, a one way street is displayed by .
- It is not possible to perform scrolling on the foot print map (one-touch scroll) while driving.

- **To display building information**

Information is available only for buildings for which information is recorded on the map disc.



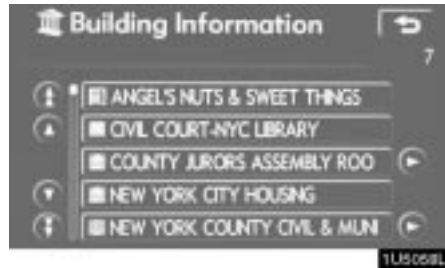
1. Touch "Info." while the foot print map is displayed.

If the map is displayed by a split screen, the map will change into a single map display.



2. Using the eight-direction arrow, move the cursor to the position of the building to display building information.

3. Touch "Building Info."



Details of POIs in some buildings may be displayed.

For detailed POI information, touch the building name. You can see details of the selected POIs.

— Orientation of the map



► North-up screen



► Heading-up screen

The orientation of the map can be changed from North-up to Heading-up by touching the orientation symbol at the top left of the screen.



North-up symbol

Regardless of the direction of vehicle travel, North is always up.



Heading-up symbol

The direction of vehicle travel is always up. A red arrow indicates North.

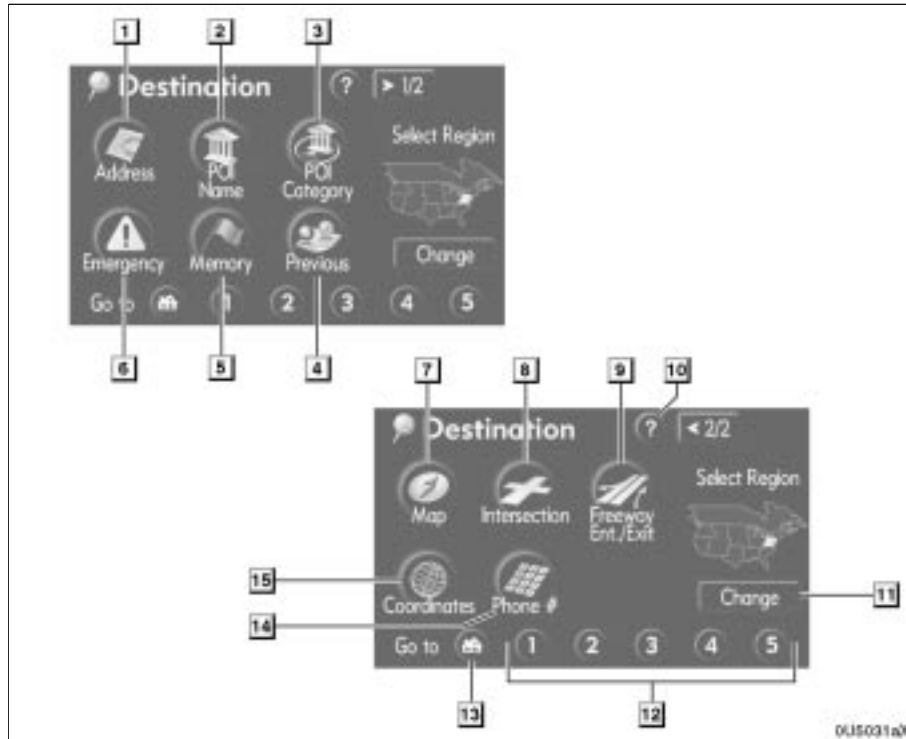
SECTION II

DESTINATION SEARCH

Destination search

- Quick reference ("Destination" screen)
- Destination search Selecting the region to search Destination search by Home Destination search by Quick access Destination search by "Address" Destination search by "POI Name" Destination search by "POI Category" Destination search by "Emergency" Destination search by "Memory" Destination search by "Previous" Destination search by "Map" Destination search by "Intersection" Destination search by "Freeway Ent./Exit" Destination search by "Coordinates" Destination search by "Phone #"
- Starting route guidance

Quick reference (“Destination” screen)

**1 “Address”**

A house number and the street address can be input by using the input keys. 23

2 “POI Name”

Select one of the many POIs (Points of Interest) that have already been stored in the system's database. 27

3 “POI Category”

A destination can be selected from the POI category. 30

4 “Previous”

A destination can be selected from any of the last 100 previously set destinations and from the previous starting point. 34

5 “Memory”

The location can be selected from the registered “Memory points”. (To register memory points, see “ — Registering memory points” on page 71.) 34

6 “Emergency”

One of the four categories of emergency service points that are already stored in the system's database can be selected. 33

7 “Map”

A destination can be selected simply by touching the location on the displayed map. 35

8 “Intersection”

The names of two intersecting streets can be entered. This is helpful if only the general vicinity, not the specific address, is known. 35

9 "Freeway Ent./Exit"

The name of a freeway (interstate) entrance or exit can be entered. 36

10 "?"

Function help for the "Destination" screen can be viewed on this screen. 7

11 "Change"

To change the selected region to search, touch this button. 20

12 Quick access touch-screen buttons

One of 5 preset destinations can be selected by touching the screen directly. To use this function, it is necessary to set the "Quick Access" for each memory point. (To register a "Quick Access", see " — Editing memory points" on page 72.) 22

13 Home touch-screen button

A personal home address can be selected without entering the address each time. To use this function, it is necessary to set "Home" for the memory point. (To register "Home", see " — Registering home" on page 77.) 22

14 "Phone #"

A destination can be entered by the telephone number. 38

15 "Coordinates"

A destination can be set by using latitude and longitude as coordinates. 37

Destination search —

Push the "DEST" button and the "Destination" screen appears.



You can use one of 13 different methods to search your destination. (See pages 22 through 38.)

INFORMATION

When searching the destination, the response to the touch-screen button may be slow.

— Selecting the region to search

SELECTING THE REGION TO SEARCH ON THE DESTINATION SCREEN



1. Touch “Change” on the “Destination” screen to display a map of the United States and Canada divided into 11 regions. (For map database information and updates, see “Map database information and updates” on page 274.)



2. Touch one of “US1” through “CAN” to select a region to search.
3. Touch “OK” and the “Destination” screen returns.

SELECTING THE REGION TO SEARCH ON THE INPUT SCREEN

Change the selected region in order to set a destination from a different region by using “Address”, “POI Name”, “Freeway Ent./Exit” or “Intersection”.



1. Touch the region to search button like “US8” on the input screen to display a map of the United States and Canada divided into 11 regions. (For map database information and updates, see “Map database information and updates” on page 274.)



2. Touch one of “US1” through “CAN” to select a region to search.
3. Touch “OK” and the previous screen returns.

U.S.A.	
Button	States included in the search region
"US1"	Idaho Oregon Washington
"US2"	California Nevada
"US3"	Arizona Colorado Montana New Mexico Utah Wyoming
"US4"	Iowa Kansas Minnesota Missouri North Dakota Nebraska South Dakota
"US5"	Oklahoma Texas
"US6"	Illinois Indiana Kentucky Michigan Ohio Wisconsin
"US7"	Arkansas Alabama Louisiana Mississippi Tennessee
"US8"	Connecticut Massachusetts Maine New Hampshire New Jersey New York Rhode Island Vermont

"US9"	Washington, D.C. Delaware Maryland New Jersey Pennsylvania Virginia West Virginia
"US10"	Florida Georgia North Carolina South Carolina

Canada	
Button	Provinces and regions included in the search region
"CAN"	All provinces and regions in Canada included in this button.

— Destination search by Home



Touch the home touch-screen button on the “Destination” screen.

The screen changes and displays the map location for home and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

To use this function, it is necessary to set “Home” for the memory point. (To register “Home”, see page 77.)

INFORMATION

Guidance starts from the current vehicle position to your home if “Enter” is touched even while driving.

— Destination search by Quick access



Touch any of the quick access touch-screen buttons on the “Destination” screen.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the quick access point and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

To use this function, it is necessary to set “Quick Access” for each memory point. (To register “Quick Access”, see page 74.)

INFORMATION

Guidance starts from the current vehicle position to the quick access point if “Enter” is touched even while driving.

— Destination search by “Address”

There are 2 ways to input a destination by address.

Touch “Address” on the “Destination” screen.



(a) Inputting a house number and a street name



1. Touch numbers directly on the screen to input a house number.

After inputting a house number, touch “OK” to display the screen for inputting a street name.

It is possible to input a street name first. Touch “Street” to display the screen for inputting a street name.



2. Input the street name and touch “List”.



3. When the desired street name is found, touch the corresponding button.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 38.)

If the same address exists in more than one city, the current screen changes to the city list screen.



4. Select or enter the desired city.

"Input Name": To narrow down the listed items by inputting the city name.



If inputting a street name first, the screen changes. The house number can then be input.

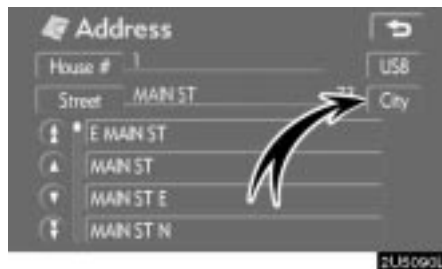


If the above screen appears, an address range on the screen can be selected.



If the same address exists in more than one city, the current screen changes to the city list screen.

(b) Selecting a city to search



Touch "City".



To search by city, the following three methods are possible.

1. Input the city name
2. Select from the nearest 5 cities
3. Select from the last 5 cities

INFORMATION

- To change the selected region, touch "Select Region".
- To cancel the city setting, touch "Any City".

INPUTTING THE CITY NAME

1. Touch "Input City Name".



2. Input a city name.



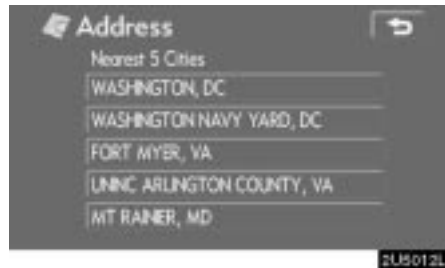
3. Touch the button of the desired city name from the displayed list.

"Map": To display the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 38.)

The current screen changes to the screen for inputting a house number or a street name. (See "(a) Inputting a house number and a street name" on page 23.)

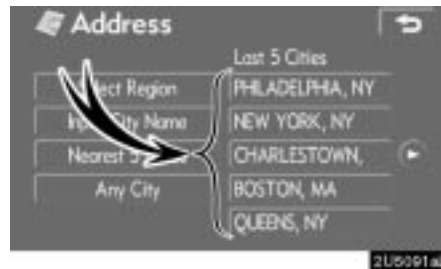
SELECTING FROM THE NEAREST 5 CITIES

1. Touch "Nearest 5 Cities".



2. Touch the button of the desired city name from the displayed list.

The current screen changes to the screen for inputting a house number or a street name. (See "(a) Inputting a house number and a street name" on page 23.)

SELECTING FROM THE LAST 5 CITIES

Touch the button of the desired city name.

If the navigation has not be used, no cities will be displayed on the screen.

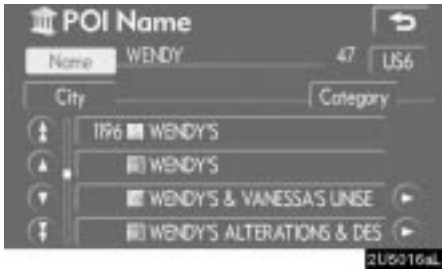
The current screen changes to the screen for inputting a house number or a street name. (See "(a) Inputting a house number and a street name" on page 23.)

— Destination search by
“POI Name”

1. Touch “POI Name” on the “Destina-
tion” screen.



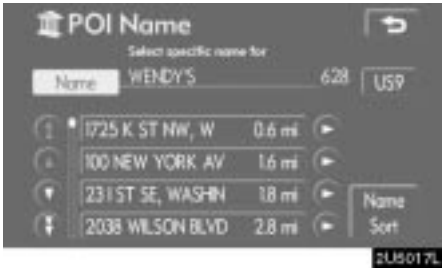
2. Input the name of the Point of Inter-
est.



3. Touch the button of the desired des-
tination.

The screen changes and displays the map
location of the selected destination and the
route preference. (See “Starting route
guidance” on page 38.)

When inputting the name of a specific
Point of Interest, and there are two or more
sites with the same name, the list screen
is displayed.



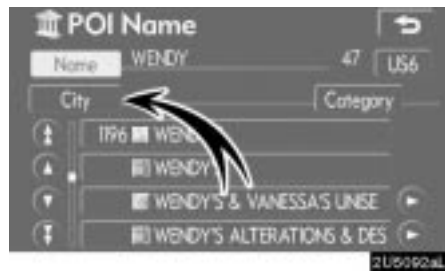
Touch the button of the desired des-
tination.

If the same name exists in more than one
city, a search can be performed more easi-
ly with “City” and “Category”. (See “(a)
Selecting a city to search” on page 28 and
“(b) Selecting from the categories” on page
30.)

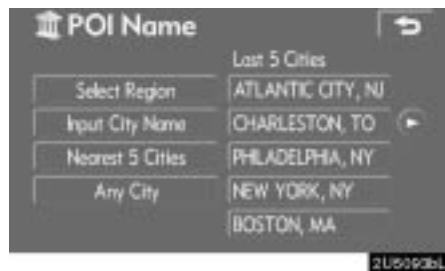
INFORMATION

*The desired Point of Interest can be
displayed on the map screen. (See “
— Display POI icons” on page 56.)*

(a) Selecting a city to search



Touch "City".



To search by city, the following three methods are possible.

1. Input the city name
2. Select from the nearest 5 cities
3. Select from the last 5 cities

INFORMATION

- To change the selected region, touch "Select Region".
- To cancel the city setting, touch "Any City".

INPUTTING THE CITY NAME

1. Touch "Input City Name".



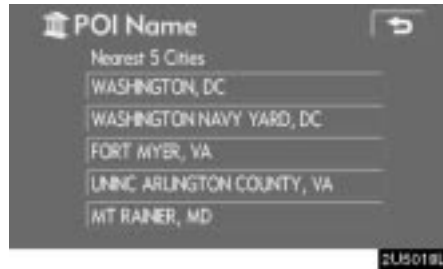
2. Input the city name.



3. Touch the button of the desired city name from the displayed list.

SELECTING FROM THE NEAREST 5 CITIES

1. Touch "Nearest 5 Cities".

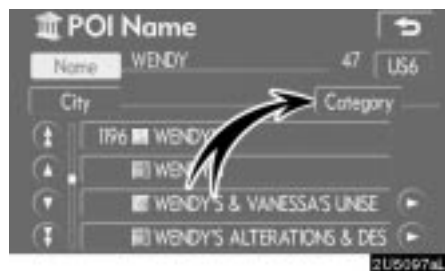


2. Touch the button of the desired city name.

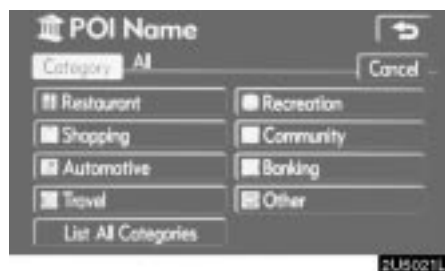
SELECTING FROM THE LAST 5 CITIES

- Touch the button of the desired city name.

If the navigation has not be used, no cities will be displayed on the screen.

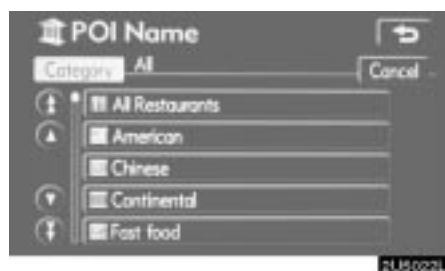
(b) Selecting from the categories

Touch “Category”.



If the desired POI category is on the screen, touch the name to display a detailed list of the POI category.

If the desired POI category is not on the screen, touch “**List All Categories**” to list all POI categories.



When the desired category is touched, the POI name list screen or POI name input screen is displayed.

— Destination search by “POI Category”

The destination can be set by selecting the search point and the POI category.

Touch “POI Category” on the “Destination” screen.



Set the search point by the following method:

1. Input the city center
2. Set the current position as the search point
3. Set the search point via the map screen
4. Set the search point from any destination

It is possible to display the names of POIs located within approximately 20 miles (32 km) from the selected search point.

INPUTTING THE CITY CENTER

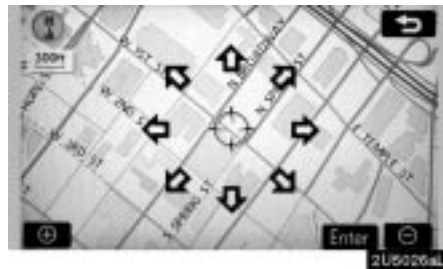
1. Touch "Input City Center".



2. Input the city center name.



3. Touch the button of the desired city center name.



When an arrow facing the desired point is touched, the map scrolls in that direction. Releasing the finger from the arrow will stop the scrolling.

4. Touch "Enter".

The search point is set and the "POI Category" screen will be displayed.

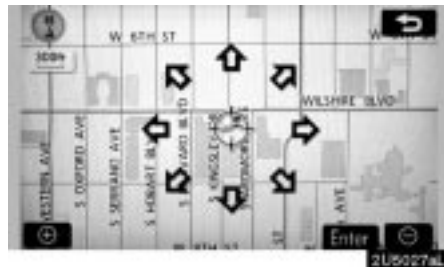
SETTING THE CURRENT POSITION AS THE SEARCH POINT

- Touch "Current Position".

The search point is set at the current position, and the "POI Category" screen will be displayed.

SETTING THE SEARCH POINT VIA THE MAP SCREEN

1. Touch "Map".



When an arrow facing the desired point is touched, the map scrolls in that direction. Releasing the finger from the arrow will stop the scrolling.

2. Touch "Enter".

The search point is set and the "POI Category" screen will be displayed.

SETTING THE SEARCH POINT FROM DESTINATIONS

1. Touch the destination buttons at the bottom of the screen.



When an arrow facing the desired point is touched, the map scrolls in that direction. Releasing the finger from the arrow will stop the scrolling.

2. Touch "Enter".

The search point is set and the "POI Category" screen will be displayed.

- To search POIs near the search point

When the search point is set, the "POI Category" screen will be displayed.



Select the desired POI categories.

"List": If the desired POI categories have already been selected, a list of POI will be displayed from among the selected categories.

The selected category icon appears on the top left of the screen.

If the desired POI category is not on the screen, touch **"List All Categories"** to list all POI categories.



Select the desired POI categories from the list and touch "OK".

The selected category icon appears on the top left of the screen.



“Select Category”: To return to the POI category selection screen.

“Show List”: To display the list of POIs in the selected categories.



By touching the button of the desired item, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

The direction arrows of POIs are displayed only when the current position is set as the search point.

“On Route”: When the indicator is illuminated by touching this button, the list of the items searched along the route is displayed.

— Destination search by “Emergency”

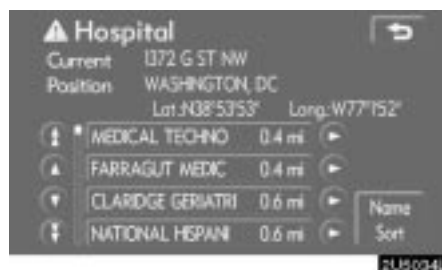
1. Touching “Emergency” on the “Destination” screen.

The display changes to a screen to select police stations, dealers, hospitals or fire stations. While driving, only nearby police stations, dealers, hospitals, or fire stations are shown. The current position is shown with an address, and the latitude and the longitude at the top of the screen.



2. Touch the desired emergency category.

The selected emergency category list is displayed.



3. Touch the button of the desired destination.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

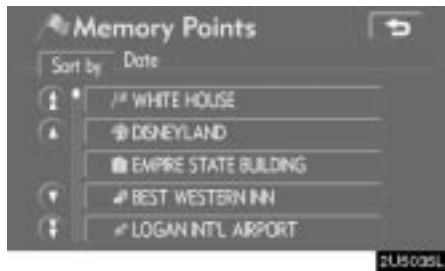
INFORMATION

The navigation system does not guide in areas where route guidance is unavailable. (See page 273.)

— Destination search by “Memory”

1. Touch “Memory” on the “Destination” screen.

A list of registered memory points is displayed. (To register or edit memory points, see “My places” on page 70.)



2. Touch the button of your desired memory point.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

— Destination search by “Previous”

1. Touch “Previous” on the “Destination” screen.



The previous starting point and up to 100 previously set destinations are displayed on the screen.

2. Touch the button of the desired destination.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

INFORMATION

The list of previous destinations can be deleted when the vehicle is stopped. (See “ — Deleting previous points” on page 83.)

— Destination search by “Map”

Touch “Map” on the second page of the “Destination” screen.



The screen changes and displays the map location that was previously displayed just before the destination input operation and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

INFORMATION

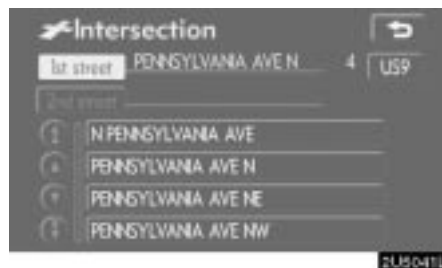
Guidance starts if “Enter” is touched even while driving. However, the cursor cannot be moved.

— Destination search by “Intersection”

1. Touch “Intersection” on the second page of the “Destination” screen.



2. Input the name of the two intersecting streets which are located near the destination to be set.

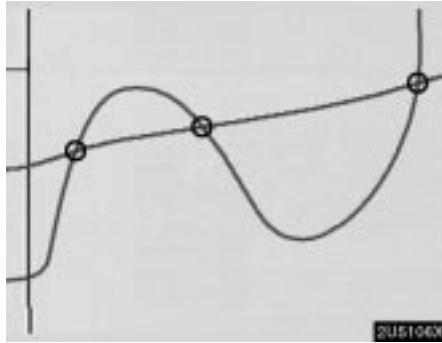


3. Touch the button of the desired item.

After inputting the two intersecting streets, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

— Destination search by “Freeway Ent./Exit”

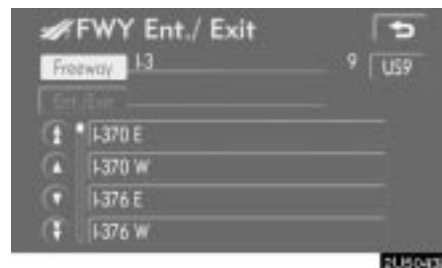
1. To input a freeway entrance or exit, touch “Freeway Ent./Exit” on the second page of the “Destination” screen.



If the same two streets cross at more than one intersection, the screen changes and displays the menu to select the city name where the streets intersect. Select the city, and the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)



Be sure to use the complete name of the freeway or highway, including the hyphen, when entering the destination. Freeways and interstates use an “I” (I-405). US highways use the state designation before the number (CA-118).



2. Select the desired freeway by touching the button.



3. Either a freeway “Entrance” or “Exit” can be selected.

— Destination search by “Coordinates”

1. Touch “Coordinates” on the second page of the “Destination” screen.



4. Touch the button of the desired entrance or exit name.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

“Input Name”: An applicable list is displayed by touching this button and inputting the name.



2. Input the latitude and the longitude.
3. When the input is finished, touch “OK”.

By touching the button of the desired point, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

— Destination search by “Phone #”

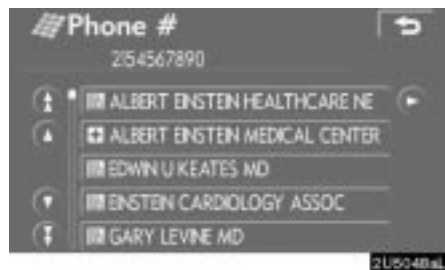
1. Touch “Phone #” on the second page of the “Destination” screen.



2. Input a telephone number.
3. After inputting a telephone number, touch “OK”.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

If there is more than one site having the same number, the following screen will be displayed.

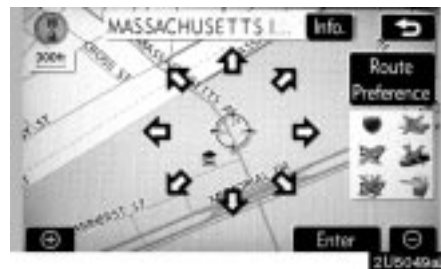


INFORMATION

- If there is no match for the telephone number inputted, a list of identical numbers with different area codes will be displayed.
- To set a memory point as a destination using the phone number, the number must be registered previously. (See page 76.)

Starting route guidance

After inputting the destination, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference.



1. When an arrow facing the desired point is touched, the map scrolls in that direction.

Releasing the finger from the arrow will stop the scrolling.

2. Touch “Enter”.

The system starts route search and displays recommended routes.

If there is already a set destination, “Add to” and “Replace” are displayed.

“Add to”: To add a destination.

“Replace”: To delete the existing destinations and set a new one.

“Route Preference”: To change the route preference. (See page 40.)

“Info.”: If this button is displayed on the top of the screen, touch it to view items such as name, address, and phone number.



- 1 Current position
- 2 Destination point
- 3 Type of the route and the distance
- 4 Distance of the entire route

3. To start guidance, touch "Guide".

"3 Routes": To select the desired route from three possible routes. (See page 40.)

"Route": To change the route. (See pages 50 and 52.)

INFORMATION

- Guidance can be suspended or resumed. (See "Suspending and resuming guidance" on page 66.)
- If "Guide" is touched until a beep sounds, demo mode will start. Push the "MAP/VOICE" button to finish Demo mode.
- The route for returning may not be the same as that for going.
- The route guidance to the destination may not be the shortest route nor a route without traffic congestion.
- Route guidance may not be available if there is no road data for the specified location.
- When setting the destination on a map with a scale larger than 0.5 miles (500m), the map scale changes to 0.5 miles (500m) automatically. Set the destination again.
- If a destination is entered, the road nearest to the point you selected is set as the destination.



CAUTION

Be sure to obey traffic regulations and keep road conditions in mind while driving. If a traffic sign on the road has been changed, the route guidance may provide wrong information.

- To change the route before starting guidance

ROUTE PREFERENCE



1. You can change route preference by touching "Route Preference".



2. Select the desired route preference by touching the button.

When searching for a route, the system will avoid routes when the indicator is off.

3. After choosing the desired route preference, touch "OK".

INFORMATION

- Even if the "Allow Freeway" indicator is dimmed, the route cannot avoid including a freeway in some cases.
- If the calculated route includes a trip by ferry, the route guidance shows a sea route. After you travel by ferry, the current vehicle position may be incorrect. Upon reception of GPS signals, it is automatically corrected.

3 ROUTES SELECTION



1. To select the desired route from three routes, touch "3 Routes".



2. Touch "Quick1", "Quick2" or "Short" to select the desired route.

"Quick1": Recommended route.

This route is indicated by an orange line.

"Quick2": Alternative route.

This route is indicated by a purple line.

"Short": A route by which you can reach the destination in the shortest distance. This route is indicated by a green line.

"Info.": To display the following information about each of the 3 routes.

	Quick1	Quick2	Short
1	7h 59min	9h 36min	7h 58min
2	438 miles	527 miles	435 miles
3	17 miles	67 miles	17 miles
4	434 miles	521 miles	429 miles
5			

- 1 Time necessary for the entire trip
- 2 Distance of the entire trip
- 3 Toll road
- 4 Freeway
- 5 Ferry

Important information about this manual

For safety reasons, this manual indicates items requiring particular attention with the following marks.

 CAUTION
This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

NOTICE
<i>This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your vehicle and its equipment.</i>

INFORMATION
<i>This provides additional information.</i>

Safety Instruction



To use this system in the safest possible manner, follow all the safety tips shown below.

This system is intended to assist in reaching the destination and, if used properly, can do so. The driver is solely responsible for the safe operation of your vehicle and the safety of your passengers.

Do not use any feature of this system to the extent it becomes a distraction and prevents safe driving. The first priority while driving should always be the safe operation of the vehicle. While driving, be sure to observe all traffic regulations.

Prior to the actual use of this system, learn how to use it and become thoroughly familiar with it. Read the entire Navigation System Owner's Manual to make sure you understand the system. Do not allow other people to use this system until they have read and understood the instructions in this manual.

For your safety, some functions may become inoperable when driving. Unavailable touch-screen buttons are dimmed. Only when the vehicle is not moving, can the destination and route selection be done.



CAUTION

- For safety, the driver should not operate the navigation system while he/she is driving. Insufficient attention to the road and traffic may cause an accident.
- While driving, be sure to obey the traffic regulations and maintain awareness of the road conditions. If a traffic sign on the road has been changed, route guidance may provide wrong information such as the direction of a one way street.

While driving, listen to the voice instructions as much as possible and glance at the screen briefly and only when it is safe. However, do not totally rely on voice guidance. Use it just for reference. If the system cannot determine the current vehicle position correctly, there is a possibility of incorrect, late, or non-voice guidance.

The data in the system may occasionally be incomplete. Road conditions, including driving restrictions (no left turns, street closures, etc.) frequently change. Therefore, before following any instruction from the system, look to see whether the instruction can be done safely and legally.

This system cannot warn about such things as the safety of an area, condition of streets, and availability of emergency services. If unsure about the safety of an area, do not drive into it. **Under no circumstances is this system a substitute for the driver's personal judgement.**

Use this system only in locations where it is legal to do so. Some states/provinces may have laws prohibiting the use of video and navigation screens next to the driver.

Introduction

Thank you for your purchase of the Navigation System. Please read this manual carefully to ensure proper use. Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times.

The Navigation System is one of the most technologically advanced vehicle accessories ever developed. The system receives satellite signals from the Global Positioning System (GPS) operated by the U.S. Department of Defense. Using these signals and other vehicle sensors, the system indicates your present position and assists in locating a desired destination.

The navigation system is designed to select efficient routes from your present starting location to your destination. The system is also designed to direct you to a destination that is unfamiliar to you in an efficient manner. The system uses DENSO maps. The calculated routes may not be the shortest nor the least traffic congested. Your own personal local knowledge or "short cut" may at times be faster than the calculated routes.

The navigation system's database includes about 75 Point of Interest categories to allow you to easily select destinations such as restaurants and banks. If a destination is not in the database, you can enter the street address or a major intersection close to it and the system will guide you there.

The system will provide both a visual map and audio instructions. The audio instructions will announce the distance remaining and the direction to turn in approaching an intersection. These voice instructions will help you keep your eyes on the road and are timed to provide enough time to allow you to maneuver, change lanes or slow down.

Please be aware that all current vehicle navigation systems have certain limitations that may affect their ability to perform properly. The accuracy of the vehicle's position depends on the satellite condition, road configuration, vehicle condition or other circumstances. For more information on the limitations of the system, refer to pages 272 through 273.

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

SECTION V

OTHER FUNCTIONS

Other functions

- [Maintenance information](#) [Maintenance information setting](#) [Dealer setting](#)
- [Calendar with memo](#) [Adding a memo](#) [Editing a memo](#) [Memo list](#)
- [Hands-free system](#)
- [Speech command system](#)
- [Help screen](#)
- [Screen adjustment](#)
- [Screen setting](#)
- [Beep setting](#)
- [Selecting a language](#)



Maintenance information — — Maintenance information setting

When the navigation System is turned on, the “Information” screen displays when it is time to replace a part or certain components. (See page 2.)

1. Push the “INFO” button.



2. Touch “Maintenance”.



3. Touch the desired button.

For details of each touch-screen button, see “INFORMATION ITEMS” on page 96.

“**Delete All**”: To cancel all conditions which have been inputted.

“**Reset All**”: To reset the item which has satisfied a condition.

“**Set Dealer**”: To register or edit dealer information. (See “ — Dealer setting” on page 97.)

If “**ON**” is selected, the system gives maintenance information with the “Information” screen when the system is turned on. (See page 2.)

If “**OFF**” is selected, the “Information” screen is disabled.

When the vehicle needs to be serviced, the touch-screen button color will change to orange.

INFORMATION ITEMS

“**ENGINE OIL**”: Replace engine oil

“**OIL FILTER**”: Replace engine oil filter

“**ROTATION**”: Rotate tires

“**TIRES**”: Replace tires

“**BATTERY**”: Replace battery

“**BRAKE PAD**”: Replace brake linings

“**WIPERS**”: Replace wiper blades

“**LLC**”: Replace engine coolant

“**BRAKE OIL**”: Replace brake fluid

“**ATF**”: Replace ATF (Automatic Transmission Fluid)

“**SERVICE**”: Scheduled maintenance

“**AIR FILTER**”: Replace air filter

“**PERSONAL**”: New information items can be created separately from provided ones.



4. Input the conditions.

Notice of “Date”: The next maintenance date can be input.

Notice of “Distance”: The driving distance until the next maintenance check can be input.

“Delete”: To cancel the date and distance conditions.

“Reset”: To reset the date and distance conditions.

5. Touch “OK”.

The screen then returns to the “Maintenance” screen.

INFORMATION

- For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Warranty and Services Guide/Owner’s Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance”.
- Depending on driving or road conditions, the actual date and distance may differ from the stored date and distance in the system.

— Dealer setting

It is possible to register a dealer in the system. With dealer information registered, route guidance to the dealer is available.

1. Touch “Set Dealer” on the “Maintenance” screen.



2. If the dealer has not been registered, enter the location of the dealer in the same way as for a destination search. (See “Destination search” on page 19.)

When “Set Dealer” registration is finished, the “Edit Dealer” screen will be displayed.



3. Touch the button to be edited.

“Dealer”: To enter the name of a dealer. (See page 98.)

“Contact”: To enter the name of a dealer member. (See page 98.)

“Location”: To set a location. (See page 98.)

“Phone #”: To set a telephone number. (See page 99.)

“Delete Dealer”: To delete the dealer information displayed on the screen.

“Enter”: To set the displayed dealer as a destination. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

- To edit “Dealer” or “Contact”

1. Touch “Dealer” or “Contact” on the “Edit Dealer” screen.



2. Enter the name using the alphanumeric keys.

Up to 24 letters can be entered.

3. Touch “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

- To edit “Location”

1. Touch “Location” on the “Edit Dealer” screen.



2. Touch the eight directional touch-screen button to move the cursor  to the desired point on the map.

3. Touch “Enter”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

- To edit "Phone #" (telephone number)

1. Touch "Phone #" on the "Edit Dealer" screen.



2. Enter the number using number keys.

3. Touch "OK".

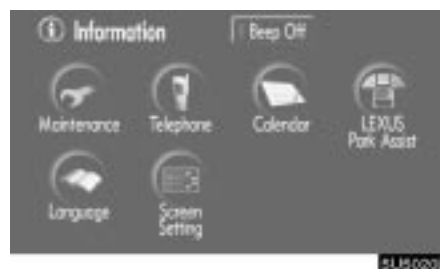
The previous screen will be displayed.

Calendar with memo —

It is possible to enter memos for particular dates on the calendar. The system informs you of the memo entry when the system is turned on. (See page 3.)

Memos can also be used for route guidance if the memo has been registered with location information.

1. Push the "INFO" button.



2. Touch "Calendar".



On this screen, the current date is highlighted in yellow.

or : To change month.

or : To change year.

"Today": To display the current month calendar (if another month will be displayed).

"List": To display the list of registered memos. (See " — Memo list" on page 102.)

Touching a date button on the "Calendar" screen displays the "Memo" screen.



Memos can be edited by touching the list button. (See “ — Editing a memo” on page 101.)

“Add Memo”: To add a memo. (See “ — Adding a memo” on page 100.)

“Mark ○”: To change the color of the mark displayed next to the date. To default the mark color, touch **“Delete”** on the “Mark color” screen.

“Date ○”: To change the color of the date. To default the date color, touch **“Delete”** on the “Date color” screen.

“Prev. Day”: To go to the “Memo” screen of the previous date.

“Today”: To go to the “Memo” screen for the current day.

“Next Day”: To go to the “Memo” screen of the next date.

— Adding a memo

If a memo is added, the system informs of the memo entry when the system is started on the memo date. (See page 3.)

1. Touch the date you want to add a memo on the “Calendar” screen.



2. Touch “Add Memo”.

Up to 100 memos can be added.



3. Touch “Memo”.



4. Enter text using the keys.

Up to 24 letters can be entered.

After entering the text, touch **“OK”** at the bottom right of the screen.



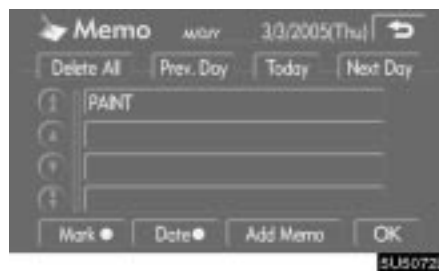
5. When registering information on the memo, touch "Location".

A screen similar to the destination search screen appears. Search the same way as searching a destination. (See "Destination search" on page 19.)

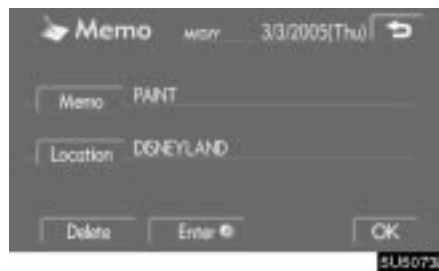
— Editing a memo

The registered memo can be edited.

1. Touch the day you want to edit a memo on the "Calendar" screen.



2. Touch the memo to be edited.



3. Touch the item to be edited.

"Memo": To edit a memo. (See " — Adding a memo" on page 100.)

"Location": To change a registered location. (See " — Adding a memo" on page 100.)

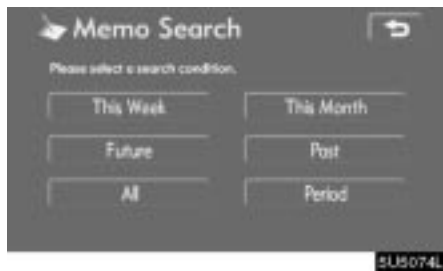
"Enter Ⓢ": To set the registered location as a destination. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 38.)

"Delete": To delete the memo.

— Memo list

It is possible to display a memo list by setting a condition.

1. Touch “List” on the “Calendar” screen.



2. Touch the desired search condition to list the memos.

“**This Week**”: To display the list of memos for the current week.

“**This Month**”: To display the list of memos for the current month.

“**Future**”: To display a list of future memos.

“**Past**”: To display the list of past memos.

“**All**”: To display the list of all memos.

“**Period**”: To display the list of memos for a specified period. (See page 102.)



3. To delete and/or edit the memo, touch the desired memo button.

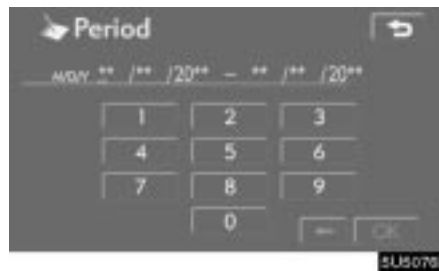
“**Delete All**”: To delete all the displayed memos.

A message will be displayed.

4. To delete, touch “Yes”. To cancel the deletion, touch “No”.

- To display memos for a specified period of time

1. Touch “Period” on the “Memo Search” screen.



2. Enter the period using the numeral keys.

The period from January 1, 2005 through December 31, 2024 can be set for searching.

3. After setting the period, touch “OK”.

The “Memo List” screen will be displayed.

Hands-free system

Hands-free system allows you to make or receive a call without taking your hands off the steering wheel by connecting your cellular phone.

This system supports Bluetooth. Bluetooth is a wireless data system by which you can call without your cellular phone being connected with a cable or placed on a cradle.

If your cellular phone does not support Bluetooth, this system can not function.



CAUTION

While driving, do not use a cellular phone or connect the Bluetooth phone.

NOTICE

Do not leave your cellular phone in the car. The temperature indoor may be high and damage the phone.

INFORMATION

In the following conditions, the system may not function.

- ***The cellular phone is turned off.***
- ***The current position is outside the communication area.***
- ***The cellular phone is not connected.***
- ***The cellular phone has a low battery.***



By pushing the telephone switch above, you can receive a call or hang up without taking your hands off the steering wheel.



► Microphone

You can use the microphone above when talking on the phone.

The other party's voice outputs from the driver's speaker. When the received calls or received voice outputs, the audio from the audio system or voice guidance from the navigation system will be muted.

INFORMATION

- *Talk alternately with the other party on the phone. If you talk at the same time, the voice may not reach each other. (It is not a malfunction.)*
- *Keep the volume of receiving voice down. Otherwise, echo is coming up. When you talk on the phone, speak clearly towards the microphone.*
- *In the following situations, your voice may not reach the other party.*
 - *Driving on unpaved road. (Making a traffic noise.)*
 - *Driving at the high speed.*
 - *The window is open.*
 - *Turning the air-conditioning vents towards the microphone.*
 - *The sound of the air-conditioning fan is loud.*



- 1** Indicates the condition of Bluetooth connection.

“Blue” indicates an excellent connection to Bluetooth.

“Yellow” indicates a bad connection to Bluetooth, resulting in possible deterioration of voice quality.

 : No connection to Bluetooth.

- 2** Indicates the amount of battery charge left.

  
Empty ←————→ Full

It is not displayed while the Bluetooth is connecting or the phone book data is being transferred.

The amount left does not always correspond with the one of your cellular phone. This system doesn't have a charging function.

- 3** Indicates the receiving area.

“Rm” is displayed when receiving in Roaming area.

“Hm” is displayed when receiving in Home area.

4 Indicates the level of reception.



Too bad ← → Excellent

The level of reception does not always correspond with the one of your cellular phone.

INFORMATION

This system supports the following service.

- ***HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0***
- ***OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1***

If your cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot enter the Bluetooth phone, and take OPP service individually.

An antenna for the Bluetooth connection is built in the display. The indication of the Bluetooth connection may turn yellow and the system may not function when you use the Bluetooth phone in the following conditions and places.

- Your cellular phone is hiding behind the display (behind the seat or in the glove box and console box).
- Your cellular phone touches or is covered with metal materials.

Leave the Bluetooth phone on the place where "Blue" indication is displayed.



Bluetooth is a trademark owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

When you release your car:

A lot of personal data is registered when you use the Hands-free system. When you release your car, initialize your data. (See "(c) Delete personal data" on page 157.)

If you initialize it, the former state will never come back again. Pay much attention when initializing the data.

You can initialize the following data in the system.

- Phone book data
- Dialed numbers and received calls
- Speed dial
- Bluetooth phone data
- Security code

FCC ID: BABBT005A
IC ID: 2024B- BT005A
MADE IN JAPAN

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS-Gen of the IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

CAUTION: Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 20 cm and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and legs).

Co-location: This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

— Enter a Bluetooth phone

To use the hands-free system, you need to enter your phone into the system. Once you have registered it, you can make a hands-free call.

1. Push the "INFO" button to display the "Information" screen.

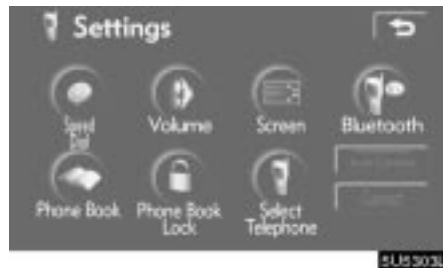


2. Touch "Telephone" to display "Telephone" screen.

You can also push  of the steering wheel to display this screen when the vehicle is stopped.



3. Touch "Settings" to display "Settings" screen.



4. Touch “Bluetooth” to display the “Bluetooth Settings” screen.



5. Touch “Register” to connect your cellular phone to the system.



6. When this screen is displayed, input the Passkey displayed on the screen into the phone.

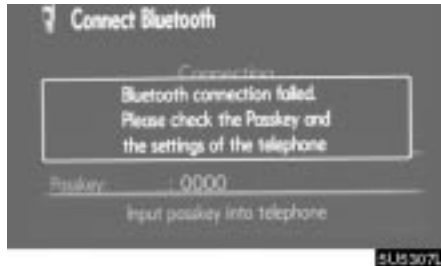
For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

If you want to cancel it, touch “Cancel”.



7. When the connection is completed, this screen is displayed.

You do not need to enter the phone in case of using the same one.



When this screen is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

- **Connecting a Bluetooth phone AUTOMATICALLY**



When you register your phone, auto connection will be turned on. Always set it to this mode and leave the Bluetooth phone in a condition where connection can be established.

Each time you touch “Auto Connect”, auto connection will be switched on or off.

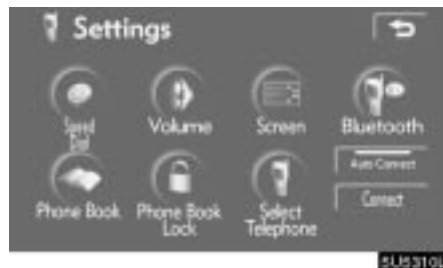


When the engine switch is in “ACC” or “IG-ON” mode, the selected Bluetooth phone will be automatically connected and the connection result is displayed.

This screen appears when the Bluetooth phone is first connected after the engine switch is in the “ACC” or “IG-ON” mode.

MANUALLY

When the auto connection failed or turned off, you have to connect Bluetooth manually.



Touch “Connect” after having enabled the Bluetooth connection on the phone.



When the connection is completed, this screen is displayed.

Now you can use the Bluetooth phone.

- **Reconnecting the Bluetooth phone**

If the Bluetooth phone is disconnected with a poor reception from the Bluetooth network when the engine switch is in the “ACC” or “IG-ON” mode, the system automatically reconnects the Bluetooth phone. In this case, the connection result is not displayed.

If the Bluetooth is disconnected on purpose such as you turned your cellular phone off, this does not happen. Reconnect it by the following methods.

- Select the Bluetooth phone again.
- Enter the Bluetooth phone.

— Call on the Bluetooth phone

After you enter the Bluetooth phone, you can call by using hands-free system. You can call using the 7 methods described below.

- By dial

You can call by inputting the telephone number.

This cannot be operated while driving.



Touch the desired key to input the telephone number.

Each time you touch ◀, an inputted digit is deleted.

When you touch , the number you called last is inputted.

Touch  or push  of the steering wheel.

- By phone book

You can call by phone book data which is transferred from your cellular phone.

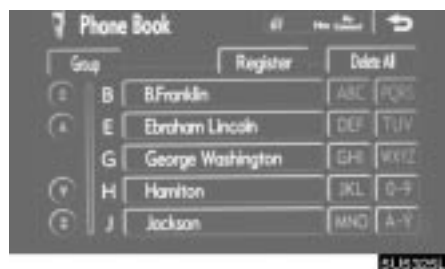
The system has one phone book. You can register up to 1000 numbers.

This cannot be operated while driving.

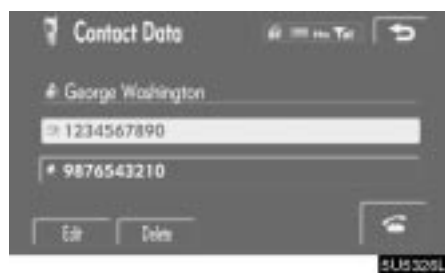


Touch the desired key to input the telephone number.

1. Touch “Phone Book” to display “Phone Book” screen.



2. Select the desired number from the list.



Touch  or push  of the steering wheel.

- By dialed numbers

You can call by dialed number. The system memorizes up to 5 dialed numbers. If it is more than 5, the oldest number is deleted.

This cannot be operated while driving.



1. Touch "Call Log" to display "Outgoing Calls" screen.





- When you call by phone book, the name (if registered) is displayed.
- When you call the same number continuously, only the newest number is registered.

2. Select the desired number from the list.



Touch  or push  of the steering wheel.

- By received calls

You can call by received calls. When a call is received, the system memorizes up to 5 numbers. If it is more than 5, the oldest number is deleted.

This cannot be operated while driving.



1. Touch "Call Log" to display "Outgoing Calls" screen.



2. Touch "Incoming Calls" to display the "Incoming Calls" screen.



- When a telephone number registered in phone book is received, the name and the number are displayed.
- Received calls which you did not answer are also memorized in the system and **"Abs."** is displayed on the left side of the number.
- Unnoticed telephone number such as a public telephone is not memorized in the system.

3. Select the desired number from the list.



Touch or push of the steering wheel.

- An international phone call may not be made depending on the cellular phone which you have.

• By speed dial

You can call by registered telephone number which you selected from a phone book, dialed numbers and received calls. (See "(a) Registering the speed dial" on page 120 for registering the speed dial.)



1. Touch "Speed Dial" to display "Speed Dial" screen.



2. Touch the desired number to call.

You can change the page by touching "Speed Dial 2" or "Speed Dial 3".

When you push the telephone switch while driving, the screen above appears. Touch the desired name to call. (The telephone number is not displayed.)

- By voice recognition

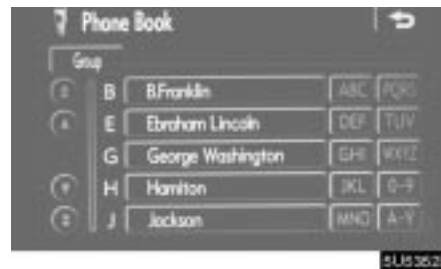


You can call by giving a command. (For the operation and command of voice recognition, see “Speech command system” on page 150 and “Help screen” on page 153.)

DIALING BY NAME

You can call by giving a voice tag registered in the phone book. For setting the voice recognition, see “● Setting the voice recognition” on page 132.

Example: Call Charlize.



You: Push the talk switch.
 System: “After the beep, please say the name.”
 You: “Charlize.”
 System: “Charlize chosen, when ready, please briefly push the talk switch or push the off-hook switch to dial.”
 You: Push the talk switch.
 System: “After the beep, please say “Dial”.”
 You: “Dial.”
 System: “Dialing the name.”
 Now you can call Charlize.



"Next" is displayed when multiple entries are found for a searched name.

Up to 6 entries can be displayed including the first searched one.

Do the following to change the entry to the next one.

- Touch "Next".
- Push the talk switch to say "Next Candidate".

Calling without the voice recognition

After the entry number is displayed, you can also call by pushing the telephone switch or touching "Dial".

Cancelling the voice recognition

The voice recognition will be cancelled when you do the following.

- Keep on pushing the talk switch.
- Push  of the steering wheel.
- Touch "Cancel". (Except for recognizing the command.)
- Say "Cancel".

DIALING BY PHONE NUMBER

You can call by giving a desired number.



You: Push the talk switch.

System: "After the beep, please say the number."

You: "812387."

System: "When ready, please briefly push the talk switch or push the off-hook switch to dial."

You: Push the talk switch.

System: "After the beep, please continue to add numbers or say "Dial"."

You: "Dial."

System: "Dialing the number."

Now you can call 812387.

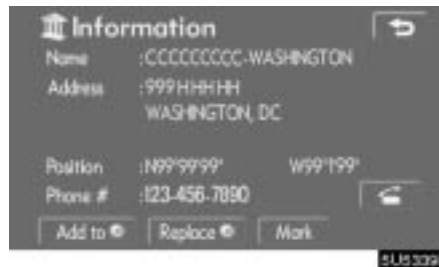
SENDING A TONE

You can send a tone by giving a desired number.



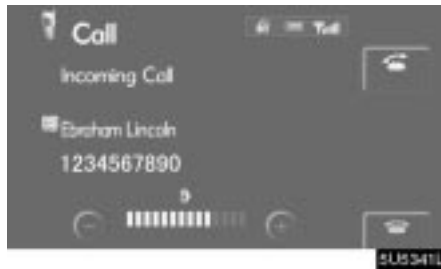
You: Push the talk switch.
 System: "Say numbers, pound, or star."
 You: "1234."
 System: "1234." "Push the talk switch."
 You: Push the talk switch.
 System: "Send? Say "Yes" or "No".
 You: "Yes."
 System: "Sending."
 Now you can send the tone.

- By POI call



You can call by touching  when it is displayed on the screen from navigation system. (See page 10 for details.)

— Receive on the Bluetooth phone



When a call is received, this screen is displayed with a sound. Touch or push of the steering wheel to talk on the phone.

To hang up the phone:

Touch or push of the steering wheel again.

To refuse to receive the call:

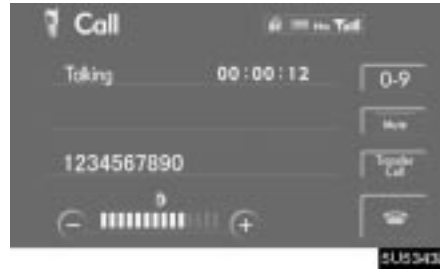
Touch and hold it.

To adjust the volume of received call:

Touch “-” or “+” or use the volume switch of the steering wheel.

On the international phone call, the other party's name may not be displayed correctly depending on the cellular phone which you have.

— Talk on the Bluetooth phone



While you are talking on the phone, this screen is displayed. You can do the operation below on the screen.

To adjust the volume of the other party's voice:

Touch “-” or “+” or use the volume switch of the steering wheel.

To hang up the phone:

Touch or push of the steering wheel.

To mute your voice:

Touch “Mute”.

To input a Key:

Touch “0-9”.

To transfer the call

Touch “Transfer Call”.

You cannot change from Hands-free call to cellular phone call while driving.

When you change from cellular phone call to Hands-free call, the Hands-free screen will be displayed and you can operate it on the screen.

Transferring method and behavior are different depending on the cellular phone which you have.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.



Touch the desired number to input the key.

To hang up the phone:

Touch or push of the steering wheel.

This cannot be operated while driving.



If the continuous tone signal is registered in a phone book, this screen appears. (If not registered, "Send" and "Exit" are not displayed.)

Confirm the number displayed on the screen and touch "Send". The number before marked sign will be sent.

When you touch "Exit", this function will be finished and normal tone screen appears.

To hang up the phone:

Touch or push of the steering wheel.

The continuous tone signal is the marked sign (p or w) and the number following telephone number. (ex. 056133p0123w#1*)

You can do this operation when you want to operate an answering machine or use a telephone service in bank for example. You can register the phone number and the code number in the phone book.

— Change the settings of the Bluetooth phone

- Sending a tone by the speed tone
You can send a tone by the speed tone. (For registering the speed tone, see “(b) Registering the speed tone” on page 122.)



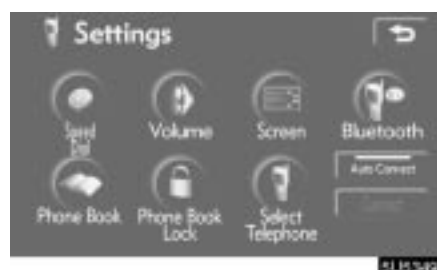
1. Touch “Speed Tone”.



2. Touch the desired switch to send a tone.



Touch “Settings” to display “Settings” screen.

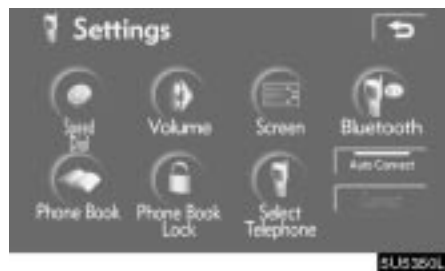


You can change the settings of the phone.

(a) Registering the speed dial

You can register the desired telephone number from phone book, dialed numbers and received calls. Up to 17 speed dial numbers can be registered.

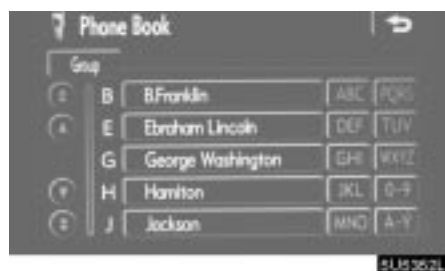
The 6th entry is the speed dial for redialing.



1. Touch "Speed Dial" to display the "Speed Dial Settings" screen.



2. Touch "Register" of "Speed Dial".



3. Select the data you want to register.



4. Touch the desired telephone number.



5. Touch the touch-screen button you want to register in.

The latest dialed number is registered in the 6th item (speed redial).



If you select a touch-screen button you registered before, this screen is displayed.

6. Touch "Yes" if you want to overwrite it.

- **Deleting the speed dial individually**
You can delete “01” - “17” of the speed dial individually.

If you delete them all at once, all of 17 numbers are deleted.



1. Touch “Delete” of “Speed Dial”.



2. Touch the touch-screen button you want to delete.

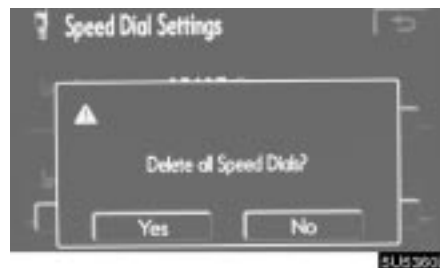


3. Touch “Yes”.

- **Deleting all of the speed dial**



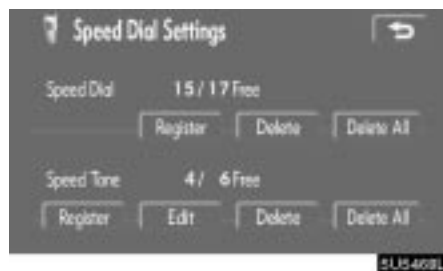
1. Touch “Delete All” of “Speed Dial”.



2. Touch “Yes”.

(b) Registering the speed tone

You can register the desired tone number. Up to 6 speed tone numbers can be registered.



1. Touch "Register" of "Speed Tone".



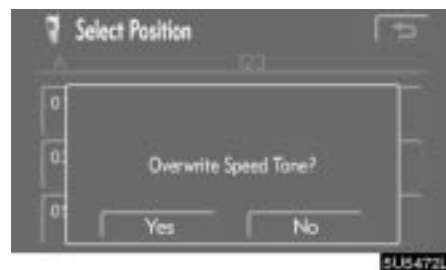
2. Use the software keyboard to input the name.



3. Input the number and touch "OK".



4. Touch the desired touch-screen button you want to register in.



If you select a touch-screen button you register before, this screen is displayed.

5. Touch "Yes" if you want to overwrite it.

- Editing the speed tone

You can edit the speed tone.



1. Touch “Edit” of “Speed Tone”.



2. Touch the touch-screen button you want to edit.



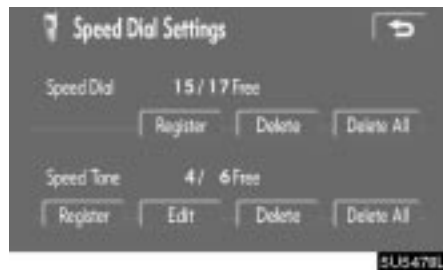
3. Use the software keyboard to input the name.



4. Input the number and touch “OK”.

- **Deleting the speed tone individually**
You can delete “1” to “6” of the speed tone.

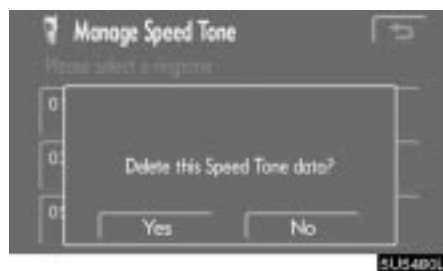
If you delete them all at once, all of 6 numbers are deleted.



1. Touch “Delete” of “Speed Tone”.



2. Touch the touch-screen button you want to delete.

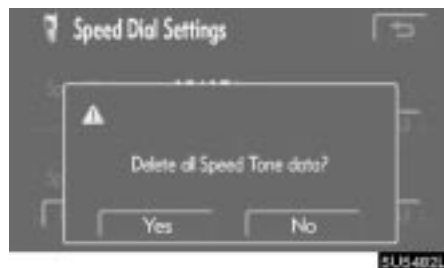


3. Touch “Yes”.

- **Deleting all the speed tone**



1. Touch “Delete All” of “Speed Tone”.



2. Touch “Yes”.

(c) Setting the volume

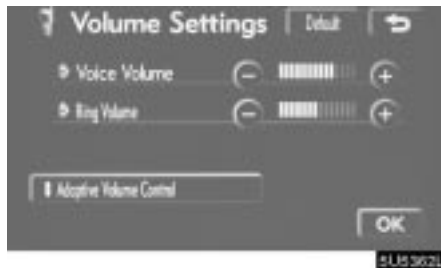


- Automatic volume settings for high speed

You can set the volume one step up when the speed is over 50 mph (80 km/h). (When it is under 43 mph (70 km/h), previous volume is back.)

Each time you touch “Adaptive Volume Control”, you can switch on or off.

1. Touch “Volume” to display the “Volume Settings” screen.



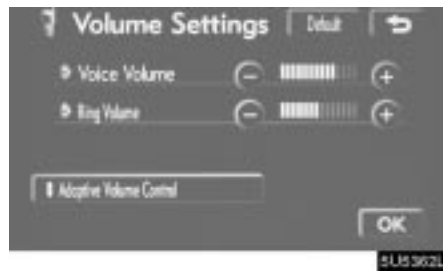
2. Touch “-” or “+” to adjust the “Voice Volume” or “Ring Volume”.

“Voice Volume” Adjusting the other party's voice.

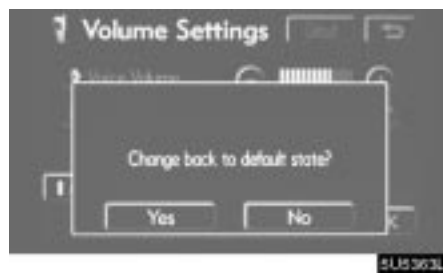
“Ring Volume” Adjusting the ring volume.

- Initializing the settings

You can initialize the settings.

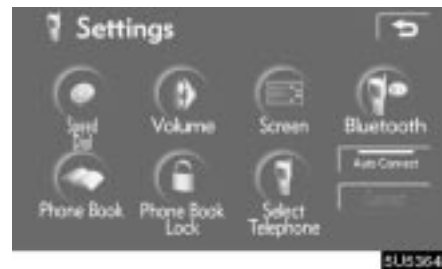


Touch "Default".



Touch "Yes".

(d) Setting the screen



1. Touch "Screen" to display the "Screen Settings" screen.



2. Do the detail settings of the screen and touch "OK".

- Incoming call display

You can select the method of the receiving call display.



Touch "Full" or "Icon".

"Full" mode When a call is received, the Hands-free screen is displayed and you can operate it on the screen.

"Icon" mode The message is displayed on the upper side of the screen. You can only operate the steering switch.

- Auto answer

When a call is received, the display automatically changes to the talking screen and you can start to talk on the phone (without touching any button) after the preset time.

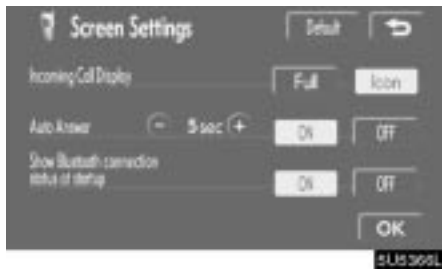


Touch "ON" of "Auto Answer" and "-" or "+" to adjust the waiting time of auto answer within 1 - 60 seconds.

- The Bluetooth connection status at startup



When the engine switch is in the “ACC” or “IG-ON” mode and the Bluetooth is automatically connected, the connection check is displayed.



Touch “ON” or “OFF” of “Show Bluetooth connection status at start-up”.

- Initializing the settings

You can initialize the settings.



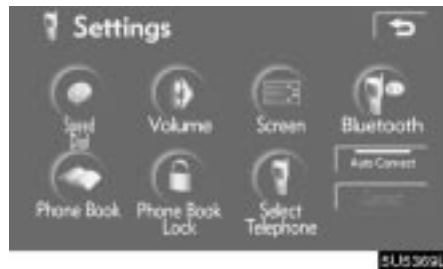
Touch “Default”.



Touch “Yes”.

(e) Setting the phone book

You can register phone numbers in the phone book.



Touch "Phone Book" to display the "Phone Book Management" screen.



You can do the detail settings of phone book.

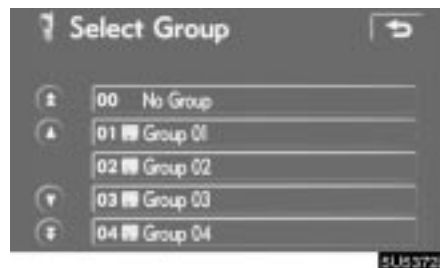
- Transferring a telephone number

You can transfer the telephone numbers in your Bluetooth phone to the system. Up to 1000 person's data (up to 2 numbers a person) can be registered in the phone book.

Transfer it while the engine is running.



1. Touch "Transfer" to display the "Select Group" screen.



2. Select the group you want to transfer the data to.

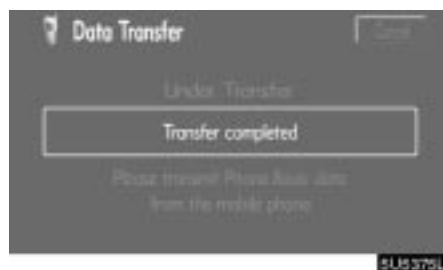


3. Touch "Overwrite" or "Add To".

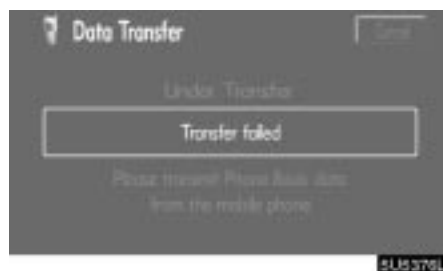


4. Transfer the phone book data to the system using the Bluetooth phone.

This screen appears while transferring. To cancel it, touch **"Cancel"**. If the transferring is interrupted on the way, the phone book data transferred until then can be memorized in the system.



5. When this screen is displayed, the transfer is completed.



When this screen is displayed, try the transfer operation again.

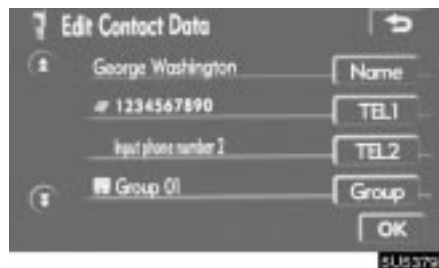
- **Registering the phone book data**
You can register the phone book data.



1. Touch "Register" of "Phone Book".



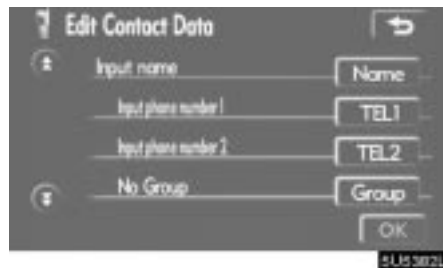
2. Touch the desired touch-screen button to edit the phone book.



3. When you complete the edit, touch "OK".

- Editing the name

When you don't input the name, the number is displayed.



1. Touch "Name".



2. Use the software keyboard to input the name.

- Editing the phone number

You can register a phone number in "TEL1" and "TEL 2" separately. Up to 2 numbers a person can be registered.



1. Touch "TEL1" or "TEL2".



2. Input the number and touch "OK".



3. Select the desired icon.

- **Selecting the group**

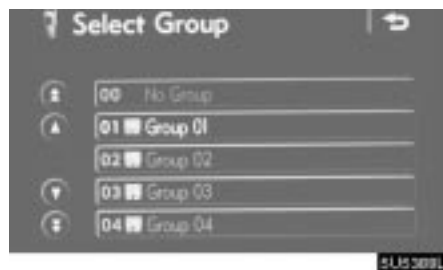
You can set a group for a contact (for example: “Family”, “Friends”, “Office”...). It will then be easier for you to find this contact when needed, by using the group display.

You can select “No group” or “Group 01” to “Group 19”.

“No Group” is displayed if you don’t set the group.



1. Touch “Group”.



2. Select the desired group.

- **Setting the voice recognition**

You can set the voice recognition. Up to 20 numbers can be registered for the voice recognition.



1. Touch “Voice Rec.”.



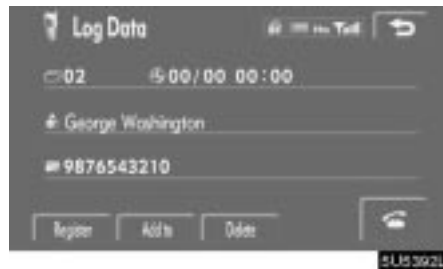
2. Select the phone number and touch “REC” to record a voicetag.



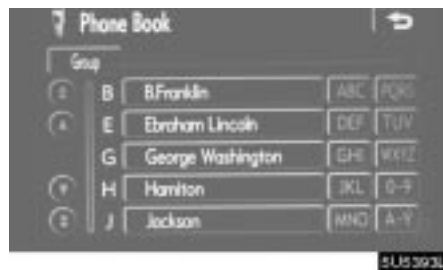
3. Touch “PLAY” to play the voicetag.

If you want to delete it, touch “Delete” and “OK”.

- **Adding the data to the phone book**
You can add data to the phone book.



1. Touch "Add to".



2. Select the data you want to add log data to.

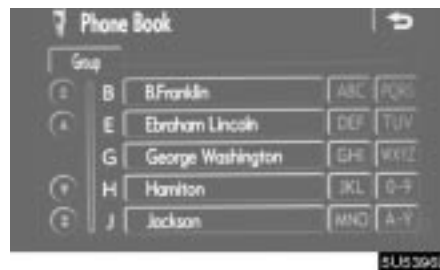


3. Confirm the added data on the screen and touch "OK".

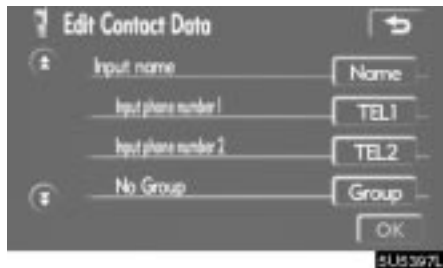
- **Editing the data**
You can edit the registered data.



1. Touch "Edit".

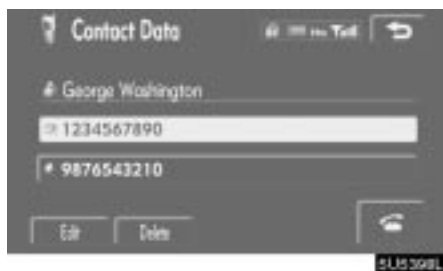


2. Select the data you want to edit.



3. Touch the desired touch-screen button.

When you edit the data, touch “OK”.



When you also touch “Edit” on this screen, you can edit it.

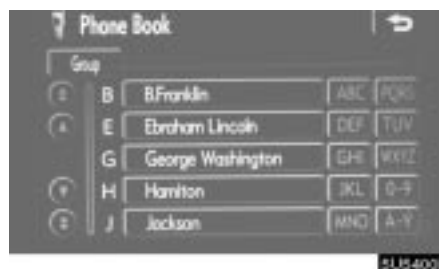
- Deleting the data

You can delete the data.

When you release your car, delete all your data on the system.



1. Touch “Delete” of “Phone Book”.



2. Touch the desired touch-screen button.



3. Touch “Yes”.

You can also delete it in the following way.

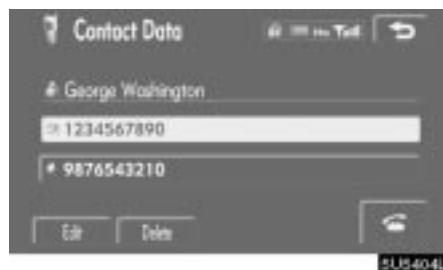


4. Touch "Yes".

1. Touch "Phone Book".



2. Select the desired data.



3. Touch "Delete".

• Deleting all the phone data



1. Touch "Delete All" of "Phone Book".



2. Select the deleting method.

"Group Data"

..... Deleting all the phone data in group.

"All Contact Data"

..... Deleting all the phone data.

3. When you select "Group Data", the "Select Group" screen is displayed.



4. Select the desired group.



5. Touch "Yes".

You can also delete it in the following way.



1. Touch "Phone Book".



2. Touch "Delete All".



3. Touch "Yes".

● Registering a group name

You can register 20 groups. "No Group", "Group 01" - "Group 19" are registered by default.

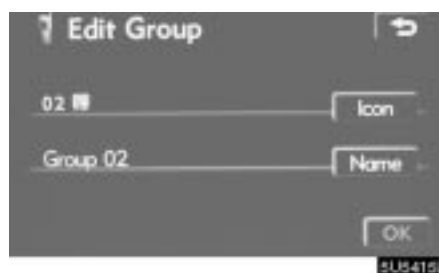
You can change "Group 01" - "Group 19" into desired names.



1. Touch "Register" of "Group Name".

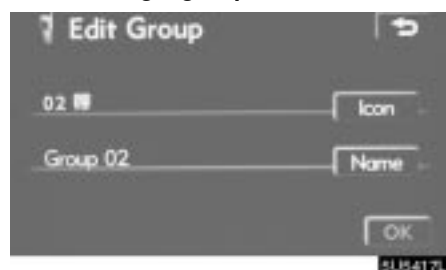


2. Select the group you want to register.

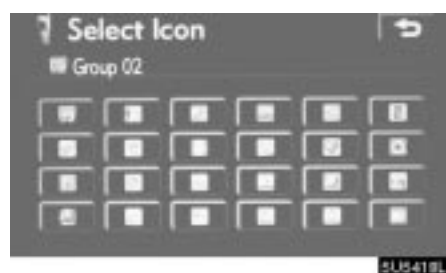


3. When you complete all the edit, touch "OK".

- Selecting a group icon

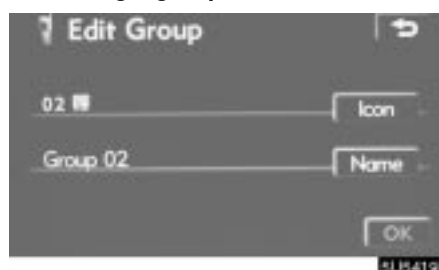


1. Touch "Icon".



2. Select the desired icon.

- Editing a group name



1. Touch "Name".



2. Use the software keyboard to input the name.

- Deleting a group name

You can delete the group names individually or all at once. If you delete a group name, that group will return to the default setting (excluding “No Group”).



1. Touch “Delete” of “Group Name”.



2. Select the group you want to delete the name of.

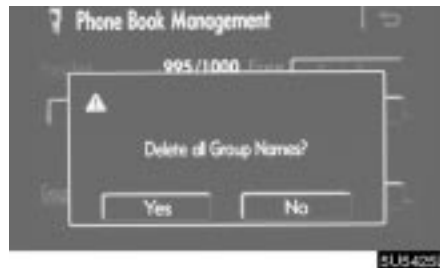


3. Touch “Yes”.

- Deleting all the group name



1. Touch “Delete All” of “Group Name”.



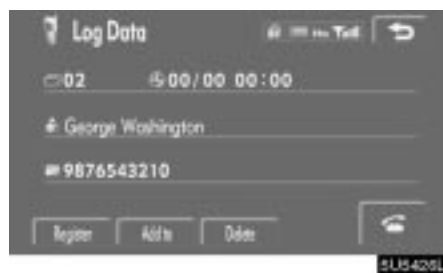
2. Touch “Yes”.

- **Deleting the log data**

You can delete the log data individually or all at once.

When you release your car, delete all the data on the system.

INDIVIDUALLY

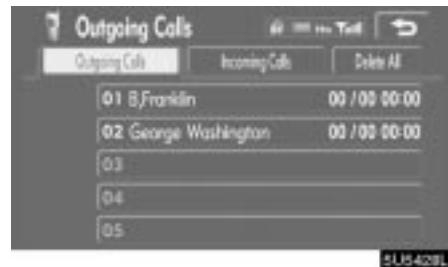


1. Touch "Delete" on the "Log Data" screen.



2. Touch "Yes".

ALL AT ONCE



1. Touch "Delete All" on the "Outgoing Calls" or "Incoming Calls" screen.



2. Touch "Yes".

(f) Setting the security

When you set the security, you can prevent people from using some functions of the Hands-free system. It is useful when you leave your car with the hotel or you don't want others to see the data you registered.

When you set or unlock the security, you have to input the security code. Be sure to change the default code when you use the security for the first time.

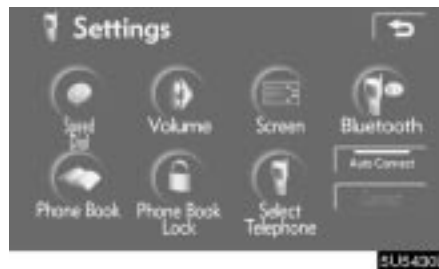
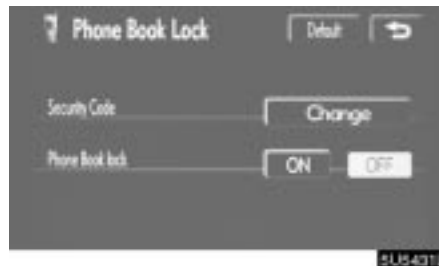
● Changing the security code

The security code is 4 digits and the default is "0000".

Change a new code that is hard for other people to know.

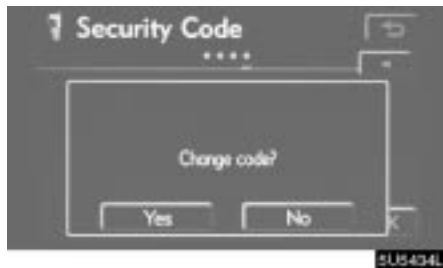
When you change the security code, don't forget the code. The dealers cannot unlock the security when you forget it.

If you forget the security code, initialize your personal data. When you initialize it, not only the phone book data but also the memory points in the navigation system, etc. will be deleted. (See "● Initializing the security code" on page 143.)

**1. Touch "Phone Book Lock".****2. Touch "Change".**

**3. Input the security code.**

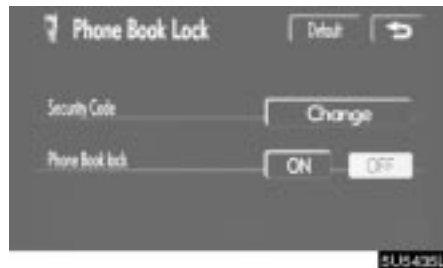
Each time you touch ◀, an input digit is deleted.

**4. Touch "Yes".****● Phone Book Lock**

When you set the phone book lock, you can have the following functions locked.

- Display of the phone book screen and transferring, registering, editing, deleting the phone book data.
- Display of speed dial screen, registering, deleting the speed dial and speed dialing.
- Display of the other party's name for calls being received or made.
- Display of dialed numbers screen and received calls screen, deleting dialed numbers and received numbers.
- Display of phone information screen.
- Changing the security code.

When you set this function, the speed dial screen is not displayed while driving.

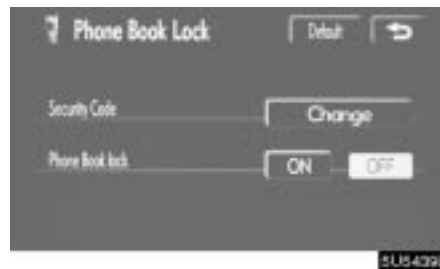


1. Touch "ON".



2. Input the security code and touch "OK".

- Initializing the security code
You can initialize the settings.



1. Touch "Default".



2. Input the security code and touch "OK".



3. Touch "Yes".

— Set a Bluetooth phone

- **Selecting a Bluetooth phone**

In case you register more than one Bluetooth phone, you need to choose a favorite one.



1. Touch “Settings” to display the “Settings” screen.



2. Touch “Select Telephone” to display the “Select Telephone” screen.

You can select the Bluetooth phone from a maximum of 6 numbers.

“Empty” is displayed when you have not registered a Bluetooth phone yet.

Bluetooth mark is displayed when you choose the phone.



Although you can register up to 6 Bluetooth phones in the system, only one Bluetooth phone can function at a time.



3. Touch “OK”.



When the result message is displayed, you can use the Bluetooth phone.

When another Bluetooth phone is trying to connect, this screen is displayed.



Touch “Yes” or “No”.

- **Displaying Bluetooth information**

You can see or set the information of the Bluetooth phone on the system.

“Device Name”

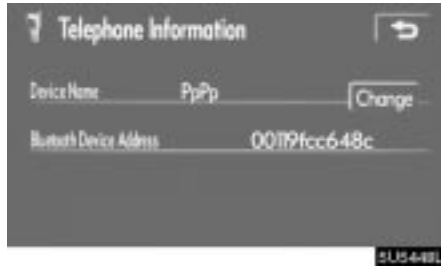
..... The name of Bluetooth phone which is displayed on the screen. You can change it into a desired name.

“Bluetooth Device Address”

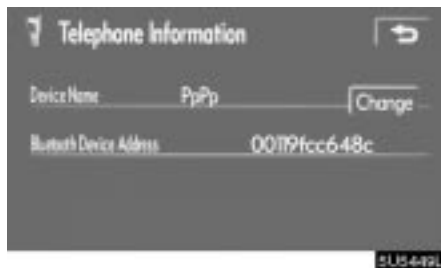
..... The address peculiar to the system. You cannot change it.



1. Select the desired phone and touch “Information”.



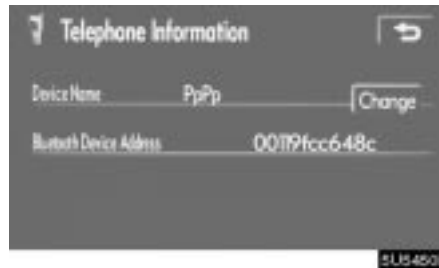
2. Touch "Change".



3. When you complete the setting, touch .

- Changing a device name

You can change a device name. If you change a device name, the name registered in your cellular phone is not changed.



1. Touch "Change".



2. Use the software keyboard to input the device name.

- **Changing the Bluetooth settings**

You can change the display and settings of Bluetooth information on the system.

The information displays the following items.

“Device Name”

..... The name in the Bluetooth network. You can change it.

“Passkey”

..... The password when you register your cellular phone in the system. You can change it into the figure of 4-8 digits.

“Bluetooth Device Address”

..... The address peculiar to the system. You can not change it. If you have registered two Bluetooth phones with the same Device Name or Passkey and you cannot distinguish one from the other, refer to it.

When you change the device name or Passkey, do the followings.



1. Touch “Bluetooth”.



2. Touch “Change” of “Device Name” or “Passkey”.



3. Use the software keyboard to input the device name.

You can input up to 20 characters.



4. Input a Passkey with 4 - 8 digits.

When you touch ◀, the input number is deleted.

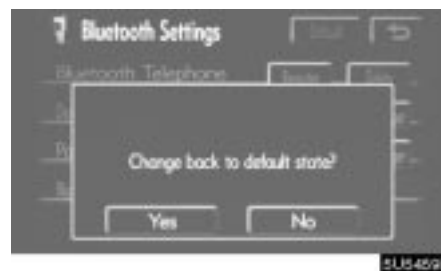


5. When you complete the setting, touch [Next].

- Initializing the Bluetooth settings. You can initialize the settings.



1. Touch "Default".



2. Touch "Yes".

- Deleting a Bluetooth phone



1. Touch “Delete” of “Bluetooth Telephone”.



2. Select the telephone you want to delete and touch “OK”.



3. Touch “Yes”.

When you delete the telephone while another Bluetooth phone is connecting, this message is displayed.



Touch “Yes”.

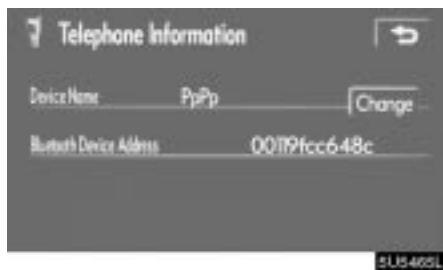


- Displaying the information of the Bluetooth phone you delete

You can display the information of the Bluetooth phone before you delete it and you can make sure whether the telephone you delete is correct or not.



1. Select the telephone you want to display the information about.



2. When you complete confirming it, touch .

Speech command system

The speech command system enables you to operate the navigation system, audio system and air conditioning system by giving a command.



1. Push the speech command switch.

A beep sounds and on screen message is displayed with an indicator at the top left.



2. Give a command while an indicator is shown in the display.

If you want to check the command list, touch "Help" to display the help screen. (See "Help screen" on page 153.) When you touch "Cancel", the previous screen returns.

If the navigation system does not respond or the confirmation screen does not disappear, please push the speech command switch and try again.

If no command is given, a beep sounds and the indicator disappears 6 seconds later.

If the system does not recognize your speech, the system will respond with this message ("System does not recognize this command, please rephrase your command."). Start the operation from the beginning.



► Microphone

It is unnecessary to speak directly into the microphone when giving a command.

Speech command example: Searching for a route to your home.

1. Push the speech command switch.
2. Say **"Home"**.

You can also say the street name or address. (ex. say **"Woodridge Avenue"**.)

If your home is not registered, you will hear **"Home is not registered"**.



3. If the system recognized the command, the recognition result **"Home"** is displayed on the top of the screen with the screen message. (Displayed message and the touch-screen buttons on the screen depend on the situation.)

Touch or say **"Cancel"**, and the system will be canceled. Touch or say **"Help"**, and displays the **"Help"** screen.



4. Touch **"Enter"** or say **"Enter destination"**, and the system starts searching for a route to your home. (If the destination is already registered, **"Add to Ⓞ"** or **"Replace Ⓞ"** is displayed on the screen.)

Touch or say **"Cancel"**, and the search will be canceled.

When you search the destination by **"POI Name"**, this screen is displayed.



Touch **"Enter"** or say **"Enter destination"**.

When you touch **"Show List"**, you can search another spot in its category.

INFORMATION

In the following conditions, the system may not recognize the command properly.

- The command is not correct or clear.
- There are some noises such as wind noise, etc.

Help screen

This system has a function which displays the voice recognition help screen. You can see the command list and operating guide on it.

(a) Command list

1. If the "Operating Guide" screen is displayed, touch "Command List" on the upper side of the screen.



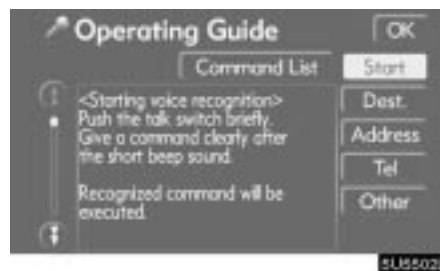
2. Select the desired category by touching the buttons on the right side of the "Command List" screen.

3. You can scroll through the list of the command list by touching ⓘ or ⓘ.

Touch "OK" after you check it.

(b) Operating guide

1. If the "Command List" screen is displayed, touch "Operating Guide" on the upper side of the screen.



2. Select the desired category by touching the buttons on the right side of the "Operating Guide" screen.

3. You can scroll through the list of the operating guide by touching ⓘ or ⓘ.

Touch "OK" after you check it.

Screen adjustment

The brightness or contrast of the screen can be adjusted depending on the brightness of your surroundings. You can also turn the display off.

To display the “Display” screen, push the “DISP” button.



1. Touch the desired button to adjust contrast and brightness.

“Contrast” “+”: Strengthens the contrast of the screen.

“Contrast” “-”: Weakens the contrast of the screen.

“Brightness” “+”: Brightens the screen.

“Brightness” “-”: Darkens the screen.

2. After adjusting the screen, touch “OK”.

The screen goes off when “Screen Off” is touched. To turn the display screen back on, push any button such as “INFO”, etc. The selected screen appears.

INFORMATION

When you do not touch any button on the “Display” screen for 20 seconds, the previous screen will be displayed.



1. Touch the desired button to adjust color and tone.

You can adjust the color and the tone while the DVD video, DVD audio and video CD are being played.

“Color” “R”: Strengthens the red color of the screen.

“Color” “G”: Strengthens the green color of the screen.

“Tone” “+”: Strengthens the tone of the screen.

“Tone” “-”: Weakens the tone of the screen.

2. After adjusting the screen, touch “OK”.

The screen turns off when “Screen Off” is touched. To turn the screen back on, push any button such as “INFO”, etc. The selected screen appears.

INFORMATION

When you do not touch any button on the “Display” screen for 20 seconds, the previous screen will be displayed.



Depending on the position of the headlight switch, the screen changes to the day mode or night mode.

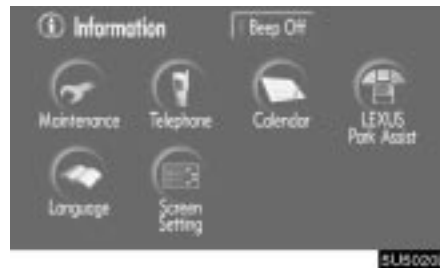
To display the screen in the day mode even with the headlight switch on, touch **“Day Mode”** on the adjustment screen for brightness and contrast control.

However, if the instrument panel light control switch is turned fully to the upward, mode switching cannot be done. It remains in the day mode. In this case, **“Day Mode”** is not shown on the screen.

If the screen is set in the day mode with the headlight switch turned to on, this condition is memorized in the system even with the engine turned off.

Screen setting

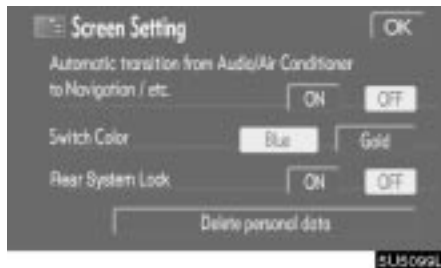
1. Push the **“INFO”** button to display the **“Information”** screen.



2. Touch **“Screen Setting”**.

(a) Automatic transition

You can select a function that enables automatic return to the navigation screen from the audio/air conditioner screen.



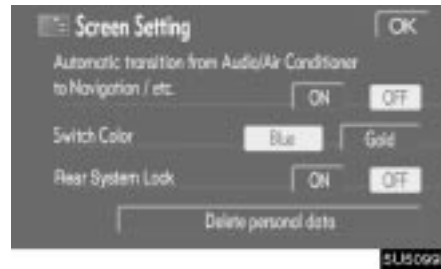
Select “ON” or “OFF” and then touch “OK”.

“ON”: The navigation screen automatically returns from the audio/air conditioner screen 20 seconds after the end of audio/air conditioner screen operation.

“OFF”: The audio/air conditioner screen remains on.

(b) Switch color

You can select the color of the touch-screen buttons.



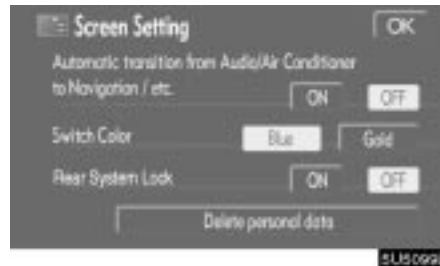
Select “Blue” or “Gold” and then touch “OK”.

(c) Delete personal data

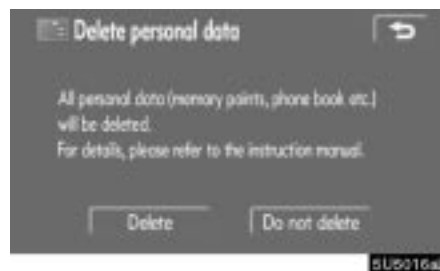
The following personal data can be deleted or returned to their default settings:

- **Maintenance conditions**
- **Maintenance information “off” setting**
- **Memory points**
- **Areas to avoid**
- **Previous points**
- **Route trace**
- **User selection settings**
- **Phone book data**
- **Dialed numbers and received calls**
- **Speed dial**
- **Bluetooth phone data**
- **Security code**

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

**1. Touch “Delete personal data”.**

The “Delete personal data” screen appears.

**2. Touch “Delete”.**

The “Confirmation to delete all personal data” screen appears.

**3. Touch “Yes”.**

Beep setting

You can set a beep sound off.

1. Push the “INFO” button.



2. Touch “Beep Off”.

“Beep Off” is highlighted.

To switch the beep sound on, touch “Beep Off” again.

Selecting a language

The language of the touch-screen buttons, pop-up messages and the voice guidance can be changed.

1. Push the “INFO” button.



2. Touch “Language”.



3. Touch “English”, “Français” or “Español” to select a language.

If a screen other than for the navigation system is displayed, the current screen would change to the “CAUTION” screen by pushing the “MAP/VOICE”, “DEST” or “MENU” button.

4. Touch “I Agree”.

The language is changed and the screen returns to the map display.

SECTION IX

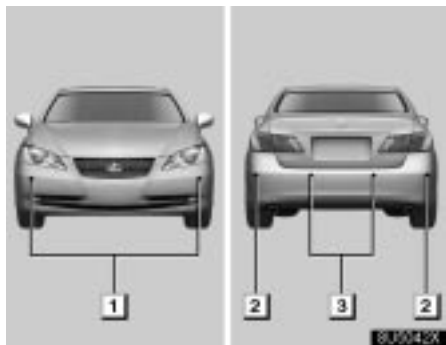
INTUITIVE PARKING ASSIST

Intuitive parking assist

- [Intuitive parking assist](#)



Intuitive parking assist —



The Intuitive parking assist is a warning system used when parking the vehicle at low speed (e.g. into a garage). It uses an ultrasonic sensor, which checks the approximate distance to an obstacle. It will inform you of the approximate distance to an obstacle by displaying information on the multi-information display and the screen, and with beeping sounds.

1 Front corner sensors

There is one of these installed on each corner of the front bumper, they inspect obstacles and will sound a warning depending on the distance to the obstacle. (See “ — Front corner sensors” on page 258.)

2 Rear corner sensors

There is one of these installed on each corner of the rear bumper, they inspect obstacles and will sound a warning depending on the distance to the obstacle. (See “ — Rear corner sensors” on page 259.)

3 Back sensors

There are two of these installed near the center of the rear bumper, they inspect obstacles and will sound a warning depending on the distance to the obstacle. (See “ — Back sensors” on page 260.)



To use the Intuitive parking assist, with the engine switch in “IG-ON” mode, push the Intuitive parking assist button. Pushing the Intuitive parking assist button again will turn the Intuitive parking assist off.

When ON, an indicator on the switch comes on to inform the driver that the function is operational.

The Intuitive parking assist will remain on even after turning the engine switch to “OFF” and then to “IG-ON” mode with the main switch on. However, a beep does not sound at this time.

If an error is detected in the Intuitive parking assist while self-checking, beeps sound and a warning appears in the multi-information display and on the screen. For details, see “ — Intuitive parking assist failure warning” on page 263.

— Where to display



► Multi-information display



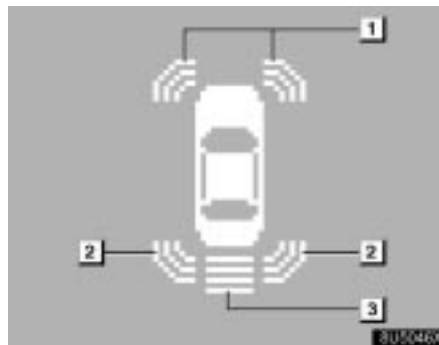
- **1** Touch screen (full screen display)
2 Touch screen (vehicles with rear view monitor system)
 (See “ — Rear view monitor display” on page 265.)

When an obstacle is detected, the indicator bars will come on or flash, accompanied by beeping. How many bars are lit or flashing depends on the distance to the obstacle.

When the obstacle is not detected any longer, beeps will stop sounding and the multi-information display and the screen will return to the previous display.

The volume of the beeps and the display on the screen can be changed. See “ — Setting the Intuitive parking assist” on page 267.

— Indicators



- **1** Detection by front corner sensors
2 Detection by rear corner sensors
3 Detection by back sensors

The approximate distance to the obstacle is shown with up to 4 bars on the rear of the vehicle and up to 3 bars on the front corners and the rear corners of the vehicle.

! CAUTION

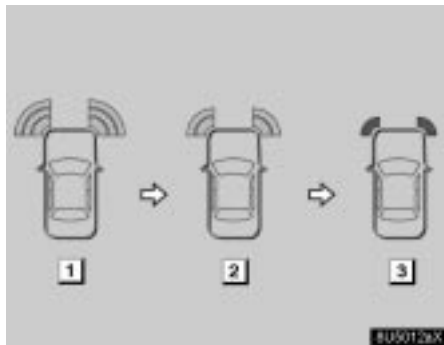
To avoid an accident or injury, observe the following instructions, and then drive slowly using the brakes while visually confirming a safe distance around your vehicle.

- The sensor detection range is limited around the bumper. Be sure to visually confirm safety outside the sensor detection. For the sensor detection range, see “ — Detection range of sensors” on page 262.
- It might take time for the sensors to detect obstacles.
- Depending on the shape of the obstacle, indicators or beeps may not warn you properly, and the detection range may also be shortened.
- It might be difficult to hear beeps due to the volume of audio or air flow noise of the air conditioning.

— Front corner sensors



► Multi-information display



► Touch screen

- 1 About 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) to about 1.5 ft. (50 cm)
- 2 About 0.8 ft. (25 cm) to about 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm)
- 3 Less than about 0.8 ft. (25 cm)

The front corner sensor only operates when the vehicle speed is less than about 6 mph (10 km/h). It checks the approximate distance to obstacles at an angle to the front of the vehicle, and sounds a warning depending on the distance. This sensor does not operate if the transmission is in "P" position.

Multi-information display:

The indicator bars come on depending on the distance to the obstacle and flash when the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than about 0.8 ft. (25 cm).

Touch screen:

When an obstacle is detected, indicator bars illuminate in yellow. The number of the indicator bars reduces as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle, and turn red when the distance between the vehicle and obstacle is less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm).

Beeps:

As distance to the obstacle gets closer, the interval of the intermittent sound gets shorter, and then finally changes to a continuous sound when the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than about 0.8 ft. (25 cm).

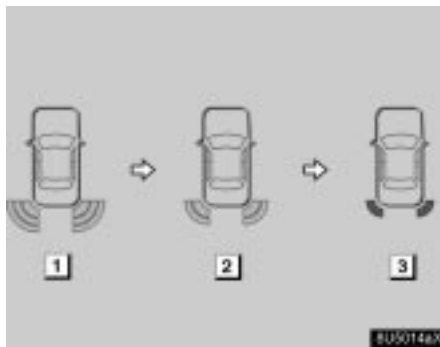
CAUTION

When you move your vehicle, be sure to visually confirm a safe distance around your vehicle and drive slowly, or an accident or injury may result.

— Rear corner sensors



► Multi-information display



► Touch screen

- 1 About 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) to about 1.5 ft. (50 cm)
- 2 About 0.8 ft. (25 cm) to about 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm)
- 3 Less than about 0.8 ft. (25 cm)

The rear corner sensor only operates when the vehicle speed is less than about 6 mph (10 km/h) and the transmission is in "R", it checks the approximate distance to obstacles at an angle to the rear of the vehicle, and sounds a warning depending on the distance.

Multi-information display:

The indicator bars come on depending on the distance to the obstacle and flash when the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than about 0.8 ft. (25 cm).

Touch screen:

When an obstacle is detected, indicator bars illuminate in yellow. The number of the indicator bars reduces as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle, and turn red when the distance between the vehicle and obstacle is less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm).

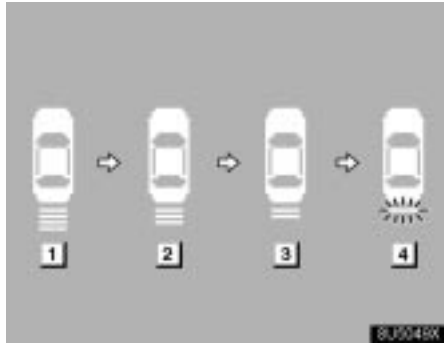
Beeps:

As distance to the obstacle gets closer, the interval of the intermittent sound gets shorter, and then finally changes to a continuous sound when the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than about 0.8 ft. (25 cm).

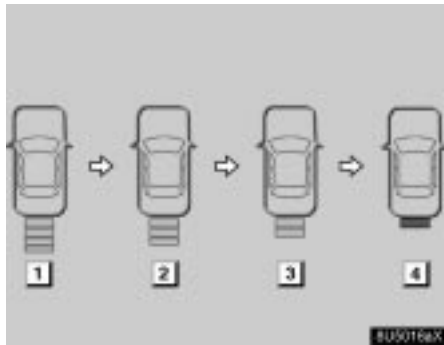
CAUTION

When reversing, be sure to visually confirm a safe distance around your vehicle to avoid an accident.

— Back sensors



► Multi-information display



► Touch screen

- 1 About 1.8 ft. (60 cm) to about 4.5 ft. (150 cm)
- 2 About 1.4 ft. (45 cm) to about 1.8 ft. (60 cm)
- 3 About 1.1 ft. (35 cm) to about 1.4 ft. (45 cm)
- 4 Less than about 1.1 ft. (35 cm)

The back sensor only operates when the transmission is in “R”, it checks the approximate distance to obstacles close to the rear of the vehicle, and sounds a warning depending on the distance.

Multi-information display:

The indicator bars come on depending on the distance to the obstacle and flash when the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is than about 1.1 ft. (35 cm).

Touch screen:

When an obstacle is detected, indicator bars illuminate in yellow. The number of the indicator bars reduces as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle, and turn red when the distance between the vehicle and obstacle is less than 1.1 ft. (35 cm).

Beeps:

As distance to the obstacle gets closer, the interval of the intermittent sound gets shorter, and then finally changes to a continuous sound when the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than about 1.1 ft. (35 cm).

CAUTION

When reversing, be sure to visually confirm a safe distance around your vehicle to avoid an accident.

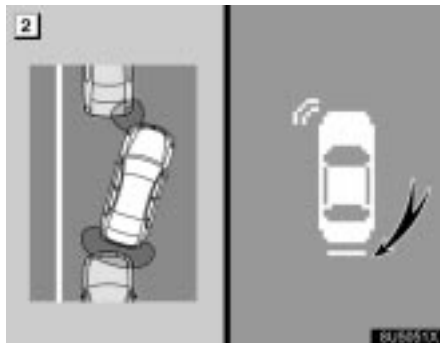
— Numerous obstacles are detected on the front and rear of the vehicle simultaneously



When obstacles are detected on the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time; the multi-information display and screen illuminate their relevant indicator bars. And beeps are as follows:

- 1** Obstacles detected on the front and rear of the vehicle are not in areas where continuous beeping should sound:

The warning for the obstacle closer to the vehicle will be issued. The above illustration indicates the obstacle detected by the back sensors is closer to the vehicle. So, the warning for the obstacle detected by the back sensors will be given.

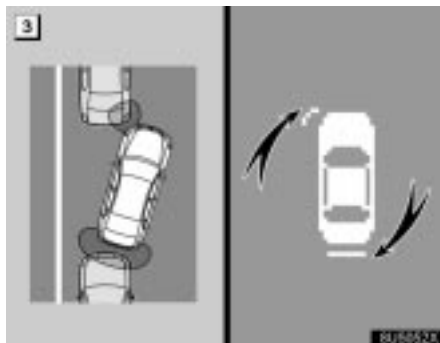


- 2** The obstacle detected on the front or rear of the vehicle is in an area where continuous beeping should sound:

If the possibility of collision with the obstacle is high as shown, the Intuitive parking assist warns the driver by continuous beeping (repeating 7 intermittent beeps and one longer beep as one cycle).

- 3** Both obstacles detected on the front and rear of the vehicle are in areas where continuous beeping should sound:

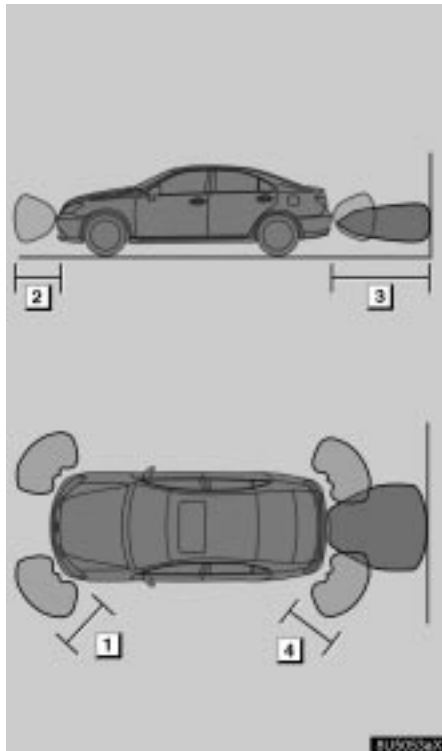
If the possibility of collision with the obstacles is very high as shown, the Intuitive parking assist warns the driver by continuous beeping (repeating 3 quick beeps and one longer beep as one cycle).



CAUTION

It might be difficult to hear beeps due to the volume of audio or air flow noise of the air conditioning. To avoid an accident or injury, drive slowly using the brakes while visually confirming a safe distance around your vehicle.

— Detection range of sensors



- **1** About 1.5 ft. (50 cm)
2 About 1.5 ft. (50 cm)
3 About 4.5 ft. (150 cm)
4 About 1.5 ft. (50 cm)

The sensor detection range is limited around the bumper. Be sure to confirm a safe distance around your vehicle and drive slowly.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc..

The Intuitive parking assist may not work properly in the following cases:

- When the bumper is damaged.
- When the part near the sensors is subjected to a strong impact.
- When an accessory is installed within the sensor detection range.
- When snowflakes or mud gets on the sensors.
(If removed, the Intuitive parking assist will work properly.)
- When water is splashed from a high pressure car wash or steam on the sensors.
- When a sensor is covered with your hand.
- When the vehicle is tilted.
- In extreme hot or cold weather
(In extreme cold weather, the error display appears and the Intuitive parking assist becomes inoperative.)
- When driving on bumpy roads, slopes, gravelled roads or grass.
- Devices issuing ultrasonic waves are operated around your vehicle, such as a horn from another vehicle, motorcycle engine, air braking sound from heavy-duty vehicles.

— Intuitive parking assist failure warning

- When another vehicle equipped with ultrasonic sensors gets close to your vehicle.
- When heavy rain or water is splashed over the vehicle.
(Drive carefully as the braking distance may be affected.)
- When a radio antenna or fender pole is mounted on your vehicle.
- If towing eyelet is installed on your vehicle.
- When you are driving towards a tall curb stone or curb stone having right angle.
- The detection range for an object such as a traffic sign may be shortened.
- An object just under the bumper cannot be detected. Although an object lower than the location of sensors is once detected, the detection might be stopped when your vehicle gets closer to the object.
- When an obstacle is very close to the sensors.

The Intuitive parking assist may not detect the following:

- Thin objects such as wire or rope
- Sound wave absorbing objects such as cotton or snow
- Objects with a sharp edge
- Tall objects with the upper part projected
- Shorter objects

If an error is detected when the Intuitive parking assist is turned on, the vehicle symbol comes on or flashes with beeping sounds.

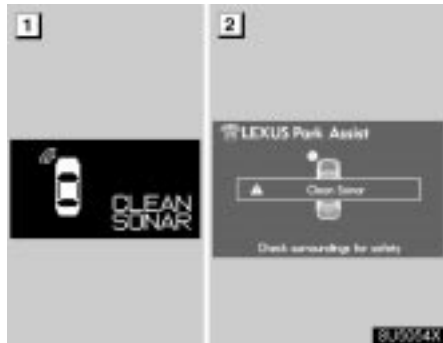
However, the sensors functioning properly continue their obstacle detection.

The Intuitive parking assist failure warning display is not given in either of the following operations:

- Changing to another screen
- Turning off the main switch for the Intuitive parking assist



(a) When snowflakes or mud gets on the sensors



- **1** Multi-information display
2 Touch screen

If foreign matter gets on the sensors and the Intuitive parking assist cannot detect the object properly, the above message appears. At this time, the vehicle symbol and the indicator bars corresponding to the faulty sensors flash for about 7 seconds and 2 beeps sound 5 times.

After about 7 seconds, the sensor indicator bars will cease flashing, however will stay lit until the affected sensor is cleaned. Furthermore, the vehicle symbol will continue to flash until the affected sensor is cleaned.

The above illustration shows the sensor on the left front of the vehicle malfunctioning.

If the failure warning does not go off even after the foreign matter is removed, the Intuitive parking assist may be malfunctioning. Have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

(b) When the sensor is malfunctioning



- **1** Multi-information display
2 Touch screen

If the sensor cable is broken and the Intuitive parking assist cannot detect the object properly, the above message appears. At this time, the indicator bars corresponding to the faulty sensor flash for about 7 seconds and 2 beeps sound 5 times.

The indicator bars continue lighting after flashing.

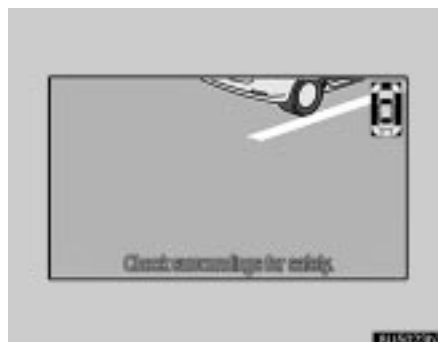
The above illustration shows the sensor on the right rear of the vehicle malfunctioning.

If this message appears, have the Intuitive parking assist checked by your Lexus dealer.

As the Intuitive parking assist might be malfunctioning in the following cases, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

- The indicator in the instrument cluster does not come on and a beep does not sound even when the Intuitive parking assist main switch is turned on.
- The warning comes on despite no obstacle around the vehicle.

— Rear view monitor display (Vehicles with rear view monitor system)

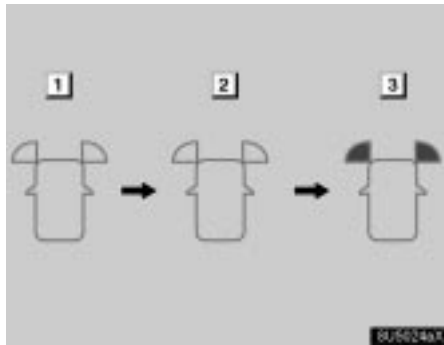


On vehicles equipped with rear view monitor system, a warning appears on the right top of the parking assist monitor in the following conditions.

- When the selector lever is put in "R" and the rear view monitor is turned on.
- When the Intuitive parking assist main switch is turned on and any sensor detects an obstacle.

Although "Display OFF" is selected in the Intuitive parking assist setting screen, the warning appears on the right top of the rear view monitor display.

— Front corner sensors



- **1** About 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) to about 1.5 ft. (50 cm)
- 2** About 0.8 ft. (25 cm) to about 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm)
- 3** Less than about 0.8 ft. (25 cm)

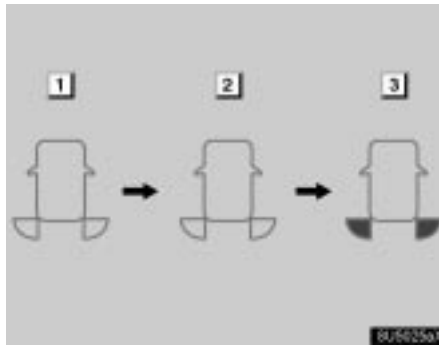
Display:

When an obstacle is detected, the indicator will flash yellow. The flashing speed becomes faster as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle. When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than about 0.8 ft. (25 cm), the indicator will illuminate in red.

Beeps:

As distance to the obstacle gets closer, the interval of the intermittent sound gets shorter, and then finally changes to a continuous sound when the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than about 0.8 ft. (25 cm).

— Rear corner sensors



- **1** About 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) to about 1.5 ft. (50 cm)
- 2** About 0.8 ft. (25 cm) to about 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm)
- 3** Less than about 0.8 ft. (25 cm)

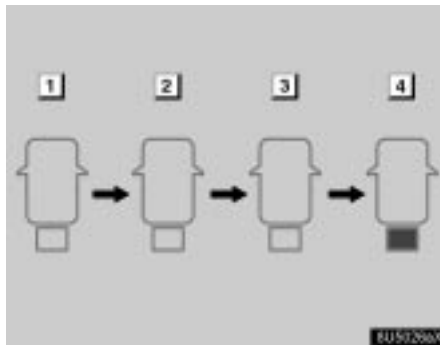
Display:

When an obstacle is detected, the indicator will flash yellow. The flashing speed becomes faster as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle. When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than about 0.8 ft. (25 cm), the indicator will illuminate in red.

Beeps:

As distance to the obstacle gets closer, the interval of the intermittent sound gets shorter, and then finally changes to a continuous sound when the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than about 0.8 ft. (25 cm).

— Back sensors



- **1** About 1.8 ft. (60 cm) to about 4.5 ft. (150 cm)
- 2** About 1.4 ft. (45 cm) to about 1.8 ft. (60 cm)
- 3** About 1.1 ft. (35 cm) to about 1.4 ft. (45 cm)
- 4** Less than about 1.1 ft. (35 cm)

Display:

When an obstacle is detected, the indicator will flash yellow. The flashing speed becomes faster as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle. When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than about 1.1 ft. (35 cm), the indicator will illuminate in red.

Beeps:

As distance to the obstacle gets closer, the interval of the intermittent sound gets shorter, and then finally changes to a continuous sound when the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than about 1.1 ft. (35 cm).



CAUTION

When reversing, be sure to visually confirm a safe distance around your vehicle to avoid an accident.

— Setting the Intuitive parking assist

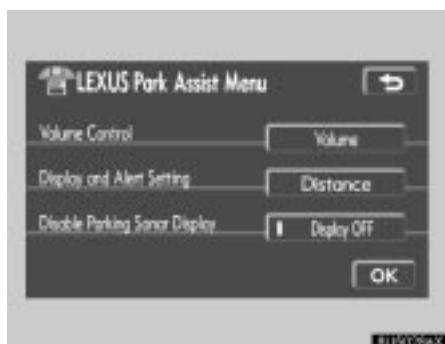
The volume of the beeps and turning on or off of the display can be set.



1. Push the "INFO" button to display the "Information" screen.



2. Touch "LEXUS Park Assist".

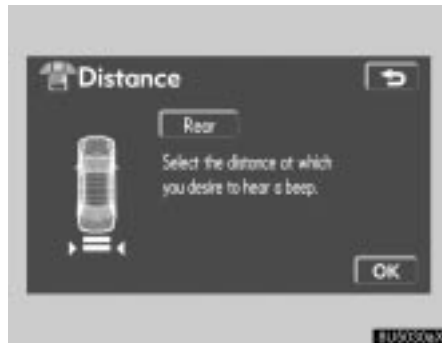


3. Touch your desired item.

(a) Changing the volume of the beeps



The volume has 5 levels, increasing with higher value. Select your desired volume and touch  to return to the previous screen.

(b) Changing display and alert settings

Touch **“Rear”** to switch the distance for the back sensors display and tone indication, from long distance to short distance, or from short distance to long distance.

To return to the previous screen, touch

**(c) Display off setting**

Vehicles with rear view monitor system — Although “Display OFF” is turned on, if the obstacle is detected during the rear view monitoring, the warning appears on the right top of the screen.

For vehicles sold in U.S.A.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

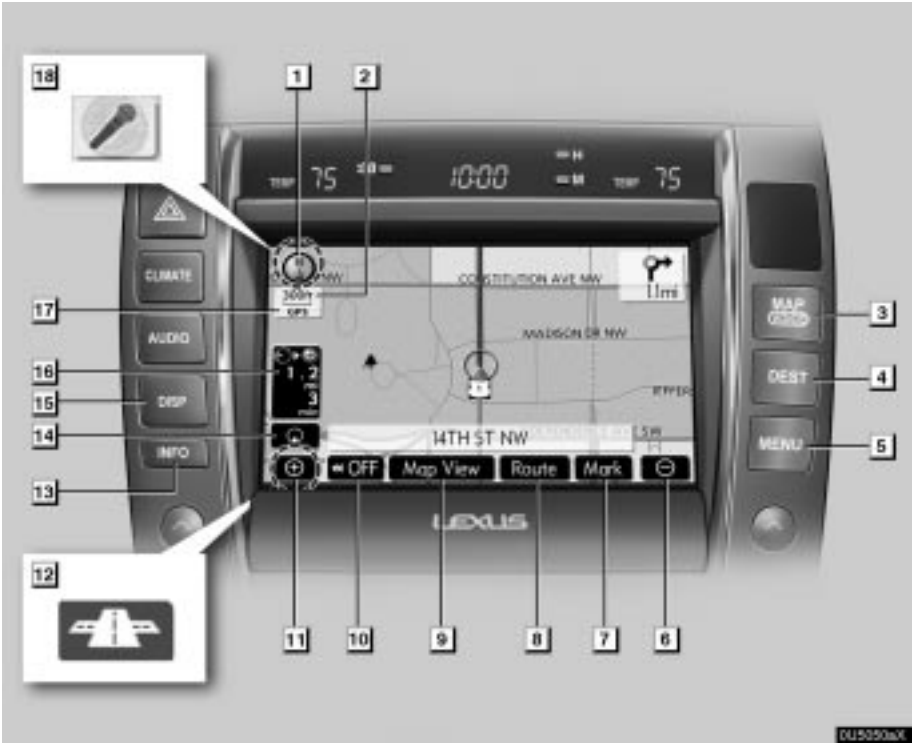
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

For vehicles sold in Canada.

This ISM device complies with Canadian ICES-001.

Cet appareil ISM est conforme à la norme NMB-001 du Canada.

Quick guide —
 — Overview buttons and guidance screen



No.	Name	Function	Page
1	North-up or heading-up symbol	This symbol indicates a map view with north-up or heading-up. Touching this symbol changes the map orientation.	16
2	Scale indicator	This figure indicates the map scale.	14
3	“MAP/VOICE” button	Push this button to repeat a voice guidance, cancel one touch scroll, start guidance, and display the current position.	8, 48
4	“DEST” button	Push this button to display the “Destination” screen.	xi, xii, 18, 19
5	“MENU” button	Push this button to display the “Menu” screen.	vii, ix, 64, 66, 67, 68, 70, 83, 284, 285

No.	Name	Function	Page
6	Zoom out touch-screen button	Touch this button to reduce the map scale.	14
7	“Mark”	Touch this button to register the current position or the cursor position as a memory point.	9
8	“Route”	Touch this button to change the route.	50, 52
9	“Map View”	Touch this button to browse information about guidance route, to set the Points of Interest to be displayed on the screen, or to record the route.	56, 59, 60, 61
10	“◀◀OFF”	Touch this button to obtain a broader view. Some of the buttons on the screen are not displayed. They are displayed again by touching “ON▶▶”.	87
11	Zoom in touch-screen button	Touch this button to magnify the map scale.	14
12	Foot print map touch-screen button	Touch this button to display the foot print map and the building information.	15
13	“INFO” button	Push this button to display the “Information” screen.	2, 96, 99, 106, 155, 158
14	Screen configuration touch-screen button	Touch this button to change the screen mode.	12
15	“DISP” button	Push this button to display the “Display” screen.	154
16	Distance and time to destination	Displays the distance, the estimated travel time to the destination, and the estimated arrival time at the destination.	49
17	“GPS” mark (Global Positioning System)	Whenever the vehicle is receiving signals from the GPS, this mark is displayed.	272
18	Speech command system indicator	The microphone is shown by pushing the speech command switch. The speech command system can be operated while this indicator is shown.	150

— Registering home



1 Push “MENU” button.



2 Touch “My Places”.

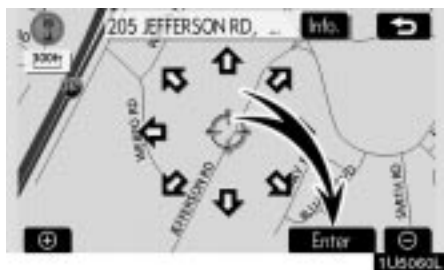


3 Touch “Register” of the home.



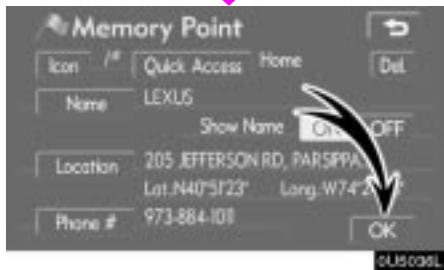
4 There are 12 different methods to search your home.

See “Destination search” on page 19.



5 Touch “Enter”.

The “Memory Point” screen is displayed.



6 Touch “OK”.

Registration of home is complete.
You can change the icon, quick access, name, location and phone number. (See “ — Editing memory points” on page 72.)

— Registering preset memory point
(Quick access)



1 Push “MENU” button.



2 Touch “My Places”.

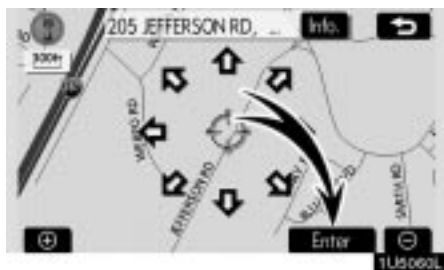


3 Touch “Register” of the memory points.



4 There are 13 different methods to search preset destinations.

See “Destination search” on page 19.

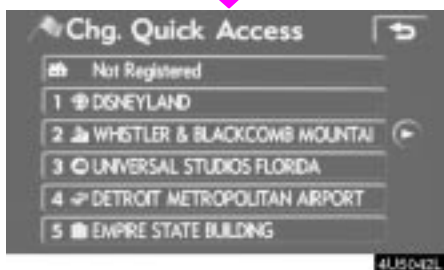


5 Touch “Enter”.

The “Memory Point” screen is displayed.



6 Touch “Quick Access”.



7 Touch one of preset buttons 1 to 5.



8 Touch “OK”.

Registration of preset destinations is complete.

You can change the icon, quick access, name, location and phone number. (See “ — Editing memory points” on page 72.)

The registered points can be used on the “Destination” screen. (See “ — Destination search by Quick access” on page 22.)

— Operation flow: guiding the route



1 Push “DEST” button.



2 There are 13 different methods to search destinations.

See “Destination search” on page 19.



3 Touch “Enter”.

The navigation system performs a search for the route.



4 Touch “Guide”, and start driving.

Routes other than the one recommended can also be selected. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

5 Guidance to the destination is given via voice and on the guidance screen.

— Setting home as the destination



1 Push “DEST” button.



2 Touch .

The  can be used if your home has been registered. (To register “Home”, see “ — Registering home” on page 77.)



3 Touch “Enter”.

The navigation system performs a search for the route.



4 Touch “Guide”, and start driving.

Routes other than the one recommended can also be selected. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

5 Guidance to the destination is given via voice and on the guidance screen.

SECTION VIII

REAR VIEW MONITOR SYSTEM

Rear view monitor system

- [Rear view monitor system](#)



Rear view monitor system —

The rear view monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the view behind the vehicle while backing up. The left and right displayed on the screen are the same as those of the inside rear view mirror.

To display the rear view image on the screen, place the selector lever in the “R” position when the engine switch is in the “IG-ON” mode.

If you move the selector lever out of the “R” position, the screen returns to the previous screen. Operating another function of the navigation system will display another screen.

The rear view monitor system is a supplement device intended to assist back up. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually.

CAUTION

- Never depend on the rear view monitor system entirely when backing up. Always make sure your intended path is clear.

Use caution, just as you would when backing up any vehicle.

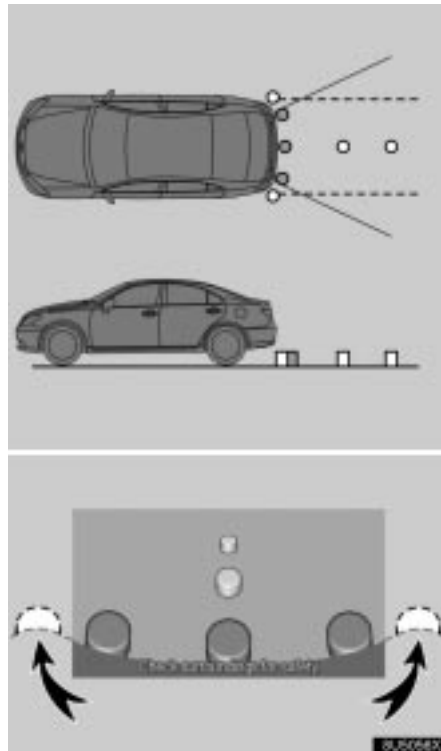
- Never back up while looking only at the screen. The image on the screen is different from actual conditions. Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces will differ from actual distance. If you back up while looking only at the screen, you may hit a vehicle, a person or an object. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually and with mirrors before proceeding.
- Do not use the system when the trunk is not completely closed.
- If the back of the vehicle is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change. Be sure to have the camera's position and mounting angle checked at your Lexus dealer.
- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
- If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.

- If the camera lens becomes dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. If water droplets, snow, or mud adhere to the lens, rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the lens is extremely dirty, wash it with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- Use your own eyes to confirm the vehicle's surroundings, as the displayed image may become faint or dark, and moving images will be distorted, or not entirely visible when the outside temperature is low. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually and with mirror before proceeding.

When replacing the tires, please consult your Lexus dealer. If you replace the tires, the area displayed on the screen may change.

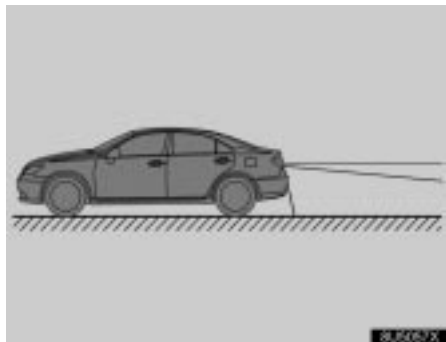
- Area displayed on screen

Image is displayed approximately level on screen.



- Corners of bumper

The area detected by the camera is limited. The camera does not detect objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper.



The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.

- The rear view monitor system camera



The rear view monitor system camera is located on the trunk as shown in the illustration. The camera uses a special lens. The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance.

In the following cases, it may become difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning.

- In the dark (for example, at night)
- When the temperature near the lens is high or low
- When water droplets are adhering to the camera, or when humidity is high (for example, when it rains)
- When foreign matter (for example, snow or mud) is adhering to the camera
- When the camera has scratches or dirt on it
- When the sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lens



If a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera, the smear effect* peculiar to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect—A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.



SECTION *III*

ROUTE GUIDANCE

Route guidance

- [Route guidance screen](#)
- [Typical voice guidance prompts](#)
- [Distance and time to destination](#)
- [Setting and deleting destination](#) [Adding destinations](#) [Reordering destinations](#) [Deleting destinations](#)
- [Setting route](#) [Search condition](#) [Detour setting](#) [Route preference](#) [Starting route from adjacent road](#)
- [Map view](#) [Display POI icons](#) [Route overview](#) [Route preview](#) [Route trace](#)

Route guidance screen

During route guidance, various types of guidance screens can be displayed depending on conditions.

• Screen layout



- 1 Distance to the next turn and the arrow indicating turning direction
- 2 Current street name
- 3 Distance and travel/arrival time to the destination
- 4 Current position
- 5 Guidance route

INFORMATION

- If the vehicle goes off the guidance route, the route is searched again.
- For some areas, the roads have not been completely digitized in our database. For this reason, the route guidance may select road that should not be traveled on.
- When you arrive at your destination, the destination name will be displayed on the top of the screen. Touching "OFF" clears the display.

• During freeway driving

During freeway driving, the freeway exit information screen will be displayed.

This screen displays the distance to the next junction and exit, or POIs in the vicinity of the freeway exit.



- 1 Current position
- 2 Points of Interest that are close to a freeway exit
- 3 Exit number and junction name
- 4 Distance from the current position to the exit or junction
- 5 Current street name

①: To display the selected map of the exit vicinity.

⬆: To scroll for farther junctions or exits.

⬇: To scroll for closer junctions or exits.

📍: To scroll for the closest three junctions or exits.

- **When approaching a freeway exit or junction**

When the vehicle approaches an exit or junction, the guidance screen for the freeway will be displayed.



- 1 Road/area name
- 2 Distance from the current position to the exit or junction
- 3 Current position

“OFF”: The guidance screen on freeway disappears and the map screen appears.

When touching  or pushing the “MAP/VOICE” button, the guidance screen on freeway reappears.

- **When approaching an intersection**

When the vehicle approaches an intersection, the intersection guidance screen will be displayed.



- 1 Next street name
- 2 Distance to the intersection
- 3 Current position

“OFF”: The intersection guidance screen disappears and the map screen appears.

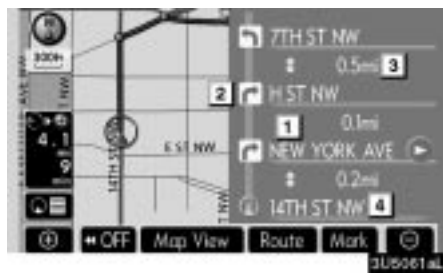
When touching  or pushing the “MAP/VOICE” button, the intersection guidance screen reappears.

- Other screens

TURN LIST SCREEN

On this screen, the list of turns on the guidance route can be viewed.

Touching  during guidance displays the turn list.

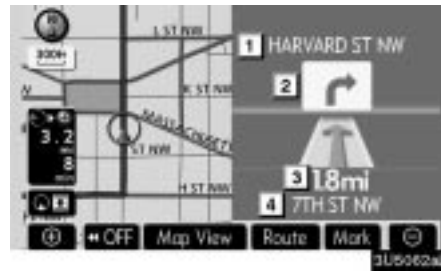


- 1** Next street name or destination name
- 2** Turn direction
- 3** Distance between turns
- 4** Current street name

ARROW SCREEN

On this screen, information about next turns on the guidance route can be viewed.

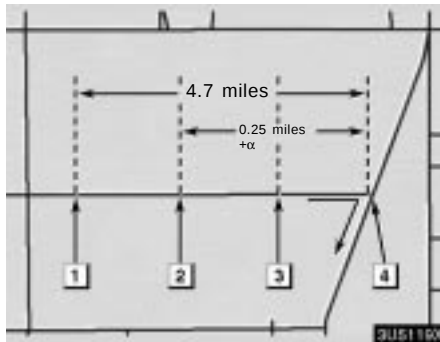
Touching  during guidance displays the arrow screen.



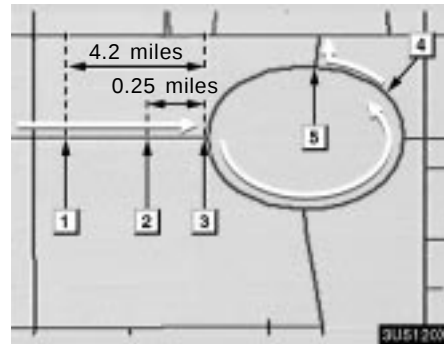
- 1** Exit number, street name containing number or next street name
- 2** Turn direction
- 3** Distance to the next turn
- 4** Current street name

Typical voice guidance prompts

The voice guidance provides various messages as you approach an intersection, or other point where you need to maneuver the vehicle.



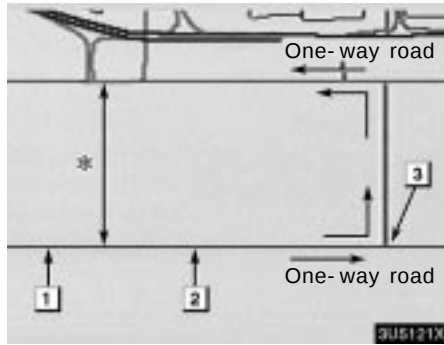
- 1 "Proceed about 5 miles."
- 2 "In a quarter of a mile, right turn."
- 3 "Right turn."
- 4 (Beep sound only)



- 1 "Proceed about 4 miles to the traffic circle."
- 2 "In a quarter of a mile, traffic circle ahead, and then 3rd exit ahead."
- 3 "The 3rd exit ahead."
- 4 "The exit ahead."
- 5 (Beep sound only)

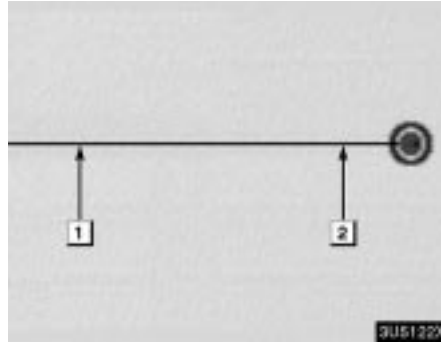
INFORMATION

On freeways, interstates or other highways with higher speed limits, the voice guidance will be made at earlier points than on city streets in order to allow time to maneuver.



*: The system indicates a U-turn if the distance between two one-way roads (of opposite directions) is less than 50 feet (15 m) in residential areas or 164 feet (50 m) in non-residential areas.

- 1 "In half of a mile, make a legal U-turn."
- 2 "Make a legal U-turn ahead."
- 3 (Beep sound only)



The system announces the approach to the final destination.

- 1 "Your destination is ahead."
- 2 "You have arrived at your destination. The route guidance is now finished."

INFORMATION

- *If the system cannot determine the current vehicle position correctly (in cases of poor GPS signal reception), the voice guidance may be made early or delayed.*
- *If you did not hear the voice guidance command, push the "MAP/VOICE" button to hear it again.*
- *To adjust the voice guidance volume, see "Volume" on page 67.*

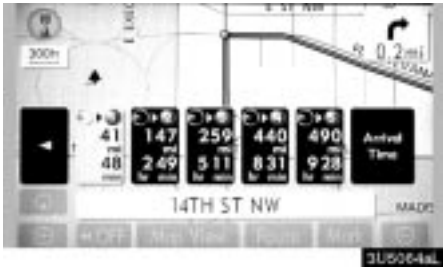
Distance and time to destination



When the vehicle is on the guidance route, the distance and the estimated travel/arrival time to the destination are displayed. When the vehicle is not on the guidance route, the distance and the direction of the destination are displayed.

When driving on the guidance route and more than one destination is set, the distance and the estimated travel/arrival time from the current position to each destination are displayed.

1. Touch this button to display the following screen.



2. Touch the number button to display the desired destination.

The distance, the estimated travel time and the estimated arrival time from the current position to the selected destination are displayed.

 Estimated travel time is displayed.

 Estimated arrival time is displayed.

 To switch to estimated arrival time.

 To switch to estimated travel time.

 Displayed while driving off the guidance route. The destination direction is indicated by an arrow.

INFORMATION

When the vehicle is on the guidance route, the distance measured along the route is displayed. Travel time and arrival time is calculated based on the set vehicle speed information. (See page 84.) However, when the vehicle is not on the guidance route, the distance is the linear distance between the current position and the destination.

Setting and deleting destination — — Adding destinations

Adding destinations and searching again for the routes can be done.

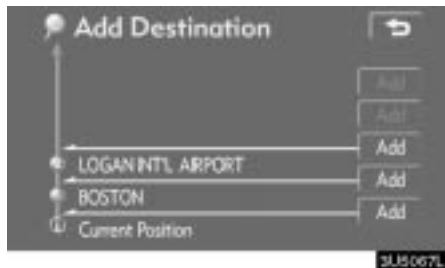


1. Touch "Route".



2. Touch "Add".

3. Input an additional destination in the same way as the destination search. (See "Destination search" on page 19.)



4. Touch the desired "Add" to determine the arrival order of the additional destination.

— Reordering destinations

When more than one destination is set, you can change the arrival order of the destinations.



1. Touch "Route".



2. Touch "Reorder".



3. Select the destination in the order of arrival by touching the destination button.

Reordered number of arrival is displayed on the right side of the screen.

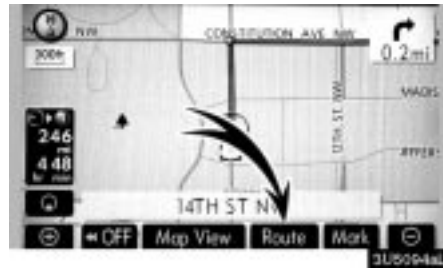
Touching "Undo" will cancel each selected order number from the previously input number.

— Deleting destinations

4. After selecting the destinations, touch “OK”.

The system searches for the guidance route again, and displays the entire route. Even if “OK” is not touched, the entire route is displayed automatically within a few seconds when the order is fixed.

A set destination can be deleted.



1. Touch “Route”.



2. Touch “Delete”.

When more than one destination is set, a list will be displayed on the screen.



3. Touch the destination for deletion.

“Delete All”: To delete all destinations on the list.

A message appears to confirm the request to delete.

4. To delete the destination(s), touch “Yes”.

If “Yes” is touched, the data cannot be recovered.

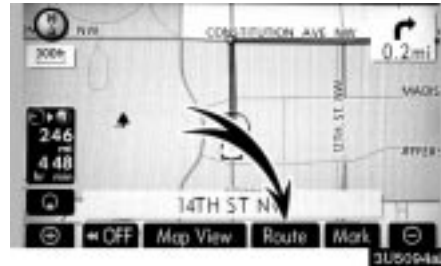
If “No” is touched, the previous screen will return.

5. If more than one destination is set, touch “OK” after deleting the destinations.

The system searches for the guidance route again, and displays the entire route.

Setting route — — Search condition

You can designate the route conditions of the route to the destination.



1. Touch “Route”.



2. Touch “Search Condition”.



3. Touch “Quick”, “Quick1”, “Quick2” or “Short” and touch “OK”.



The entire route from the starting point to the destination is displayed.

“Guide”: To start guidance.

“Route”: To change a route. (See pages 50 and 52.)

— Detour setting

While the route guidance is operating, you can change the route to detour around a section of the route where a delay is caused by road repairs, or an accident, etc.



1. Touch “Route”.



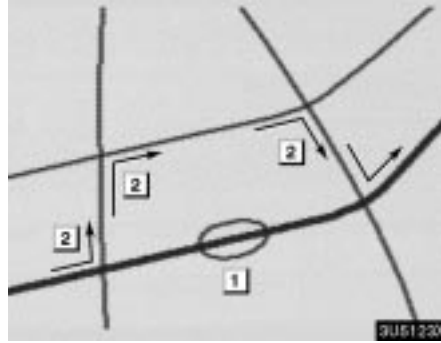
2. Touch “Detour”.



3. Select the button below to select the desired detour distance.

“1 mile (km)”, “3 miles (km)” or “5 miles (km)”: Touch one of these buttons to start the detour process. After detouring, the system returns to the original guidance route.

“Whole Route”: By touching this button, the system will calculate an entire new route to the destination.



This picture shows an example of how the system would guide around a delay caused by a traffic jam.

1 This position indicates the location of a traffic jam caused by road repairs or an accident.

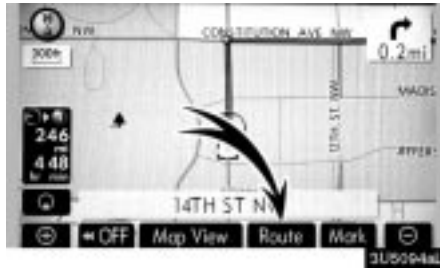
2 This route indicates the detour suggested by the system.

INFORMATION

- *When your vehicle is on a freeway, the detour distance selections are 5, 15, and 25 miles (km).*
- *The system may not be able to calculate a detour route depending on the selected distance and surrounding road conditions.*

— Route preference

A number of choices are provided on the conditions which the system uses to determine the route to the destination.



1. Touch “Route”.



2. Touch “Route Preference” to change the conditions that determine the route to the destination.



3. Select the desired route preference by touching the button.

When searching for a route, the system will avoid routes when the indicator is off.

4. After choosing the desired route preference, touch “OK”.

— Starting route from adjacent road

You can start the route guidance from the adjacent road.

(ex. When route guidance is set on the freeway, but the vehicle is driven parallel along the freeway.)



1. Touch “Route”.



2. Touch “Start from Adjacent Road”.

When there is no adjacent road, this button will not be displayed.

Map view — — Display POI icons

Points of Interest such as gas stations and restaurants can be displayed on the map screen. You can also set their location as a destination and use them for route guidance.



1. Touch “Map View”.



2. Touch “Display POI Icon” to display a particular type of Point of Interest on the screen.



A screen with a limited choice of Points of Interest will be displayed. (To change the displayed POI, see page 87.)

• Selecting POIs to be displayed

Up to 5 categories of icons can be displayed on the screen.



Touch the desired Point of Interest category to display POI location symbols on the map screen.

By selecting the desired POI category and then touching “OK”, the selected POI icons are displayed on the map screen.

To turn off the Points of Interest icon on the map screen, touch “Delete”.

“Other POIs”: If the desired Point of Interest can not be found on the limited choice screen, touch this button.

“Local POI List”: When searching for the nearest Point of Interest, touch this button. Then choose one of the categories. The system will list the points within 20 miles (32 km). (See page 58.)

Touch “Other POIs” on the “Display POI icons” screen.

When a Point of Interest category is selected from either the limited list or the complete list, the screen will display symbols of those locations on the map screen.



Select the desired POI categories.

The selected category icon appears on the top left of the screen.

By selecting the desired POI category and then touching “OK”, the selected POI icons are displayed on the map screen.

If the desired POI category is not on the screen, touch “List All Categories” to list all POI categories.



Select the desired POI categories from the list.

The selected category icon appears on the top left of the screen.

By selecting the desired POI category and then touching “OK”, the selected POI icons are displayed on the map screen.

To return to the POI category selection screen, touch “More”.

- **To display the local POI list**

Points of Interest that are within 20 miles (32 km) of the current position will be listed from among the selected categories.



1. Touch “Local POI List” on the “Display POI icons” screen.



2. Touch the button of the desired Point of Interest.

The selected Points of Interest are displayed on the map screen.

“On Route”: When the indicator is illuminated by touching this button, the list of the items searched along the route is displayed.

- **To set a POI as a destination**

You can select one of the Points of Interest icons on the map screen as a destination and use it for route guidance.



1. Directly touch the Point of Interest icon that you want to set as a destination.

The map will shift so that the icon is centered on the screen and overlaps with the cursor. At this time, the distance from the current position is displayed on the screen. The distance shown is measured as a straight line from the current vehicle position to the POI.

2. When the desired Point of Interest overlaps with the cursor, touch “Enter”.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 38.)

— Route overview



1. Touch “Map View”.



2. Touch “Route Overview”.



The entire route from the current position to the destination is displayed.

“Guide”: To start guidance.

“Route”: To change the route. (See pages 50 and 52.)

“Turn List”: The following screen displays the list of the roads up to the destination.



You can scroll through the list of roads by touching  or . However, not all road names in the route may appear on the list. If a road changes its name without requiring a turn (such as on a street that runs through two or more cities), the name change will not appear on the list. The street names will be displayed in order from the starting point, along with the distance to the next turn.

 These marks indicate the direction in which you should turn at an intersection.

Touch “Map” on the “Turn List” screen.

The point which you choose is displayed on the map screen.



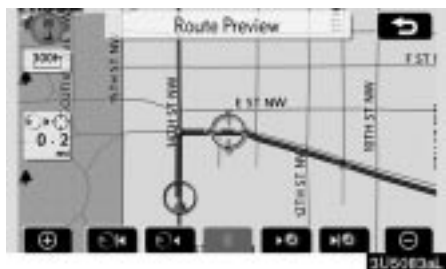
— Route preview



1. Touch “Map View”.



2. Touch “Route Preview”.



- : To indicate the next destination.
- : To preview the route to the next destination.
- : To preview the route to the next destination in fast-forward mode.
- : To stop the preview.
- : To review the route to the previous destination or starting point.
- : To review the route to the previous destination or starting point in fast-forward mode.
- : To indicate the previous destination or starting point.

— Route trace

It is possible to store the traveled route up to 124 miles (200 km) and retrace the route on the display.

INFORMATION

This feature is available on the map with more detailed map scale than 30 mile (50 km).



Touch "Map View".



"Record": To start recording the route trace.

"Stop": To stop recording the route trace. If you touch **"Stop"** to display the following screen.



Touching **"Yes"** stops recording and the route trace remains displayed on the screen.

Touching **"No"** stops recording and the route trace is erased.

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustration may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

As the installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as the multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, cruise control system, anti-lock brake system, SRS airbag system and seat belt pretensioner system, be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation.

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

CAUTION

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that will hurt or kill you, your occupants or others.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

When left unattended, children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the cigarette lighter, the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Symbols used throughout this manual

Cautions & Notices

CAUTION

This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

NOTICE

This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

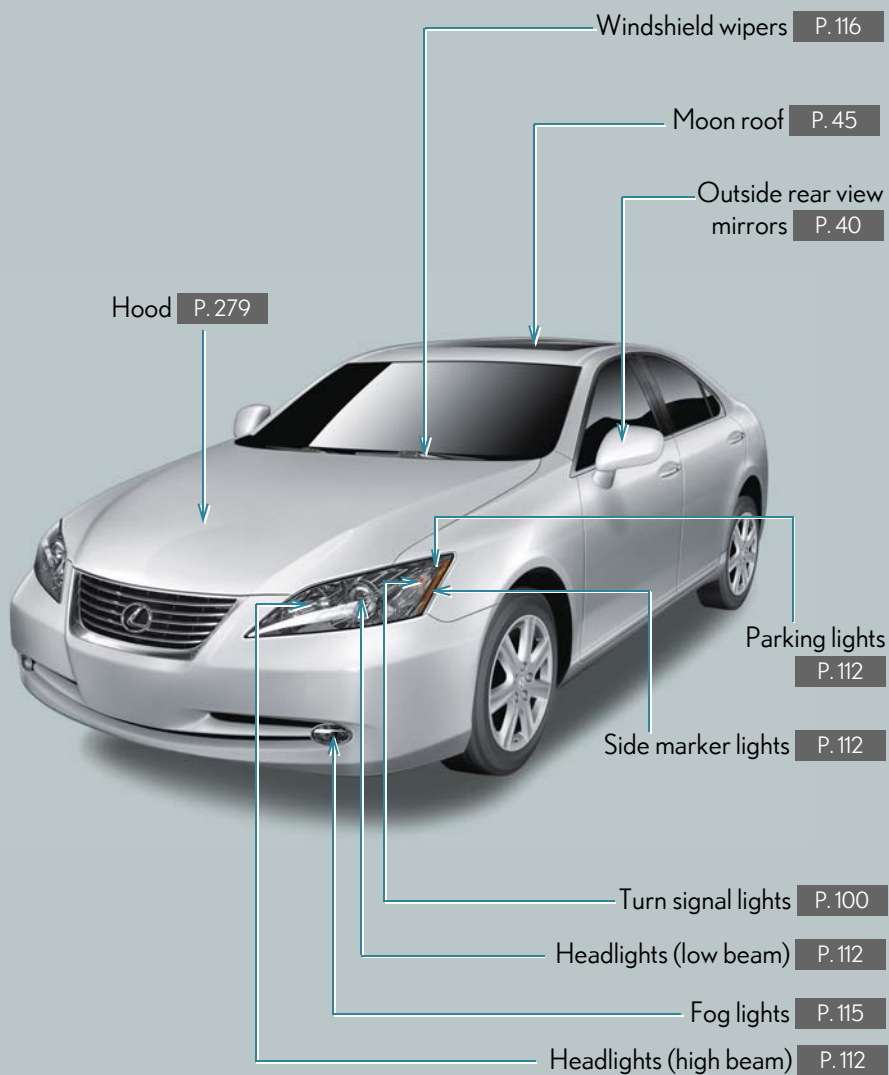
Safety symbol

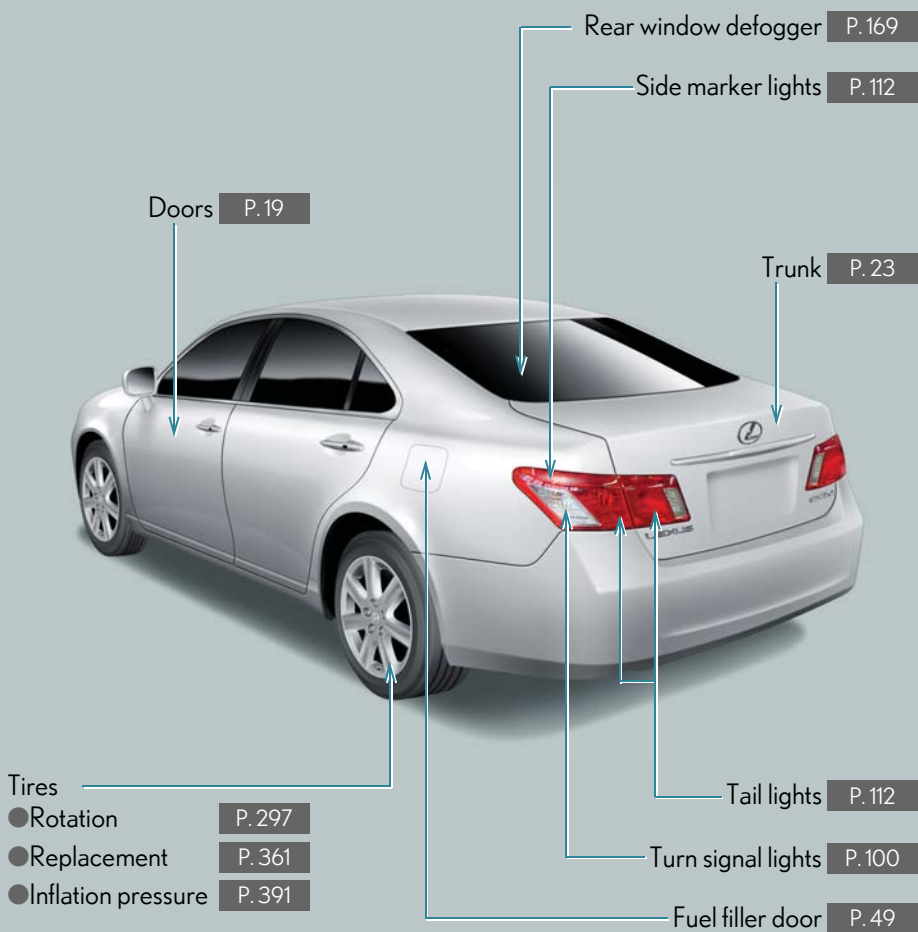


Throughout this manual, you will also see the symbol of a circle with a slash through it. This means "Do not", "Do not do this", or "Do not let this happen".

TABLE OF CONTENTS

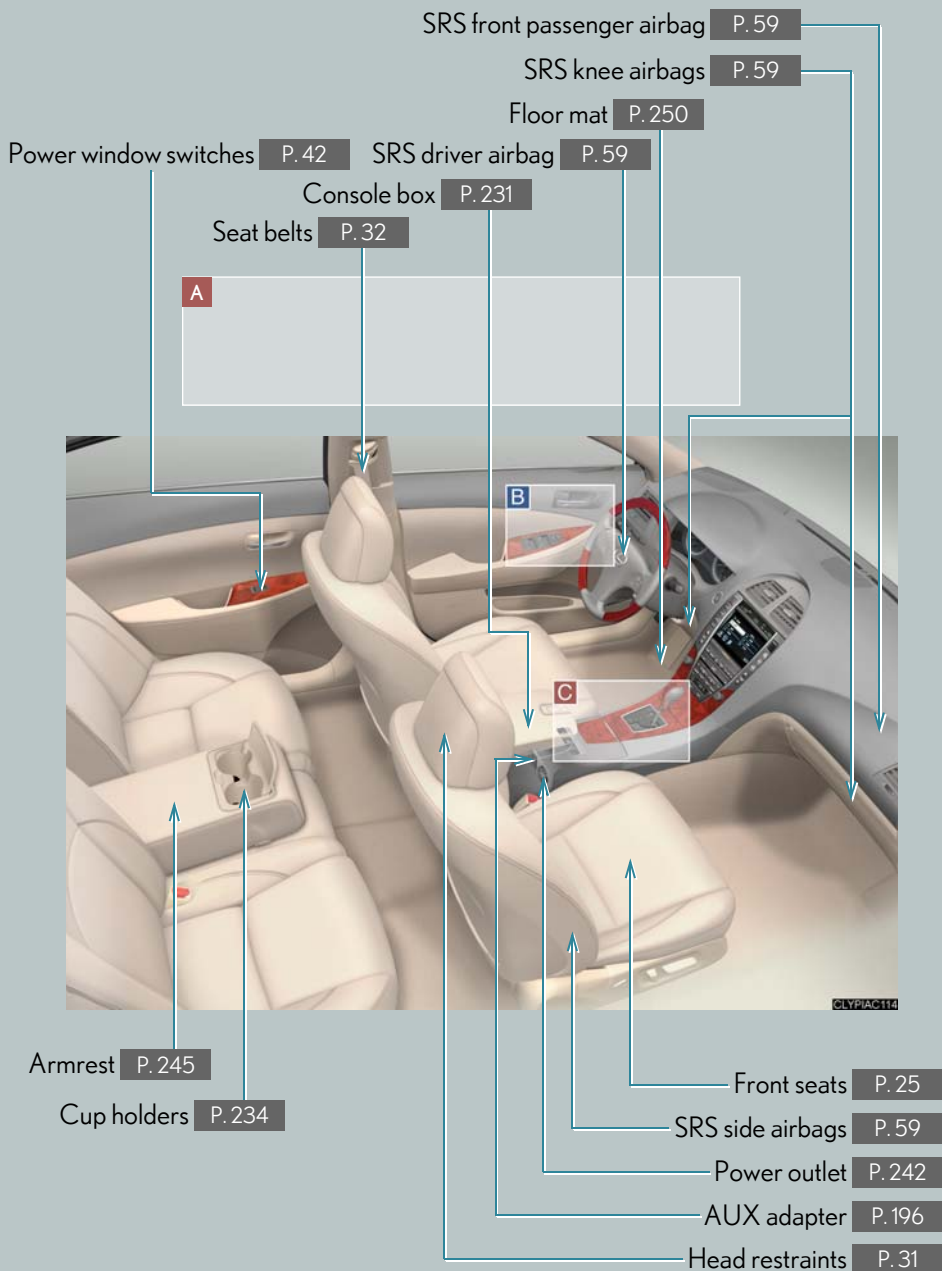
1	Before driving	Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column.
2	When driving	Driving, stopping and safe-driving information.
3	Interior features	Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience.
4	Maintenance and care	Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information.
5	When trouble arises	What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident.
6	Vehicle specifications	Detailed vehicle information.
7	For US owners	Reporting safety defects for US owners
	Index	Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual.



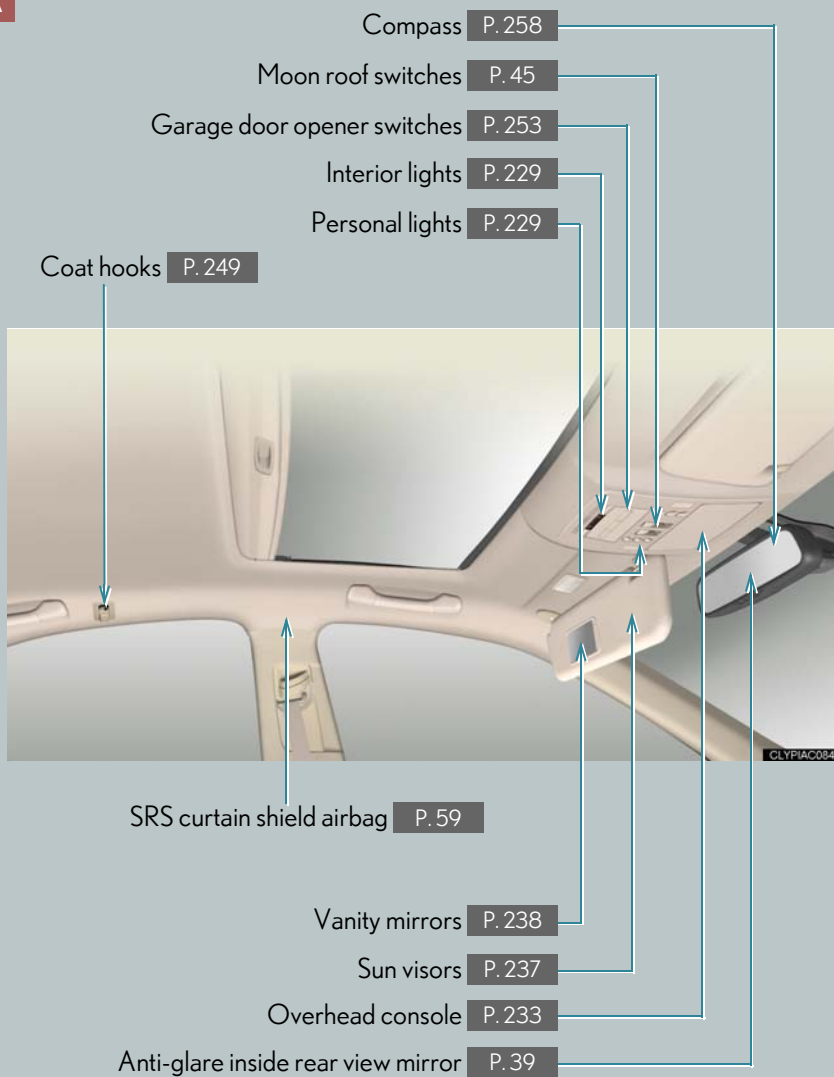


Pictorial index

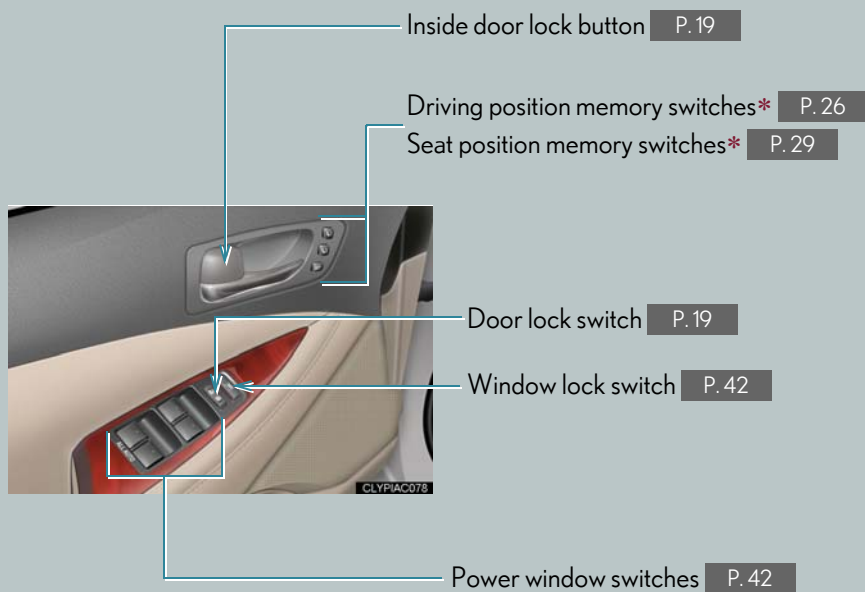
Interior



A



B



C

Automatic transmission shift lever P. 97

Seat heater/ventilator switches* P. 243



Shift lock override button P. 372

Cigarette lighter P. 241

Ashtray P. 240

Cup holders P. 234

*: If equipped

Pictorial index

Instrument panel

Headlight switch P. 112
Turn signal lever P. 100
Fog light switch P. 115

Multi-information display P. 108

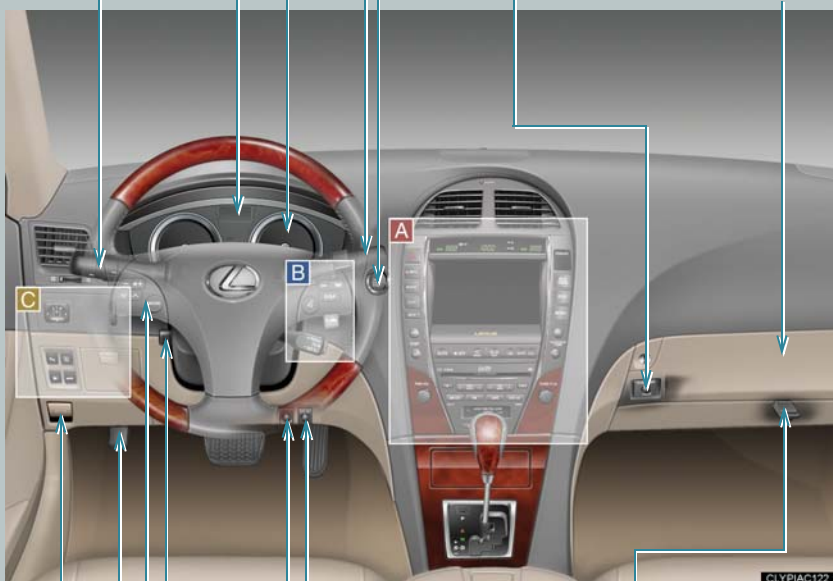
Gauges and meters P. 102

Windshield wipers and washer switch P. 116

Engine switch P. 94

Trunk opener main switch P. 23

Glove box P. 230



Tire pressure warning system select switch P. 300

Adaptive front lighting system cancel switch* P. 113

Tire pressure warning system reset switch P. 299

Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P. 38

Audio remote control switches P. 197

Parking brake pedal P. 101

Hood lock release lever P. 279

A ► Without navigation system



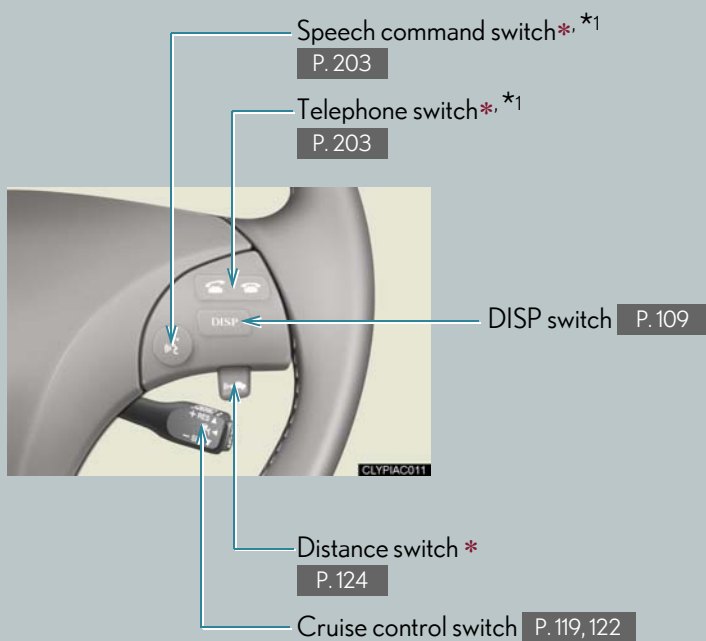
► With navigation system



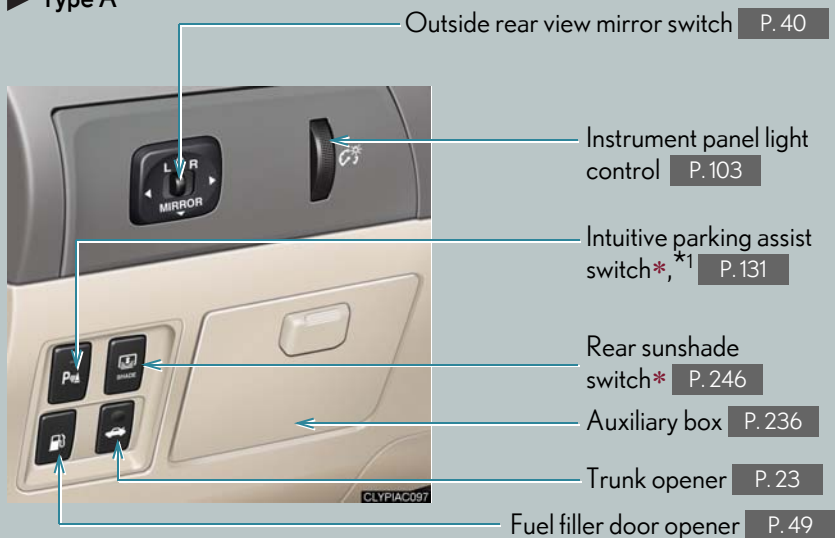
*: If equipped

*1: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

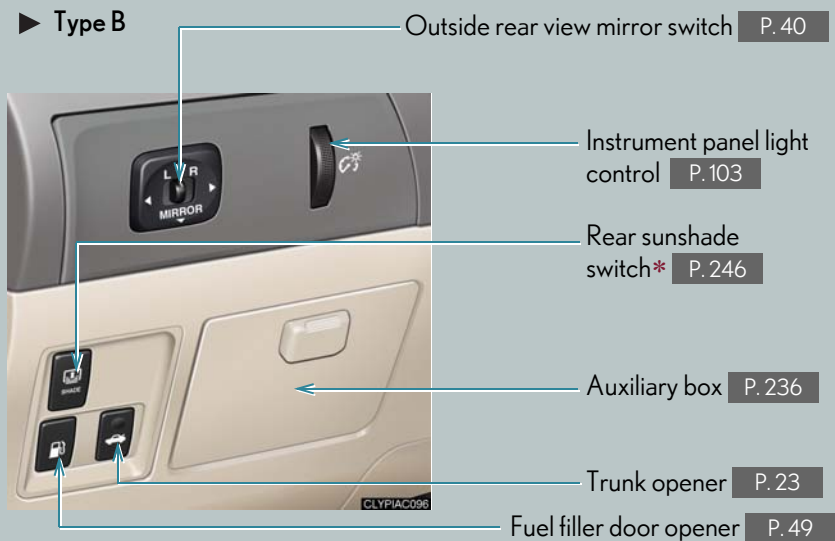
B



C ▶ Type A



▶ Type B



*: If equipped

*1: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

1 Before driving

1-6.	Anti-theft system	52
	Engine immobilizer system	52
	Alarm.....	54
	Theft prevention labels (for USA).....	56
1-7.	Safety information.....	57
	Correct driving posture	57
	SRS airbags	59
	Front passenger occupant classification system.....	70
	Child restraint systems	75
	Installing child restraints	78
2	When driving	
2-1.	Driving procedures.....	88
	Driving the vehicle.....	88
	Starting the engine	94
	Automatic Transmission	97
	Turn signal lever.....	100
	Parking brake	101
2-2.	Instrument cluster	102
	Gauges and meters	102
	Indicators and warning lights.....	104
	Multi-information display.....	108
2-3.	Operating the lights and windshield wipers.....	112

Fog light switch	115	
Windshield wipers and washer	116	
2-4. Using other driving systems.....	119	
Cruise control	119	
Dynamic radar cruise control.....	122	
Intuitive parking assist	131	
Driving assist systems.....	137	
PCS (Pre-Collision System).....	140	
2-5. Driving information	143	
Cargo and luggage.....	143	
Vehicle load limits.....	146	
Winter driving tips	147	
Trailer towing.....	152	
Dinghy towing	159	
3 Interior features		
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger	162	
Automatic air conditioning system (without navigation system).....	162	
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers	169	
3-2. Using the audio system.....	170	
Audio system type (without navigation system)	170	1
Using the radio.....	172	
Using the CD player	179	
Playing back MP3 and WMA discs	185	2
Optimal use of the audio system	193	
Using the AUX adapter.....	196	
Using the steering wheel audio switches	197	3
3-3. Using the hands-free phone system	199	
Hands-free phone system features.....	199	4
Using the hands-free phone system	202	
Making a phone call.....	210	5
Setting a cellular phone.....	214	
Security and system setup.....	218	
Using the phone book.....	221	6
3-4. Using the interior lights.....	227	
Interior lights list.....	227	
• Front interior lights and front personal lights.....	229	7
3-5. Using the storage features....	230	
List of storage features	230	
• Glove box	230	
• Console box.....	231	
• Overhead console	233	

• Cup holders.....	234
• Auxiliary box	236

3-6. Other interior features..... 237

Sun visors.....	237
Vanity mirror.....	238
Clock.....	239
Ashtray	240
Cigarette lighter	241
Power outlet.....	242
Seat heaters and ventilators	243
Armrest	245
Rear sunshade.....	246
Extended trunk.....	248
Coat hooks	249
Floor mat.....	250
Trunk features.....	251
Garage door opener.....	253
Compass.....	258

4 Maintenance and care

4-1. Maintenance and care..... 264

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior.....	264
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior	266

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements	269
General maintenance	271

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs	274
--	-----

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance..... 275

Do-it-yourself service precautions	275
Hood.....	279
Positioning the jack	280
Engine compartment.....	282
Tires	297
Tire inflation pressure.....	305
Wheels.....	309
Air conditioning filter.....	311
Electronic key battery	313
Checking and replacing fuses	315
Headlight aim (vehicles with discharge headlights).....	324
Light bulbs	325

5 When trouble arises

5-1. Essential information..... 334

If your vehicle needs to be towed	334
If you think something is wrong	337
Fuel pump shut off system	338
Event data recorder	339

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency 341

 If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... 341

 If a warning message is displayed..... 350

 If you have a flat tire..... 361

 If the engine will not start 370

 If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 372

 If you lose your keys 373

 When the electronic key battery is discharged 374

 If the vehicle battery is discharged 376

 If your vehicle overheats 379

 If the vehicle becomes stuck..... 381

6 Vehicle specifications

6-1. Specifications..... 384

 Maintenance data..... 384

 Fuel information..... 394

 Tire information..... 397

6-2. Customization 405

 Customizable features 405

6-3. Initialization 410

 Items to initialize 410

7 For US owners

 Reporting safety defects for U.S.A. owners..... 412

Index

 Alphabetical index..... 414

 What to do if... 423

Before driving

1

1-1. Key information.....	2	1-5. Refueling.....	49
Keys.....	2	Opening the fuel tank cap	49
1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk.....	4	1-6. Anti-theft system	52
Smart access system with push-button start	4	Engine immobilizer system.....	52
Wireless remote control.....	16	Alarm	54
Doors.....	19	Theft prevention labels (for USA).....	56
Trunk	23	1-7. Safety information.....	57
1-3. Adjustable components.....	25	Correct driving posture	57
Front seats	25	SRS airbags	59
Driving position memory	26	Front passenger occupant classification system.....	70
Seat position memory	29	Child restraint systems	75
Head restraints.....	31	Installing child restraints	78
Seat belts	32		
Steering wheel.....	38		
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror	39		
Outside rear view mirrors	40		
1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof.....	42		
Power windows	42		
Moon roof	45		

2-1. Driving procedures.....	88	PCS (Pre-Collision System).....	140
Driving the vehicle	88		
Starting the engine	94		
Automatic Transmission	97	2-5. Driving information.....	143
Turn signal lever	100	Cargo and luggage.....	143
Parking brake.....	101	Vehicle load limits.....	146
		Winter driving tips	147
2-2. Instrument cluster.....	102	Trailer towing.....	152
Gauges and meters	102	Dinghy towing	159
Indicators and warning lights.....	104		
Multi-information display.....	108		
2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers.....	112		
Headlight switch.....	112		
Fog light switch.....	115		
Windshield wipers and washer	116		
2-4. Using other driving systems	119		
Cruise control.....	119		
Dynamic radar cruise control.....	122		
Intuitive parking assist	131		
Driving assist systems.....	137		

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger	162	3-4. Using the interior lights	227
Automatic air conditioning system (without navigation system).....	162	Interior lights list	227
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers.....	169	• Front interior lights and front personal lights	229
3-2. Using the audio system	170	3-5. Using the storage features.....	230
Audio system type (without navigation system)	170	List of storage features	230
Using the radio	172	• Glove box	230
Using the CD player	179	• Console boxes	231
Playing back MP3 and WMA discs.....	185	• Overhead console	233
Optimal use of the audio system	193	• Cup holders	234
Using the AUX adapter	196	• Auxiliary box	236
Using the steering wheel audio switches	197	3-6. Other interior features.....	237
3-3. Using the hands-free phone system	199	Sun visors	237
Hands-free phone system features	199	Vanity mirror	238
Using the hands-free phone system	202	Clock.....	239
Making a phone call.....	210	Ashtray	240
Setting a cellular phone	214	Cigarette lighter	241
Security and system setup	218	Power outlet	242
Using the phone book.....	221	Seat heaters and ventilators.....	243
		Armrest.....	245
		Rear sunshade.....	246
		Extended trunk	248
		Coat hooks.....	249
		Floor mat	250
		Trunk features	251
		Garage door opener.....	253
		Compass	258

4-1. Maintenance and care	264	
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior.....	264	Headlight aim (vehicles with discharge headlights)..... 324
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior	266	Light bulbs..... 325
4-2. Maintenance	269	
Maintenance requirements.....	269	
General maintenance	271	
Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs	274	
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance	275	
Do-it-yourself service precautions	275	
Hood.....	279	
Positioning the jack.....	280	
Engine compartment.....	282	
Tires	297	
Tire inflation pressure.....	305	
Wheels.....	309	
Air conditioning filter	311	
Electronic key battery	313	
Checking and replacing fuses	315	

5-1. Essential information..... 334

If your vehicle needs to be
towed 334

If you think something is
wrong 337

Fuel pump shut off system 338

Event data recorder 339

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency..... 341

If a warning light turns on or
a warning buzzer
sounds... 341

If a warning message is
displayed..... 350

If you have a flat tire..... 361

If the engine will not start 370

If the shift lever cannot
be shifted from P 372

If you lose your keys 373

When the electronic key
battery is discharged 374

If the vehicle battery is
discharged 376

If your vehicle overheats 379

If the vehicle becomes
stuck 381

6-1. Specifications 384

 Maintenance data..... 384

 Fuel information..... 394

 Tire information..... 397

6-2. Customization 405

 Customizable features 405

6-3. Initialization 410

 Items to initialize..... 410

Reporting safety defects for U.S.A. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

■ If NHTSA receives similar complaints

It may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

■ To contact NHTSA

You may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 366-0123 in the Washington, D.C. area) or write to: NHTSA, U.S.A. Department of Transportation, Washington, D.C. 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the Hotline.

For US owners

7

Reporting safety defects
for U.S.A. owners 412

Index

Alphabetical index 414

What to do if... 423

1-1. Key information

Keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



1 Electronic keys

- Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 4)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 16)

2 Mechanical keys

3 Key number plate

Using the mechanical key



Take out the mechanical key.

■ When required to leave a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant

Turn the trunk opener main switch OFF and lock the glove box and the armrest door as circumstances demand. (→P. 23, 230, 248)

Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

■ Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. In the event that a mechanical key is lost, a new key can be made at your Lexus dealer using the key number plate. (→P. 373)

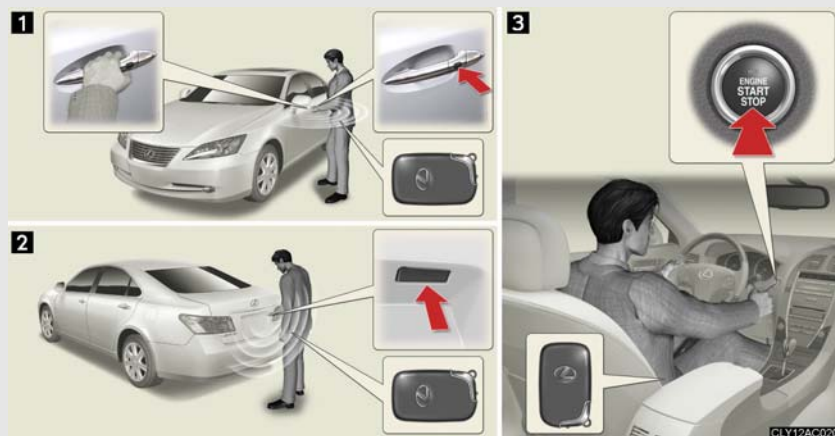
 NOTICE**■ To prevent key damage**

- Do not subject the keys to strong shocks, expose them to high temperatures by placing them in direct sunlight, or get them wet.
- Do not expose the keys to electromagnetic materials or attach any material that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk Smart access system with push-button start

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key on your person, for example in your pocket.

(The driver should always carry the electronic key.)



1 Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 5)

2 Unlocks the trunk (→P. 5)

3 Starts the engine (→P. 94)

Locking and unlocking the doors



Press the lock button to lock the door.

Pressing and holding the button closes the windows and standard moon roof.



Grip the handle to unlock the door.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.

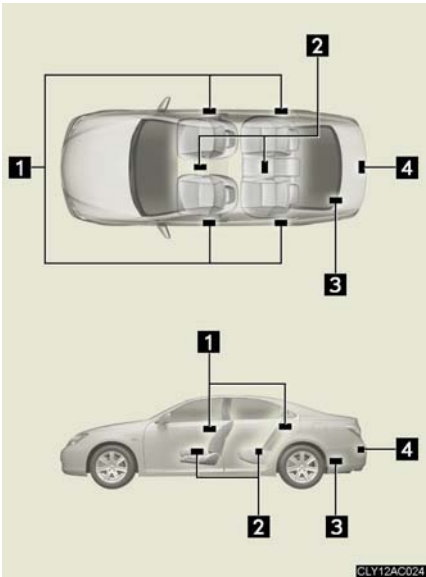
Unlocking the trunk



Press and hold the button to unlock the trunk.

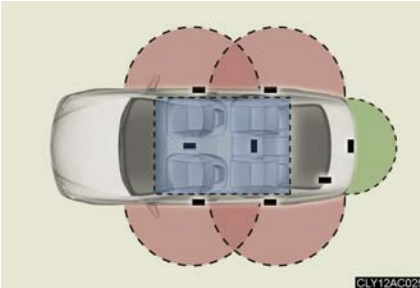
Antenna location and effective range

■ Antenna location



- 1 Antennas outside cabin
- 2 Antennas inside cabin
- 3 Antenna inside trunk
- 4 Antenna outside trunk

■ Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)



- When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (70 cm) of any of the outside door handles. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

- When unlocking the trunk

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (70 cm) of the trunk release button.

- When starting the engine or changing engine switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

■ Operation signals

Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Windows and standard moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and standard moon roof are operating.

■ Conditions affecting operation

The smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control function may not operate normally in the following situations.

(Ways of coping: →P. 374)

- Near a TV tower, radio station, electric power plant, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone or other wireless communication device
- When multiple electronic keys are in the vicinity
- When the electronic key has come into contact with, or is covered by a metallic object
- When a wireless key (that emits radio waves) is being used nearby
- When the electronic key has been left near an electrical appliance such as a personal computer

■ Switching the door unlock function

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks.

STEP 1 Turn the engine switch OFF.

STEP 2 When the indicator on the key surface is turned off, push and hold  ,  , or  for approximately 5 seconds while pushing the  button on the key.

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 2.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking doors	Beep
	Hold the driver's door handle to unlock only the driver's door.	Exterior: Beeps three times Interior: Pings once
	Hold the door handle except a driver's door handle to unlock all doors	
	Hold any door handle to unlock all doors	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Pings once

1
Before driving

■ Battery-saving function

In the following circumstances, the entry function is disabled in order to prevent the vehicle and electronic key batteries from discharging.

- When the entry function has not been used for 2 weeks or more
- When the electronic key has been left within approximately 3 ft. (1 m) of the vehicle for 10 minutes or more

The system will resume operation when...

- The vehicle is locked using the door handle lock switch.
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the wireless remote control function. (→P. 16)
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the mechanical key. (→P. 374)

■ Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The battery becomes depleted even if the electronic key is not used.) If the smart access system with push-button start or the wireless remote control function does not operate, or the detection area becomes smaller, the battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→ P. 313)
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 3 ft. (1 m) of the following electrical appliances.
 - TVs
 - Personal computers
 - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
 - Table lamps

■ To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not function.)

■ Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases.
 - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
 - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the trunk is unlocked.
 - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, rear package tray or floor, or in the glove box when the engine is started or engine switch modes are changed.

- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 60 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)

■ When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle.

■ Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the anti-theft system automatically locks the vehicle again.

■ Alarms and warning indicators

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warnings displayed on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and unforeseeable accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Take appropriate measures in response to any warning indications on the multi-information display. (→P. 350)

The following table describes circumstances and correction procedures when only alarms are sounded.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 2 seconds	Tried to lock the doors using the entry function while the electronic key is still inside the passenger compartment	Retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment and lock the doors again.
	Tried to exit the vehicle with the electronic key and lock the doors without first turning the engine switch OFF	Turn the engine switch OFF and lock the doors again.
	Closed the trunk while the electronic key is still inside the trunk and all doors are locked	Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid.
Exterior alarm sounds once for 10 seconds	Tried to lock the vehicle using the entry function while a door is open	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.
Interior alarm sounds continuously	Tried to open the door and exit the vehicle without shifting the shift lever to P	Shift the shift lever to P.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings continuously	Switched to ACC mode while the driver's door is open (Opened the driver's door when the engine switch is in ACC mode.)	Turn the engine switch OFF and close the driver's door.
	Turned the engine switch OFF while the driver's door is open	Close the driver's door.

■ When the electronic key battery is fully depleted

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 374)
- Starting the engine: →P. 94
- Replacing the battery: →P. 313

■ Customization

It is possible to deactivate systems such as the smart access system with push-button start. (→P. 413)

■ Certification for the smart access system with push-button start

► For vehicles sold in the USA

FCC ID: NI4TMLF-3

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTICE:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

► For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

 CAUTION

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should keep away from the smart access system antennas.
The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Wireless remote control

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle and the trunk from outside the vehicle.



- 1 Locks all doors
- 2 Unlocks all doors
- 3 Opens the windows and standard moon roof (push and hold)
- 4 Unlocks the trunk (push and hold)
- 5 Sounds alarm (push and hold) (→P. 54)

■ 2-step unlocking function

When you push the  button, the driver's door is unlocked. Pushing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

■ Operation signals

Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Trunk: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the trunk has been unlocked.

Windows and standard moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and standard moon roof are operating.

■ Door lock buzzer

If a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds for 10 seconds if an attempt to lock the door is made. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ Electronic key battery depletion

→P.10

■ Security feature

→P.11

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 13

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 8

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. trunk unlocking function) can be changed. (→P. 413)

■ **Certification for wireless remote control**

► For vehicles sold in the USA

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTICE:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

► For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Doors

1

Before driving

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

■ Entry function

→P. 4

■ Wireless remote control

→P. 16

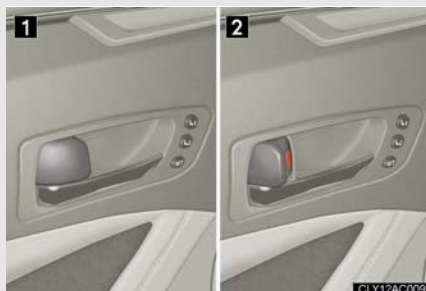
■ Door lock switch



1 Locks all doors

2 Unlocks all doors

■ Inside lock button



1 Locks the door

2 Unlocks the door

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.

Locking the front doors from the outside without a key

The door cannot be locked if the engine switch is in ACC or IG-ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

Depending on the position of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

Rear door child-protector lock



1 The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the locks are set.

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or cancelled:

Function	Operation
Shift position linked door locking function	Shifting the shift lever out of P locks all doors.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Shifting the shift lever to P unlocks all doors.
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are unlocked when the driver's door is opened within 10 seconds after turning the engine switch OFF.

■ Setting and canceling the functions

To switch between setting and canceling, follow the procedure below:

STEP 1 Close all the doors and switch the engine switch to IG-ON mode. (Perform the step 2 within 10 seconds.)

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to P or N, and press and hold the driver's door lock switch (**1** or **2**) for 5 seconds.

The shift lever and switch positions corresponding to the desired function to be set or canceled are shown as follows.



Function	Shift lever position	Switch position
Shift position linked door locking function	P	1
Shift position linked door unlocking function		2
Speed linked door locking function	N	1
Driver's door linked door unlocking function		2

When the setting or canceling operation is complete, all doors are locked and then unlocked.

■ Impact detection door lock release system

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ Using the mechanical key

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 374)

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed. (→P. 413)

CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.

Failing to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock all doors.
- Ensure that all doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle while driving.
- Set the rear door child protector locks when children are seated in the rear seat.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Trunk

The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener, entry function or wireless remote control.

■ Trunk opener



Release the trunk lid.

■ Entry function

→P. 4

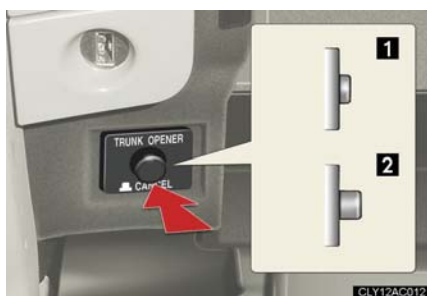
■ Wireless remote control

→P. 16

1

Before driving

Locking the trunk opener feature



Turn the main switch in the glove box OFF to disable the trunk opener.

1 ON

2 OFF

The trunk lid cannot be opened even with the trunk opener, the wireless remote control or the entry function.

■ Trunk handle



Use the trunk handle when closing the trunk.

■ Internal trunk release lever



The trunk lid can be opened by pulling down on the glow-in-the-dark lever located on the inside of trunk lid.

The lever will continue to glow for some time after the trunk lid is closed.

■ Trunk light

The trunk light turns on when the trunk is opened.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the trunk lid closed.

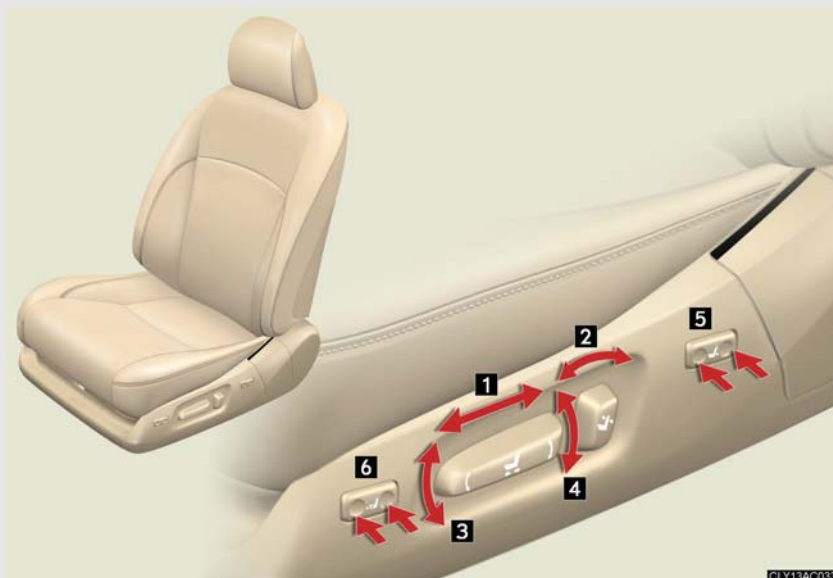
This not only keeps personal belongings from being thrown out, but also prevents exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle as they may lock themselves in the vehicle or trunk, which could cause the child to overheat or suffocate, resulting in death or serious injury.

1-3. Adjustable components

Front seats



- 1 Seat position switch
- 2 Seatback angle switch
- 3 Seat cushion (front) angle switch
- 4 Vertical height adjustment switch
- 5 Lumbar support switch
- 6 Seat leg support adjusting switch (driver's seat) (if equipped)

CAUTION

Seat adjustment

Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.

If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

1-3. Adjustable components

Driving position memory (if equipped)

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors) can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button. It is also possible to set this function to activate automatically when the doors are unlocked.

Two different driving positions can be entered into memory.

■ Entering a position to memory

Check that the shift lever is set in P.

STEP 1 Switch to IG-ON mode.

STEP 2 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.



While pushing the SET button, push button 1 or 2 until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

■ Recalling the memorized position

Check that the shift lever is set in P.

STEP 1 Switch to IG-ON mode.

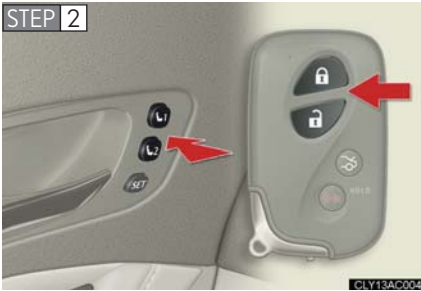


Push button 1 or 2 to recall the memorized position.

Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation

Record your driving position to button 1 or 2 before performing the following.

STEP 1 Turn the engine switch OFF and close the driver's door.



Press and hold the desired button (1 or 2) while pressing the or button on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

■ Canceling the linked door unlock operation

STEP 1 Turn the engine switch OFF and close the driver's door.

STEP 2 While pushing the SET button, push the or button on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

■ Retained accessory power

Memorized positions (except for the steering wheel positions) can be activated up to 30 seconds after the driver's door is opened, even after turning the engine switch OFF.

■ To cancel seat position recall

Perform any of the following operations.

- Push the SET button.
- Push button 1 or 2.
- Adjust the seat using the switches (only cancels seat position recall).

■ If the battery is disconnected

The memorized positions are erased when the battery is disconnected.

CAUTION

■ Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Seat position memory (if equipped)

Your preferred front passenger seat position can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button.

Two different seat positions can be entered into memory.

■ Entering a position to memory

Check that the shift lever is set in P.

STEP 1 Switch to IG-ON mode.

STEP 2 Adjust the front passenger seat to the desired position.



While pushing the SET button, push button 1 or 2 until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

■ Recalling the memorized position

Check that the shift lever is set in P.



Push button 1 or 2 to recall the memorized position.

■ Retained accessory power

Memorized position can be activated up to 30 seconds after the front passenger door is opened, even after turning the engine switch OFF.

■ To cancel seat position recall

Perform any of the following operations.

- Push the SET button.
- Push button 1 or 2.
- Adjust the seat position using the switches.

■ If the battery is disconnected

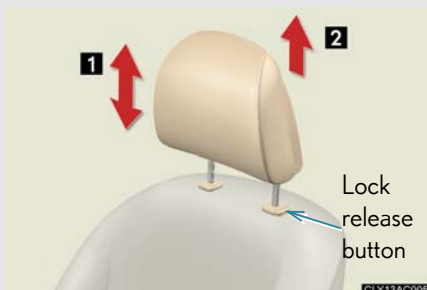
The memorized positions are erased when the battery is disconnected.

CAUTION

■ Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment that the seat does not strike the rear passenger.

Head restraints



1 Vertical adjustment

Push and hold the lock release button when lowering the head restraint.

2 Removal

Pull the head restraint up while pushing the lock release button.

1

Before driving

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints



Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

■ Adjusting the rear seat head restraints

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

■ Head restraints of different seats

The head restraints are specially designed for the seats on which they are installed.

! CAUTION

■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

1-3. Adjustable components

Seat belts

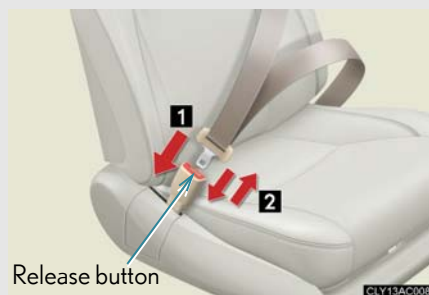
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

■ Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

■ Fastening and releasing the seat belt



1 Fastening the belt

Push the tab into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.

2 Releasing the belt

Press the release button.

■ Adjusting the height of the belt (front seats)

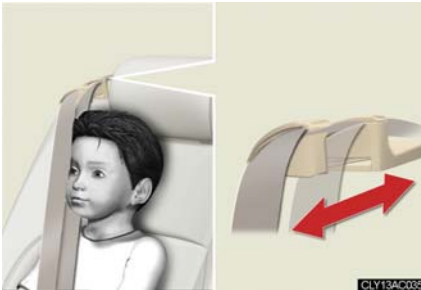


1 Down

2 Up

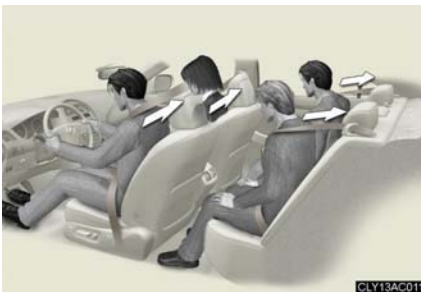
Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

■ Seat belt comfort guide (outside rear seats)



If the shoulder belt sits close to a person's neck, slide the seat belt comfort guide forward.

■ Seat belt pretensioners (front and outside rear seats)



The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

Pre-collision seat belts (front seats of vehicles with pre-collision system)

When the pre-collision sensor detects an obstacle and determines that a collision is unavoidable, the seat belts lessen collision injury by retracting the slack in the front seat belts before the collision, thus restraining the driver and passenger at an earlier stage.

The seat belts will also operate in the event of sudden braking. (→P. 140)

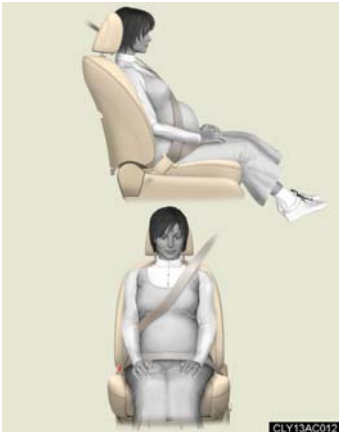
■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

■ Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the CRS firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P. 78)

■ Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 32)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only a pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way.

■ Child seat belt usage

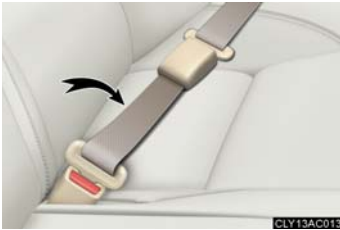
The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child become large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 75)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 32 regarding seat belt usage.

■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

The seat belts cannot be used after a pretensioner has been activated. After an accident, have your Lexus dealer inspect the pretensioners. Make sure the pretensioners are replaced if they have been activated.

■ Seat belt extender



If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.

CAUTION

■ **Wearing a seat belt**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

Failing to do so may cause death or severe injury.

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- Do not recline the seat any more than necessary to achieve a proper seating position. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

■ **Seat belt damage and wear**

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted.
If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there's no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly resulting in death or serious injury.

 CAUTION**■ Using a seat belt extender**

- Do not wear the seat belt extender if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system because the belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, increasing the risk of death or injury in the event of a collision.
- The personalized extender may not be safe on another vehicle, when used by another person, or at a different seating position other than the one originally intended.

 NOTICE**■ When using a seat belt extender**

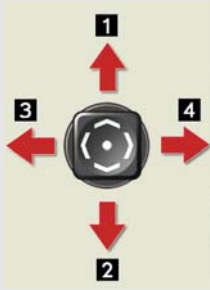
When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt.

This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and the extender itself.

1-3. Adjustable components

Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position while the engine switch is in ACC or IG-ON mode.



- 1 Up
- 2 Down
- 3 Away from the driver
- 4 Toward the driver

Auto tilt away



When the engine switch is turned OFF, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Switching to ACC or IG-ON mode will return the steering wheel to the original position.

! CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

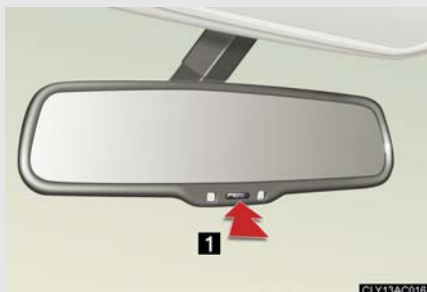
Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

1-3. Adjustable components

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror

In AUTO mode, sensors are used to detect the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically reduces the reflected light.



1 Turns AUTO mode ON/OFF

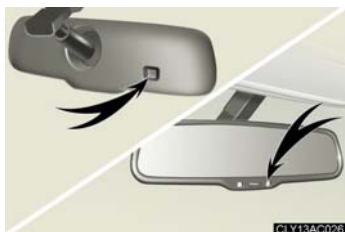
The indicator comes on when AUTO mode is turned ON.

The anti-glare mirror default mode is AUTO. The anti-glare mirror is automatically set to AUTO whenever the engine switch is turned on.

1

Before driving

■ To prevent sensor error



To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover it.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.

Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

1-3. Adjustable components

Outside rear view mirrors

Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch when the engine switch is in ACC or IG-ON mode.

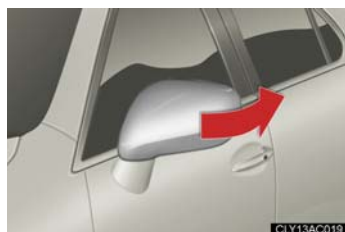


- 1 Select a mirror to adjust (L: left or R: right)
- 2 Adjust the mirror up, down, in, or out using the switch

■ When the mirrors are fogged up

Turn on the mirror defoggers to defog the mirrors. (→P. 169)

■ Folding back the mirrors



Push back in the direction of the vehicle's rear.

■ One-touch adjustment of the mirror angle (vehicles with driving position memory)

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and adjusted with the touch of a button. (→P. 26)

■ Linked mirror function when reversing (vehicles with driving position memory)

The outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. However, this function will not operate when the mirror select switch is in the neutral position (between L and R).

■ Auto anti-glare function

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to AUTO mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 39)

⚠ CAUTION

■ When driving the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while driving.

Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded back.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

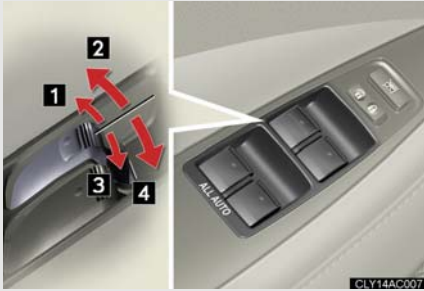
■ When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the surface of the mirror, as it may be hot.

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the following switches.



- 1 Closing
- 2 One-touch closing*
- 3 Opening
- 4 One-touch opening*

*: Pushing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

Lock switch



Press the switch down to lock passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

■ The power windows can be operated when

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

■ Linked door lock window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 374)
- The power windows can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 16)
- The power windows can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 4)

■ Operating the power windows after turning the engine switch OFF

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the engine switch is switched to ACC mode or turned OFF. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (→P. 413)

CAUTION

■ Closing the windows

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.
Closing a power window on someone can cause serious injury, and in some instances, even death.

■ Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

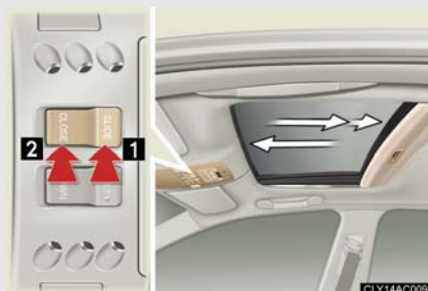
1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Moon roof

Use the overhead switches to open, close, and tilt the moon roof up and down.

■ Opening and closing

► Standard type



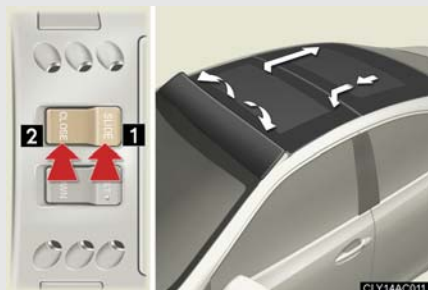
1 Open

The moon roof stops slightly before the fully opened position. Push the switch again to fully open.

2 Close

Push the switch in the either direction to stop the moon roof partway.

► Glass type



1 Open

2 Close (push and hold)

The moon roof stops once. Push and hold the switch again to fully close.

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

■ Tilting up and down

► Standard type



1 Tilt up

2 Tilt down

Push the switch in the either side to stop the moon roof partway.

► Glass type



1 Tilt up

Push the switch in the either side to stop the moon roof partway.

2 Tilt down (push and hold)

■ The moon roof can be operated when

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

■ Linked door lock moon roof operation (standard type)

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 374)
- The moon roof can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 16)
- The moon roof can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 4)

■ Operating the moon roof after turning the engine switch OFF

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the engine switch is switched to ACC mode or turned OFF. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ To reduce moon roof wind noise (standard type)

Drive with the moon roof where it has stopped when opening automatically.

■ Sunshade

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (→P. 413)

CAUTION

■ Opening the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ Closing the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their bodies in a position where they could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.
Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury.

■ Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

1-5. Refueling

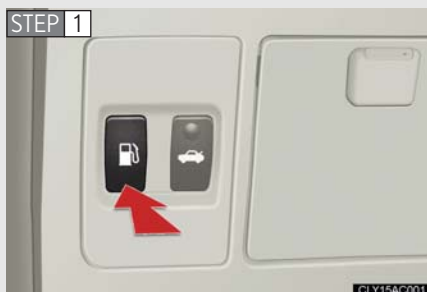
Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap.

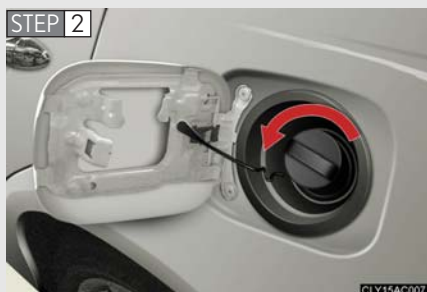
■ Before refueling the vehicle

Turn the engine switch OFF and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.

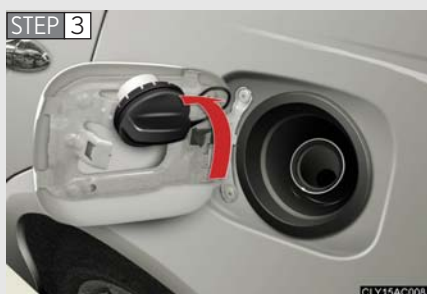
■ Opening the fuel tank cap



Open the fuel filler door.



Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.



Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.

Closing the fuel tank cap



When replacing the fuel tank cap, turn it until a clicking sound is heard.

After releasing your hand, the cap will turn slightly to the opposite direction.

Fuel types

Use unleaded gasoline. (91 Octane rating [Research Octane Number 96] or higher)

Fuel tank capacity

Approximately 18.5 gal. (70 L, 15.4 Imp. gal.)

When the fuel filler door opener is inoperable



The lever can be used to open the fuel filler door if the fuel filler door cannot be opened using the inside switch because the battery is discharged or for any other reason.

 CAUTION**■ Refueling the vehicle**

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so, may result in death or serious injury.

- Touch the vehicle or some other metal surface to discharge any static electricity. Sparks resulting from discharging static electricity may cause the fuel vapors to ignite.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their bodies to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel. Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle. Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged. This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ When replacing the fuel cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

 NOTICE**■ Refueling**

Do not spill fuel during refueling.

Failing to do so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the exhaust systems to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

1-6. Anti-theft system

Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.



The indicator light flashes after the engine switch has been turned OFF to indicate that the system is operating.

■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

■ Certifications for the engine immobilizer system

- For vehicles sold in the USA

FCC ID: NI4TMIMB-1

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

- For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

 CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the key**

Do not modify, remove or disable the engine immobilizer system. If any unauthorized changes or modifications are made, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

1-6. Anti-theft system

Alarm

The system sounds the alarm and flashes lights when forcible entry is detected.



Close the moon roof and all windows. Stop the engine.

The engine immobilizer system causes the indicator light to flash.

After all people exit out of the vehicle, close the doors, trunk and hood, and lock all doors.

The indicator light comes on.

The indicator light changes from being on to a flashing pattern when the alarm system is set.

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following:

- Unlock the doors or trunk using the entry function or the wireless remote door lock function.
- Start the engine.

■ Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, check that there is no one in the vehicle, and that all windows and moon roof are closed before locking the vehicle.

■ Panic mode



When  is pushed for longer than about one second, the headlights/tail lights/emergency flashers will flash, the front and rear interior lights will come on, and an alarm will sound for about 60 seconds to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, push any button on the wireless remote control.

■ When the battery is disconnected

Be sure to cancel the alarm system.

If the battery is discharged before canceling the alarm, the system may be triggered when the battery is reconnected.

1-6. Anti-theft system

Theft prevention labels (for USA)



CLY16AC007

These labels are attached to the vehicle to reduce vehicle theft by facilitating the tracing and recovery of parts from stolen vehicles. Do not remove under penalty of law.

Correct driving posture

Drive in a good posture as follows:



- 1** Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P. 25)
- 2** Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 25)
- 3** Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable.
- 4** Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the air-bag is facing your chest. (→P. 38)
- 5** Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 31)
- 6** Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 32)

CAUTION

■ While driving

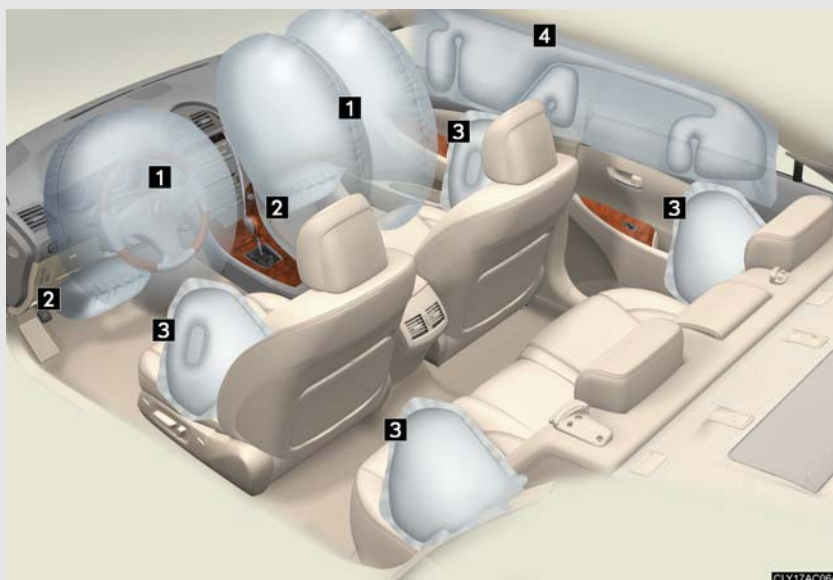
- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.

■ Adjusting the seat position:

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



► Front airbags

1 Driver airbag/front passenger airbag

Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components.

2 Knee airbags

Can help protect the knee of the driver and front passenger.

► Side and curtain shield airbags

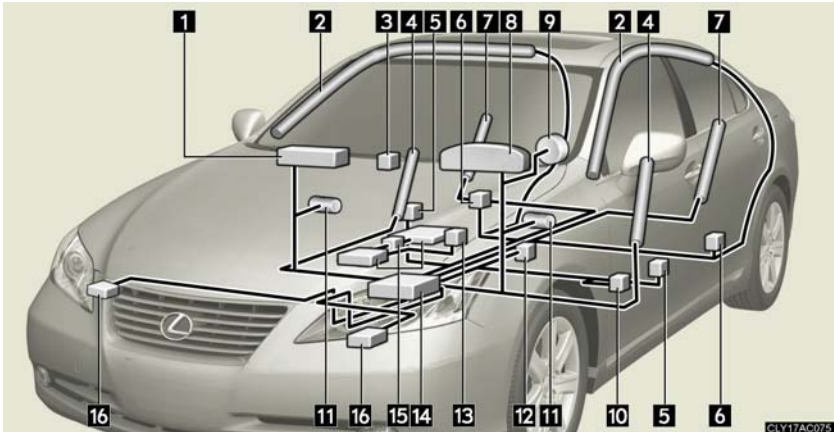
3 Side airbags

Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants and rear seat outside occupants (if equipped).

4 Curtain shield airbags

Can help protect primarily the head of outside occupants.

Airbag system components



- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Front passenger airbag | 8 SRS warning light |
| 2 Curtain shield airbags | 9 Driver airbag |
| 3 AIRBAG ON and AIRBAG OFF indicator lights | 10 Driver's seat position sensor |
| 4 Side airbags for the front passengers | 11 Knee airbags |
| 5 Side and curtain shield airbag sensors | 12 Driver's seat belt buckle switch |
| 6 Curtain shield airbag sensors | 13 Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch |
| 7 Side airbags for the rear outside passengers (if equipped) | 14 Airbag sensor assembly |
| | 15 Occupant detection system (ECU and sensors) |
| | 16 Front airbag sensors |

Your vehicle is equipped with ADVANCED AIRBAGS designed based on US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag system controls airbag deployment power for the driver and front passenger. The driver airbag system consists of the driver seat's position sensor etc. The front passenger's airbag system consists of the front passenger occupant classification sensor etc.

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and an airbag sensor.

In certain types of severe frontal or side impacts, the SRS airbag system triggers the airbag inflators. A chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

■ If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the seats, and parts of the front pillar, rear pillar and roof side rail, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The front windshield may crack.

■ Operating conditions (front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy if the severity of the frontal impact is above the designed threshold level, comparable to an approximate 15 mph (25 km/h) collision when the vehicle impacts straight into a fixed barrier that does not move or deform.

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

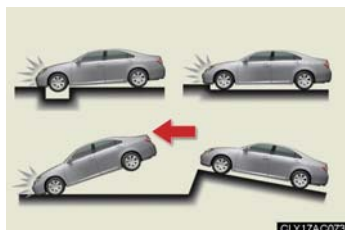
- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.
- The SRS front passenger airbag will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front passenger airbag may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is fastened, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 70)

■ Operating conditions (side and curtain shield airbags)

- The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are designed to inflate when the passenger compartment is subjected to a severe impact from the side.
- The SRS side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 70)

■ Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

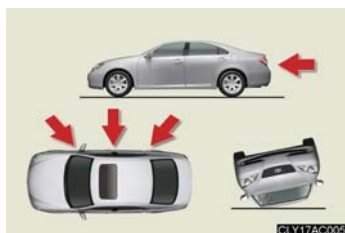
The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.



- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (front airbags)

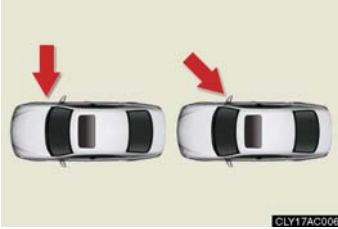
The SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.



- Collision from the rear
- Collision from the side
- Vehicle rollover

■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (side and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

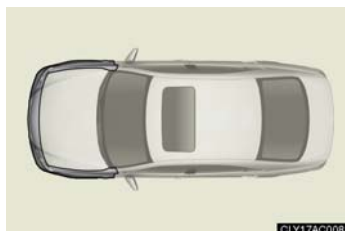


- Collision from the rear
- Collision from the front
- Vehicle rollover

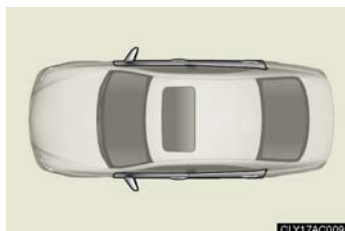
■ When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Do not disconnect the battery cables before contacting your Lexus dealer.

- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.



- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.



- A portion of the doors is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The portion of the containing the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

 CAUTION
■ SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration ("NHTSA") advises:

Since the risk zone for driver airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions



- If the seat belt extender has been connected to the driver's seat belt buckle but the seat belt extender has not also been fastened to the latch plate of the driver's seat belt, the SRS driver's airbag system will judge that the driver is wearing the seat belt even though the seat belt has not been connected. In this case, the driver's airbag may not activate correctly in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. (→P. 75)

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions



- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to sit on the knees of a front passenger while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not drive the vehicle while the driver or passenger have items resting on their knees.



- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.

CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad or lower portion of the instrument panel.

These items can become projectiles when SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.

- Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear pillars, roof side rail or assist grip.

- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and seriously injure or kill you, should the SRS curtain shield airbag deploy.

- If the vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components shown on P. 60.
Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbag has deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front pillar garnish, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

 CAUTION**■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components**

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer.

The SRS airbag may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.)
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios or CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability.

1-7. Safety information

Front passenger occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for front passenger.



With navigation system



Without navigation system



1 SRS warning light

2 Front passenger's seat belt reminder light

3 AIRBAG OFF indicator light

4 AIRBAG ON indicator light

Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

■ Adult^{*1}

Indicator/ warning light	AIRBAG ON and AIRBAG OFF indicator lights	AIRBAG ON
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing ^{*2}
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Activated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	
	Front passenger knee airbag	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

■ Child ^{*3} or child restraint system ^{*4}

Indicator/ warning light	AIRBAG ON and AIRBAG OFF indicator lights	AIRBAG OFF
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing ^{*2}
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated

1

Before driving

■ Unoccupied

Indicator/ warning light	AIRBAG ON and AIRBAG OFF indicator lights	Not illuminated
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

■ There is a malfunction in the system

Indicator/ warning light	AIRBAG ON and AIRBAG OFF indicator lights	AIRBAG OFF
	SRS warning light	On
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated

- *1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.
- *2: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.
- *3: When a larger child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique or posture.
- *4: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (→P. 75)

CAUTION

Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding front passenger occupant classification system.

Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt tab has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Make sure the AIRBAG OFF indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the AIRBAG ON indicator light is illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated, the front passenger airbag, side airbag on the front passenger side and front passenger knee airbag may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of collision.
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the rear passenger seat.
- Do not let a rear passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.
- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a rear seat. This may cause the AIRBAG OFF indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger's airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the rear seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the rear seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.
- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the AIRBAG ON indicator light is illuminated. If the AIRBAG OFF indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the AIRBAG OFF indicator still remain illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.

CAUTION

■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

- When it is unavoidable to install the forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P. 78)
- Do not modify or remove the front seats.
- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction of the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Child restraint systems installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seat-backs.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion or seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Do not modify or replace the upholstery of the front seat.

Child restraint systems

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.

The laws of the Canada and all 50 states of the USA now require the use of child restraint systems.

1

Before driving

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.

General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 78)

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child.



► Infant seat



► Convertible seat



► Booster seat

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

Leave the child restraint system properly secured on the seat. Do not store the restraint loosely on a passenger seat or in the trunk.

■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

Get an appropriate child restraint system for the child. If a child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt.
(→P. 32)

 CAUTION**■ Child restraint precautions**

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system should allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible even if AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of collision.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front pillar or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

1-7. Safety information

Installing child restraints

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the rear seats using a seat belt or child restraint lower anchorages. Attach the top strap when installing a child restraint.

1



1 Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver's seat belt) (→P. 32)

2



2 Child restraint lower anchorages

Lower anchorages are provided for the outside rear seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchorages are attached to the seats.)

3



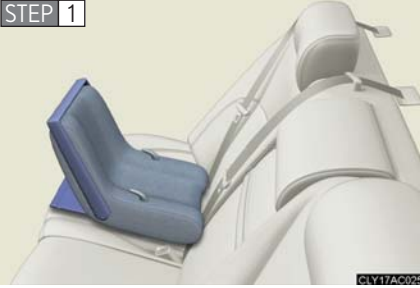
3 Anchor bracket (for top strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for all rear seats.

Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

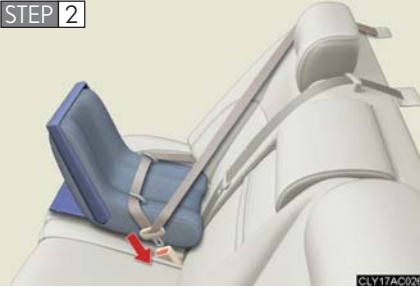
■ Rear facing child seat — Infant/convertible

STEP 1



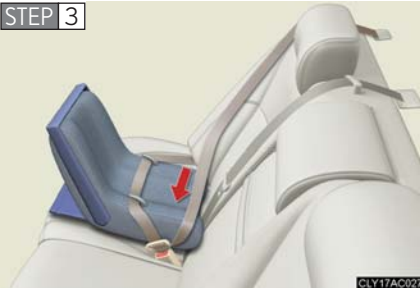
Place the child seat on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.

STEP 2



Run the seat belt through the child seat and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

STEP 3



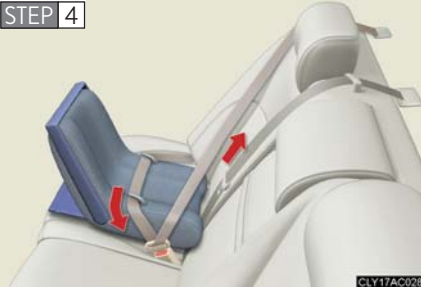
Fully extend the shoulder belt and then allow it to retract slightly in order to activate the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.

1

Before driving

STEP 4



While pushing the child seat down into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child seat is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

■ Forward facing — Convertible child seat

STEP 1



Place the child seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

STEP 2



Run the seat belt through the child seat and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

STEP 3



Fully extend the shoulder belt and then allow it to retract slightly into the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.



■ Booster seat



While pushing the child seat into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child seat is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

Place the child seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

Sit the child in the child seat. Fit the seat belt to the child seat according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 32)

Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt



Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

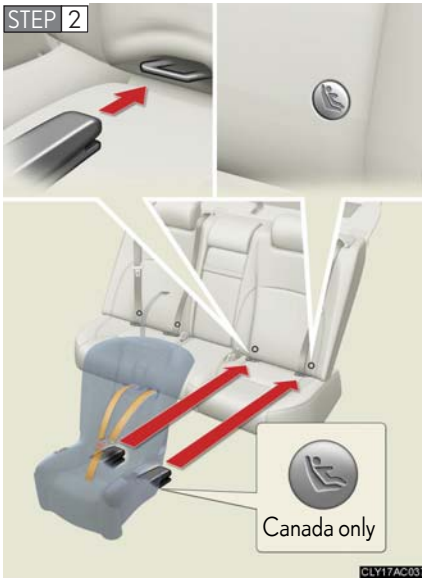
Installation with child restraint lower anchorages

STEP 1 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly.



► Type A

Latch the hooks of lower straps onto the anchorages.



► Type B

Latch the buckles onto the anchorages.

If the child restraint has a top strap, the top strap should be latched onto the anchorages. (→P. 83)

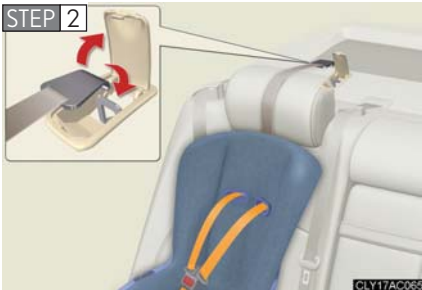
For owners in Canada:

The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

Child restraint systems with a top strap



Secure the child restraint using a seat belt or a lower anchors, and lock the head restraint in place at the lowest position.



Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched.

■ Laws and regulations pertaining to anchorages

Anchorage conform to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2.

Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.

This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When installing a booster seat

Do not fully extend the shoulder belt to prevent the belt from going to ALR lock mode: (→P. 34)

- ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only which could cause injury or discomfort to the child.
- Do not allow the child to play with the seat belt or the child could be killed or seriously injured.

! CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.

If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child may be injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking or an accident.



- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.



- Only put a forward facing or booster child seat on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward facing or booster child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Push and pull the child seat in different directions to be sure it is secure.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

CAUTION

■ Do not use a seat belt extender

If a seat belt extender is used when installing a child restraint system, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a collision.

■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchorages

When using the lower anchorages, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchorages and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child seat. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.

■ Starting the engine (→P. 94)

■ Driving

STEP 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P. 97)

STEP 2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 101)

STEP 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently push the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ Stopping

STEP 1 With the shift lever in D, push the brake pedal.

STEP 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

When the vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P or N. (→P. 97)

■ Parking the vehicle

STEP 1 With the shift lever in D, push the brake pedal.

STEP 2 Set the parking brake. (→P. 101)

STEP 3 Shift the shift lever to P. (→P. 97)

STEP 4 Press the engine switch and stop the engine.

STEP 5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

Starting on a steep uphill

STEP 1 Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to D.

STEP 2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

STEP 3 Release the parking brake.

■ Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, the following precautions are recommended to observe:

- For the first 200 miles (300 km):
Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 600 miles (1000 km):
 - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
 - Avoid sudden acceleration.
 - Do not drive continuously in the low gears.
 - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 386)

■ Normal characteristics after turning off the engine

Approximately five hours after the engine is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is the sound of a fuel evaporation leakage check and, it does not indicate a malfunction.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.

CAUTION

- Do not let the vehicle roll backwards while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the trunk is closed.
Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and eventually, death. Have the cause of the problem inspected immediately.
- Do not under any circumstances shift the shift lever to P, R or N while the vehicle is moving.
Doing so can cause significant damage to the transmission system and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving.
Doing so may cause the engine brake to not operate properly and lead to an accident.
- Do not turn the engine off while driving.
The power steering and brake booster systems will not operate properly if the engine is not running.
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 97)
- When stopped on an inclined surface, use the brake pedal and parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward or forward and causing an accident.
- Be careful when driving on slippery surfaces, as the vehicle may spin or skid when downshifting, rapidly accelerating, braking or turning.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents that may result in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their bodies are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.

CAUTION

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.

This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.

If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, and may cause an accident.

- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.

If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.

- Always keep a foot on the brake pedal while the engine is running to prevent an accident caused by the vehicle moving.

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.

Failure to do so may result in the following.

- Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
- The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of eye glasses to deform or crack.
- Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.

- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.

Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.

- Do not touch the exhaust pipe while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.

Doing so may cause burns.

- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build up, or where snow is expected to fall.

Exhaust gases may enter the vehicle and cause gas poisoning.

CAUTION

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off.

Otherwise, you may accidentally move the shift lever or press the accelerator pedal, which could cause an accident or fire due to abnormal engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle and cause gas poisoning.

■ When braking the vehicle

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.

Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.

- If the power brake assist function does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid downhills or sharp turns that require braking.

In this case, braking is still possible, but it will require more force on the pedal than usual. Braking distance may also increase.

- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.

Each push on the pedal uses up your reserved brake fluid pressure.

- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems: if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and braking distance becomes longer.

Do not drive your vehicle with only a single brake system. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

 NOTICE

■ While driving the vehicle

Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress accelerator and brake pedals together to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always put the shift lever in P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for a long time.
Doing so may damage the power steering pump
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

■ If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear limit indicators)

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible. The rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed. It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or that of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually press the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Replace a flat tire with a new one. (→P. 364)

2-1. Driving procedures

Starting the engine

Modes can be switched by pressing the engine switch when carrying the electronic key on your person. (The engine can be started in any mode by operating the switch at the same time as depressing the brake pedal.)

■ Changing engine switch mode



1 OFF mode

2 ACC mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

3 IG-ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

■ Starting the engine

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Check that the shift lever is set in P.

STEP 3 Sit in the driver's seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.

The engine switch indicator turns green.

STEP 4 Press the engine switch.

■ If the engine does not start

The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 52)

■ When the engine switch indicator flashes

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Auto power OFF function

The engine switch will automatically turn OFF when left in ACC mode for about 1 hour.

■ Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 10

■ When the electronic key battery is discharged

→P. 313

■ Conditions affecting operation

→P. 8

■ Note for the entry function

→P. 10

CAUTION

■ When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances.

Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Caution when driving

Do not touch the engine switch while driving.

Pressing and holding the engine switch will stop the engine, which may lead to an unexpected accident.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the engine switch in ACC or IG-ON mode for long periods without the engine running.

■ When starting the engine

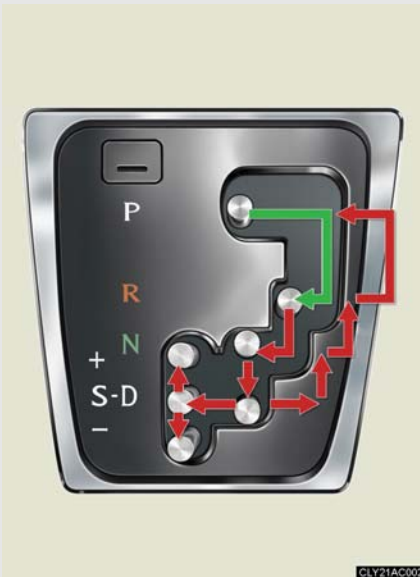
- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately.

2-1. Driving procedures

Automatic Transmission

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

■ Shifting the shift lever



← While the engine switch is in IG-ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

■ Shift position uses

Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle or starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving ^{*1}
S	S mode driving ^{*2} (→P. 98)

^{*1}: To improve fuel consumption and reduce noises, set the shift lever in the D position for normal driving.

^{*2}: Selecting shift ranges using S mode restricts the upper limit of the possible gear ranges, controls engine braking forces.

Changing shift ranges in S mode

Shift the shift lever to the S position and operate the shift lever.



- 1 Upshifting
- 2 Downshifting

The initial shift range in S mode is automatically set to 5 or 4 according to vehicle speed.

Shift ranges and their functions

Shift range	Function
6	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 6 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
5	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 5 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
4	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 4 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
3	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 3 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
2	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 2 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
1	Setting the gear at 1.

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

■ Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer (in the S mode)

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever is operated. (The warning buzzer will sound twice.)

■ When driving with the cruise control system or dynamic radar cruise control system

The engine brake will not operate in the S mode, even when downshifting to 5 or 4. (→P. 119, 122)

■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

→P. 372

■ If the **S** indicator does not come on even after shifting the shift lever to S

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

(In this situation, the vehicle will operate as if the shift lever is in D.)

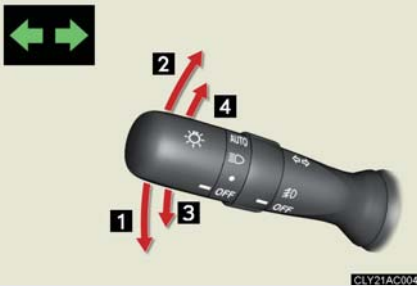
■ AI-SHIFT (Artificial Intelligence Shift)

The AI-SHIFT automatically shifts the gear to the optimal position according to the driver performance and driving conditions.

The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the D position. (Shifting the shift lever to the S position cancels the function.)

2-1. Driving procedures

Turn signal lever



- 1 Left turn
- 2 Right turn
- 3 Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change
The left hand signal will flash until you release the lever.
- 4 Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change
The right hand signal will flash until you release the lever

■ Turn signals can be operated when

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

■ If the indicators flash faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

2-1. Driving procedures

Parking brake



1 Sets the parking brake*
(Depressing the pedal again releases the parking brake.)

*: Fully depress the parking brake pedal with your left foot while depressing the brake pedal with your right foot.

2

 NOTICE

■ Before driving

Fully release the parking brake.
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components over-heating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

When driving

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters



The units used on the speedometer and the tachometer gauge display may differ depending on the model/type.

The following gauges, meters and display illuminate when the engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

1 Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

2 Multi-information display

→P.108

3 Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed.

4 Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button

Switches between odometer and trip meter displays. Pushing and holding the button will reset the trip meter when the trip meter is being displayed.

5 Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.

6 Odometer and trip meter

● Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

● Trip meter

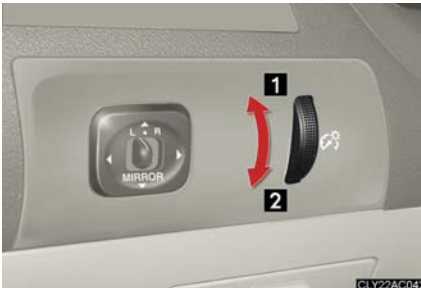
Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

7 Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature.

Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.

**1 Brighter****2 Darker**

When the headlight switch is turned to ON, the brightness will be reduced slightly unless the control dial is turned fully up.

⚠ NOTICE**■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 379)

2-2. Instrument cluster

Indicators and warning lights

The indicator and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

► Instrument cluster



The units used on the speedometer and the tachometer gauge display may differ depending on the model/type.

► Center panel (without navigation system)



► Center panel (with navigation system)



■ Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.



Turn signal indicator
(→P. 100)



Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 112)



(USA)

Headlight indicator
(→P. 112)



(Canada)

Tail light indicator
(→P. 112)



Front fog light indicator
(→P. 115)



Cruise control indicator
(→P. 119)



(if equipped)

AFS OFF indicator light
(→P. 113)



Slip indicator (→P. 137)



(without navigation system)

SRS airbag on-off indicator (→P. 70)



(with navigation system)

SRS airbag on-off indicator (→P. 70)



Shift position and shift range indicators (→P. 97)

■ Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions or suspected problem in any of the vehicle's systems. (→P. 341)



*: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to IG-ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

! CAUTION

■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as ABS and SRS airbag warning lights not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

Multi-information display

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data, including the current outside air temperature.



- Trip information (→P. 109)

Displays driving range, fuel consumption and other cruising related information.

- Intuitive parking assist display (if equipped) (→P. 131)

Automatically displayed when using intuitive parking assist.

- Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped) (→P. 122)

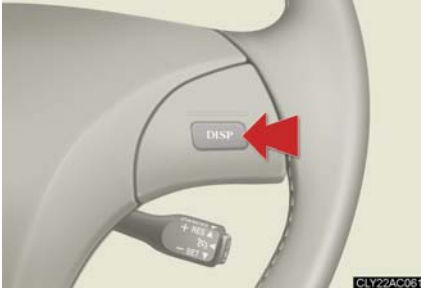
Automatically displayed when using dynamic radar cruise control.

- Warning messages (→P. 350)

Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's systems.

Trip information

► Type A



Display items can be switched by pushing the DISP switch.

► Type B



■ Outside temperature



Displays the outside air temperature.

The temperature range that can be displayed in the following range.

USA: from -40 to 122 °F

Canada: from -40 to 50 °C

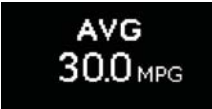
■ Driving range



Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

■ Average fuel consumption



Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset.

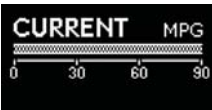
The function can be reset by pushing the DISP switch for longer than one second when the average fuel consumption is displayed.

■ Average fuel consumption after refueling



Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled.

■ Current fuel consumption



Displays the current rate of fuel consumption.

■ Average vehicle speed



Displays the average vehicle speed since the engine was started or the function was reset.

The function can be reset by pushing the DISP switch for longer than one second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

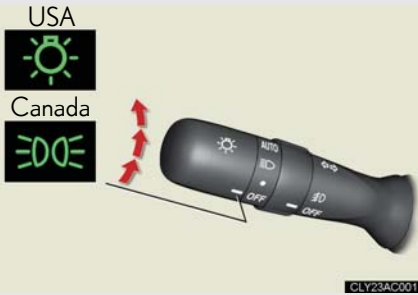
■ System check display

After switching the engine switch to IG-ON mode, **CHECK** is displayed while system operation is checked. When the system check is complete, **COMPLETED** is displayed before returning to the normal screen.

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.



The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

The headlights and parking lights turn on and off automatically.
(When the engine switch is in IG-ON mode)

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever forward to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever back to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.

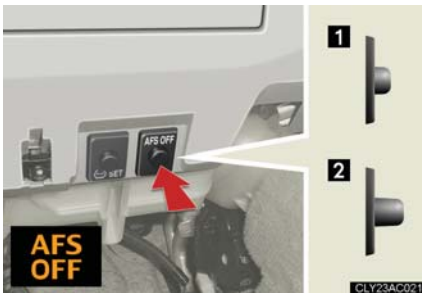
Release to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

AFS (vehicle with discharge headlights)

AFS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) improves visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the direction of light axis of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

Operates at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or higher.

■ Deactivating AFS



Turn the switch OFF to deactivate AFS.

- 1 OFF
- 2 ON

2

When driving

■ Daytime running light system

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the headlights turn on automatically (at a reduced intensity) whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ Headlight control sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight control system to malfunction.

■ Automatic light off system

- When the headlights come on: The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after all doors are closed with the engine switch switched to ACC or turned OFF. (The light turns off immediately if the  button on the key is pressed after all doors are locked.)
- When only the tail lights come on: The tail lights turn off automatically if the engine switch to ACC or turned OFF and driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, switch to IG-ON mode, or turn the light switch OFF once and then back to the  or  position.

■ Automatic headlight leveling system (vehicles with discharge headlights)

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ If the indicator flashes... (vehicles with discharge headlights)

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed. (→P. 413)

NOTICE

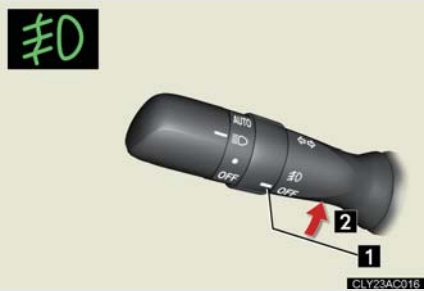
■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Fog light switch

The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain or fog. They can be turned on only when the headlights are on low beam.



- 1 OFF
- 2 Fog lights ON

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Windshield wipers and washer

■ Intermittent wiper with interval adjuster (if equipped)

Wiper intervals can be adjusted for intermittent operation (when INT is selected).



- 1 Intermittent windshield wiper interval increases
- 2 Intermittent windshield wiper interval decreases
- 3 Intermittent windshield wiper operation (INT)
- 4 Low speed windshield wiper operation (LO)
- 5 High speed windshield wiper operation (HI)
- 6 Temporary operation (MIST)
- 7 Wash/wipe operation

Wipers operate automatically.

■ Rain-sensing windshield wipers (if equipped)

With AUTO selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.



1 Sensor sensitivity (-)

With AUTO selected, wiper response to falling rain is less sensitive.

2 Sensor sensitivity (+)

With AUTO selected, wiper response to falling rain is more sensitive.

3 Rain-sensing windshield wiper operation (AUTO)

4 Low speed windshield wiper operation (LO)

5 High speed windshield wiper operation (HI)

6 Temporary operation (MIST)

7 Wash/wipe operation

Wipers operate automatically. (With AUTO selected, after operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.)

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

■ The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

■ Rain drop sensor (vehicles equipped with the rain-sensing windshield wipers)



The sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

■ If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode (vehicles equipped with the rain-sensing windshield wipers)

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

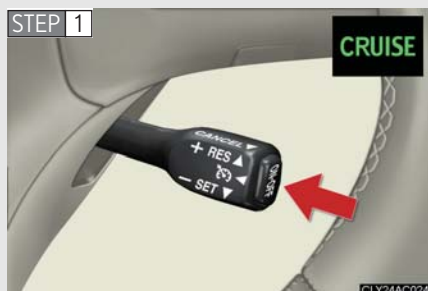
Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control (if equipped)

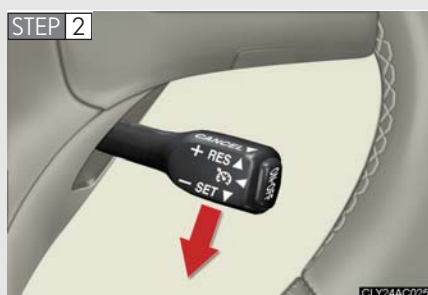
Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without using the accelerator.

■ Set the vehicle speed



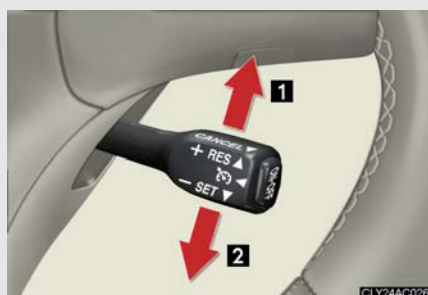
Turn the ON-OFF button ON.

Push the button once more to deactivate the cruise control.



Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and press the lever down to set the cruise control speed.

■ Adjusting the speed setting

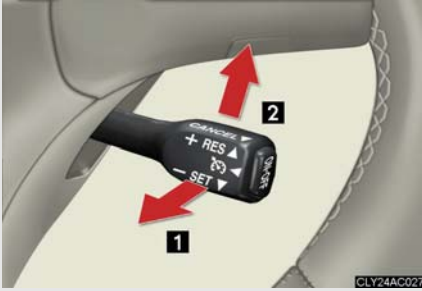


1 Increase speed

2 Decrease speed

Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is obtained.

■ Canceling and resuming regular acceleration



1 Cancel

Push the lever towards you to cancel cruise control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

2 Resume

To resume cruise control and return to the set speed, push the lever up.

■ Fine adjustment of the set speed

Fine adjustment of the set speed (approximately 1.0 mph [1.6 km/h]) can be made by lightly pressing the lever up or down and releasing it.

■ Cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in the D or 4,5, or 6 range of S.
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) and 125 mph (200 km/h).

■ Accelerating

The vehicle can be accelerated normally.

■ Automatic cruise control cancellation

The set speed is automatically cancelled in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed
At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40km/h)
- VSC is activated

■ If the cruise control indicator light flashes

Turn the ON-OFF button off once, and then reactivate the system.

If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.



CAUTION

■ To avoid inadvertent cruise control activation

Keep the ON-OFF button off when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.

Doing so may result in control of the vehicle being lost and could cause serious or fatal accident.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
- On winding roads

2-4. Using other driving systems

Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.

■ Select cruise mode



Selecting vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

- 1 Turn the ON-OFF button ON.

Push the button once more to deactivate.



Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

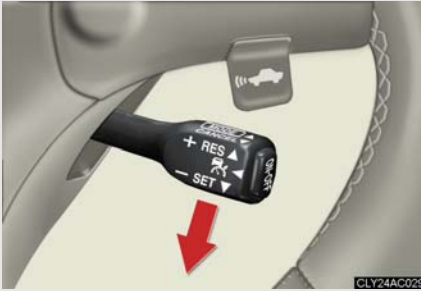
- 1 Turn the ON-OFF button ON.

Push the button once more to deactivate.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is always reset when the engine switch is switched to IG-ON mode.

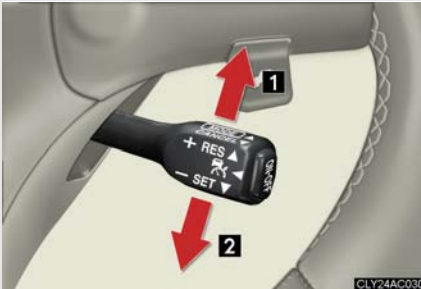
- 2 Switch to constant speed control mode.
(push and hold for approximately one second)

■ Driving in the selected cruise control mode



Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and press the lever down to set.

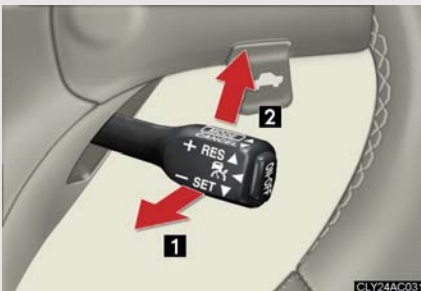
■ Adjusting the speed setting



- 1 Increase speed
- 2 Decrease speed

Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is displayed.

■ Canceling and resuming the speed setting



- 1 Cancel

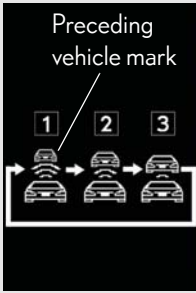
Push the lever towards you to cancel cruise control.

The setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

- 2 Resume

To resume cruise control and return to the set speed, push the lever up.

■ Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance



Each push of the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance

- 1 Long
- 2 Medium
- 3 Short

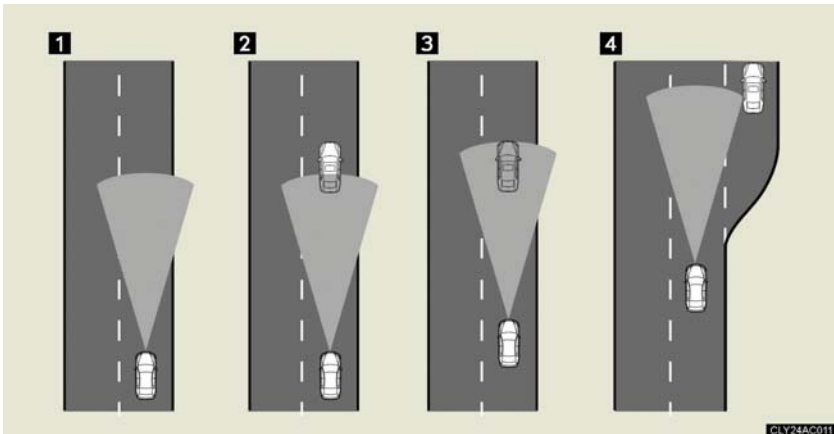
The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is automatically set to the long mode when the engine switch is switched to IG-ON mode.

A mark will be displayed to indicate the presence of the vehicle if a vehicle is running ahead of you.

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles within 328 ft. (100 m) ahead and to judge the distance between your vehicle and those vehicles.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close when traveling on long down-hill slopes.



- 1** Example of constant speed cruising (when there are no vehicles ahead): When set to 62 mph (100 km/h)

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

- 2** Example of deceleration cruising (when the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed): When fixed speed cruising is set at 62 mph (100 km/h) and the vehicle ahead is driving at 50 mph (80 km/h)

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, in the same lane, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you on the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing on the vehicle ahead.

- 3** Example of follow-up cruising (when following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed): When the speed is set to 62 mph (100 km/h) and the vehicle ahead is driving at 50 mph (80 km/h)

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

- 4 Example of acceleration (when there are no longer vehicles driving slower than the set speed in the lane ahead): When the speed is set to 62 mph (100 km/h) and the vehicle ahead driving at 50 mph (80 km/h) is out of the lane

When the vehicle ahead of you executes a lane change, the system slowly accelerates until the set vehicle speed is reached. The system then returns to fixed speed cruising.

■ Fine adjustment of the set speed

Adjustment of the set speed by the following speed can be made by lightly pressing the lever up or down and releasing it.

In the constant speed control mode: Approximately 1.0 mph (1.6 km/h)

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode:

USA: Approximately 5 mph (8 km/h)

Canada: Approximately 3 mph (5 km/h)

■ Dynamic radar cruise control warning lights, messages and buzzers

Warning lights, messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to alert you to the need for caution while driving. (→P. 350)

■ The dynamic radar cruise can be set when

- The shift lever is in D or the 4, 5 or 6 range of S.
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 30 mph (45 km/h) and 85 mph (135 km/h).

■ Accelerating

The vehicle can be accelerated normally.

■ **Automatically canceling vehicle-to-vehicle distance control**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Vehicle speed falls below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- VSC is activated
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.*
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed.*

*: Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving must be reset by turning the ON-OFF button on again.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Automatically cancelling constant speed control**

The set speed is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed is more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed
At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Vehicle speed falls below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- VSC is activated

■ **Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings**

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 210 ft. (65 m)
Medium	Approximately 150 ft. (45 m)
Short	Approximately 100 ft. (30 m)

■ Radar sensor and grille cover

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice or plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)

Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.



- 1 Grille cover
- 2 Radar sensor

■ Certification

- For vehicles sold in USA

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC RF exposure information

This device complies with the FCC RF exposure requirements.

- For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions;

- (1) This device may not cause interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

 CAUTION
■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

Be aware of the set vehicle speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes, etc.

■ To avoid inadvertent cruise control activation

Keep the ON-OFF button off when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.

Doing so may result in inappropriate control of speed and could cause serious or fatal accident.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow.
- Where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, etc.)
- Where buzzer can be heard often

CAUTION

■ When the radar sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the proximity alarm (→P. 350) will not be activated, and an accident may result.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and an accident may result.

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the trunk, etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable

■ To ensure the radar sensor functions correctly

Do not do the following to the sensor or grille cover as doing so may cause the sensor not to function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Stick or attach anything to them
- Leave them dirty
- Disassemble, subject them to strong shocks
- Modify or paint them
- Replace them with non-genuine parts

2-4. Using other driving systems

Intuitive parking assist (if equipped)

The distance to obstacles measured by the sensors is communicated via the multi-information display and a buzzer when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

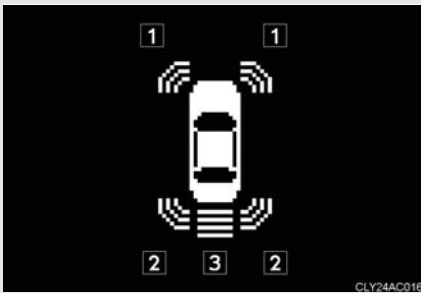
For vehicles equipped with a navigation system, refer to the separate “Navigation System Owner’s Manual” for further details.

■ Types of sensors



- 1 Front corner sensors
- 2 Rear corner sensors
- 3 Back sensors

■ Multi-information display (→P.108)



- 1 Front corner sensor operation
- 2 Rear corner sensor operation
- 3 Back sensor operation

■ Intuitive parking assist switch



1 ON/OFF

When ON, an indicator on the switch comes on to inform the driver that the function is operational.

The display and buzzer system

■ Corner sensor operation display and distance to an obstacle

The system operates when the vehicle approaches within approximately 1.5 ft. (50 cm) of an obstacle.



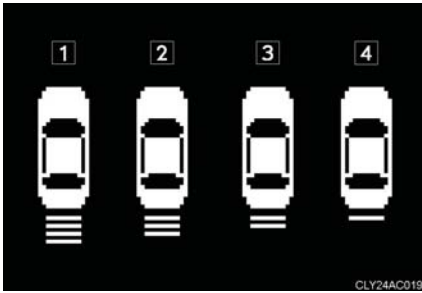
1 1.5 ft. (50 cm) to 11 ft. (37.5 cm) from the obstacle

2 11 ft. (37.5 cm) to 0.8 ft. (25 cm) from the obstacle

3 Flashing: Within 0.8 ft. (25 cm) of the obstacle

■ Back sensor operation display and distance to an obstacle

The system operates when the vehicle approaches within approximately 4.5 ft. (150 cm) of an obstacle.



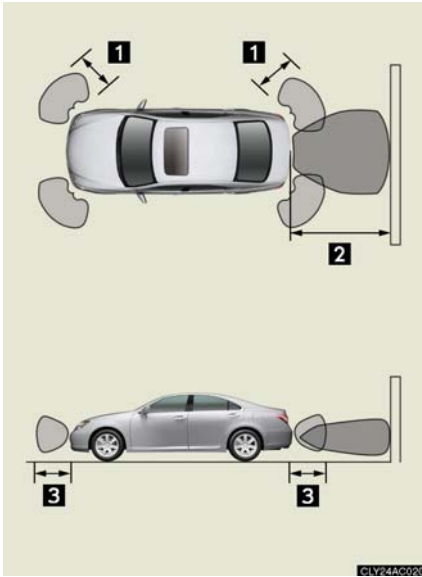
- 1 4.5 ft. (150 cm) to 1.8 ft. (60 cm) from the obstacle
- 2 1.8 ft. (60 cm) to 1.4 ft. (45 cm) from the obstacle
- 3 1.4 ft. (45 cm) to 1.1 ft. (35 cm) from the obstacle
- 4 Flashing: Within 1.1 ft. (35 cm) of the obstacle

■ Buzzer operation and distance to the obstacle

A buzzer sounds when the corner sensors and back sensor are operating.

- The buzzer beeps faster as the vehicle approaches an obstacle. When the vehicle comes within the following distance of the obstacle, the buzzer sounds continuously.
 - Corner sensors: 0.8 ft. (25 cm)
 - Back sensors: 1.1 ft. (35 cm)
- When two or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the buzzer system responds to the nearest obstacle.
- If multiple obstacles are detected within 25 cm (0.8 ft.) in front and behind the vehicle at the same time, the warning buzzer will change in the following manner:
 - If a continuous beep is sounding, and a new obstacle is detected near a different area of the vehicle, the warning buzzer will sound 6 beeps then one continuous beep.
 - If a continuous beep is sounding, and a new obstacle is detected within 25 cm (0.8 ft.) of a different area of the vehicle, the warning buzzer will sound 2 beeps then one continuous beep.

Detection range of the sensors



- 1 Approximately 1.5 ft. (50 cm)
- 2 Approximately 4.5 ft. (150 cm)
- 3 Approximately 1.5 ft. (50 cm)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc..

■ Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of the sensor to correctly detect obstacles. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.
 - There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensor.
 - The sensor is frozen.
 - The sensor is covered in any way.
 - The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
 - On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass
 - The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
 - There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
 - The sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain
 - The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or wireless antenna.
 - Towing eyelets are installed.
 - The bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
 - The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
 - In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by the sensor to be closer than they are.

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles.
 - Wires, fences, ropes etc.
 - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb radio waves
 - Sharply-angled objects
 - Low obstacles
 - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

■ When the display flashes and a message is displayed

→P. 350

■ Certification (Canada only)

This ISM device complies with Canadian ICES-001.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. buzzer volume) can be changed. (→P. 413)

 CAUTION

■ **Caution when using the intuitive parking assist**

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.

 NOTICE

■ **Notes when washing the vehicle**

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.
Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

■ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Restrains the vehicle from slipping when driving on slick road surfaces or in the event of sudden braking.

■ BA (Brake Assist)

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed, when the system detects a panic stop situation.

■ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces.

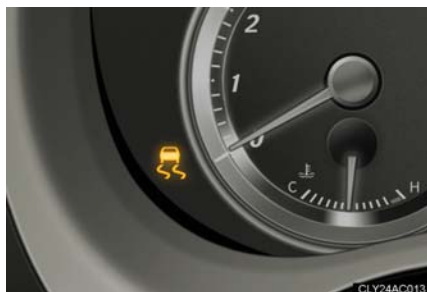
■ TRAC (Traction Control)

Maintains drive power and prevents the front wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads.

■ PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)

→P. 140

When the VSC and TRAC systems are operating



If the vehicle is in danger of slipping, or if the front wheels spin, the slip indicator light flashes to indicate that the VSC and TRAC systems have been engaged.

A buzzer (intermittent) sounds to indicate that VSC is operating.

■ Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, BA, VSC and TRAC systems

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
 - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
 - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
 - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
 - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.



CAUTION

Any of the following conditions may result in an accident which could cause death or serious injury:

■ The ABS does not operate effectively when

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded.
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on the wet or slick road.

■ Stopping distance when the ABS is operating will exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations.

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven roads

■ TRAC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRAC system is operating.

Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

 CAUTION**■ When the slip indicator flashes and a warning buzzer sounds**

This situation occurs immediately while VSC is activated. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes and a buzzer sounds.

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressure level.

The ABS and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are fitted on the vehicle.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

2-4. Using other driving systems

PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)

Safety systems such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact and injuries to occupants as well as vehicle damage when the radar sensor detects an unavoidable frontal collision.

■ Pre-collision seat belts

The front seat belts are immediately retracted as the effect of the pretensioner is increased (→P. 33), to provide even greater constraining force to protect the driver and passengers. In the event of sudden braking or skidding, the system will operate even if no obstacle has been detected.

■ Pre-collision brake assist

Applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

Radar sensor



Detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.

- 1 Grille cover
- 2 Radar sensor

■ Obstacles not detected

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as pylons. There may also be occasions when the sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

■ The pre-collision system is operational when

- Seat belt (linked to the radar sensor)
 - Vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h).
 - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle exceeds 18 to 24 mph (30 to 40 km/h).
 - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Seat belts (linked to brake operation)
 - Vehicle speed exceeds 9 mph (15 km/h).
 - The system detects sudden braking or skidding.
 - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Brake Assist
 - Vehicle speed is above 18 mph (30 km/h).
 - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle is greater than 18 to 24 mph (30 to 40 km/h).
 - The brake pedal is depressed.

■ Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no danger of collision

- When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
- When driving over a narrow iron bridge
- When there is a metal object on the road surface
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a left-turn
- When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front

When the system is activated in the situations described above there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the retracted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten.

■ When there is a malfunction in the system

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 341, 350)

CAUTION

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the pre-collision system can function effectively.

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.
Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area are subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by a Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille guard or surrounding area.

■ Limitations of the pre-collision system

Do not rely on the pre-collision system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible. Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

2

When driving

Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) – (Total weight of occupants)

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit —

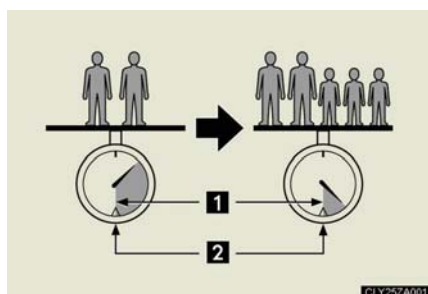
- (1) Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.
- (2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
- (4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

For example, if the XXX amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. $(1400 - 750 (150 \times 5) = 650 \text{ lbs.})$

- (5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

- (6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. (→P. 152)

Example on your vehicle



- 1 Cargo capacity
- 2 Total load capacity

When 2 people with the combined weight of 366 lb. (166 kg) are riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity of 900 lb. (410 kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:

$$900 \text{ lb.} - 366 \text{ lb.} = 534 \text{ lb.} \quad (410 \text{ kg} - 166 \text{ kg} = 244 \text{ kg})$$

In this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of 388 lb. (176 kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced as follows:

$$534 \text{ lb.} - 388 \text{ lb.} = 146 \text{ lb.} \quad (244 \text{ kg} - 176 \text{ kg} = 68 \text{ kg})$$

As shown in the above example, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load equaling the combined weight of the occupants who got on later, by an amount. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle. (→P. 146)

 CAUTION**■ Storage precautions**

- Do not place anything on the package tray behind the rear seatback.
Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.
- Do not drive with objects on top of the instrument panel.
They may interfere with the driver's field of view or move during sharp acceleration or turning, thus impairing the driver's control of the vehicle. In an accident they may injure the vehicle occupants.
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone during an accident or sudden braking.

■ Capacity and distribution

- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.
- Even if the total load of occupant's weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly.
Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

Vehicle load limits

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity.

■ **Total load capacity: 900 lb. (410 kg)**

Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

■ **Seating capacity: 5 occupants (Front 2, Rear 3)**

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

■ **Towing capacity: 1000 lb. (450 kg)**

■ **Cargo capacity**

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

■ **Total load capacity and seating capacity**

These details are also described on the tire and loading information label.
(→P. 305)

 CAUTION

■ **Overloading the vehicle**

Do not overload the vehicle.

It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

■ Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
 - Engine oil
 - Engine coolant
 - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the level and specific gravity of battery electrolyte.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the front tires.

Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.
- Tire inflation pressure falls in winter as the outside temperature falls. Add 2.9 to 4.3 psi (20 to 30 kPa, 0.2 to 0.3 kgf/cm² or bar) to the standard tire inflation pressure.

■ Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions.

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.
- Periodically check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel well or on the brakes.

■ When driving the vehicle

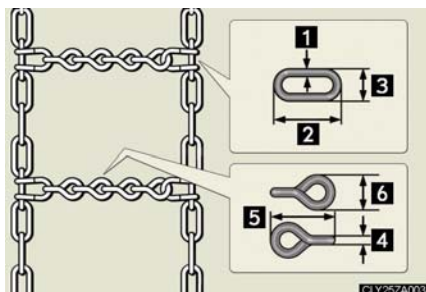
Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

■ When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released.

Selecting snow chains

Use the correct snow chain size when mounting the snow chains. Chain size is regulated for each tire sizes.



Side chain

- 1 0.12 in. [3 mm] in diameter
- 2 1.18 in. [30 mm] in length
- 3 0.39 in. [10 mm] in width

Cross chain

- 4 0.16 in. [4 mm] in diameter
- 5 0.98 in. [25 mm] in length
- 6 0.55 in. [14 mm] in width

Regulations on the use of snow chains

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.
- Install the chains on the front tires.
- Retighten the chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).

■ Snow chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains.

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the front tires only. Do not install tire chains on rear tires.
- Install the tire chains on front tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided in the accompanying instructions.

CAUTION

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.

Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the size specified for your vehicle.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

■ Driving with snow chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.

Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 30 mph (50 km/h), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turns and braking, as use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

 NOTICE**■ Repairing or replacing snow tires**

Request repairs of and obtain replacement snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.

This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire air pressure sensor.

■ Fitting tire chains

The tire air pressure sensor may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

2-5. Driving information

Trailer towing

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger-carrying vehicle, thus towing a trailer will have an adverse effect on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. For your safety and the safety of others, do not overload the vehicle or trailer.

Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes

■ Weight limits

Confirm the total trailer weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.

■ Gross vehicle weight

The gross vehicle weight must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) indicated on the Certification Label. The gross vehicle weight is the sum weight of the unloaded vehicle, driver, passengers, luggage, hitch and trailer tongue load. Also included is the weight of any special equipment installed on your vehicle.

■ Gross axle weight

The load on either the front or rear axle resulting from distribution of the gross vehicle weight on both axles must not exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) listed on the Certification Label.

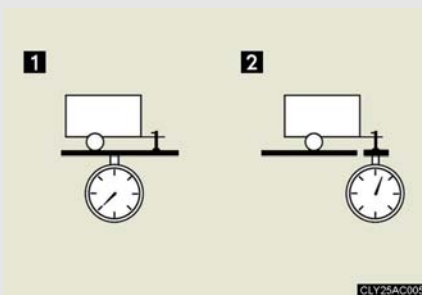


Certification label

■ Trailer tongue load

The trailer cargo load should be distributed so that the tongue load is 9 to 11% of the total trailer weight, not exceeding the maximum 100 lb. (45 kg). (Tongue load / Total trailer weight x 100 = 9 to 11%)

The total trailer weight and tongue load can be measured with platform scales found at a highway weighing stations, building supply company, trucking company, junk yards, etc.



1 Total trailer weight

2 Tongue load

2

When driving

Towing a trailer

Consult your Lexus dealer for further information on additional requirements such as a towing kits, etc.

■ Before towing

- Ensure that your vehicle's tires are properly inflated. (→P. 305)
- Trailer tires should be inflated according to the trailer manufacturer's recommendation.
- All trailer lights work to be legal.
- Confirm all lights work each time you connect them.
- Check that your vehicle remains level when a loaded or unloaded trailer is hitched. Do not drive if the vehicle is not level, and check for improper tongue load, overloading, worn suspension, or other possible causes.
- Make sure the trailer cargo is securely loaded.
- Check that your rear view mirrors conform to any federal, state/provincial or local regulations. If they do not, install rear view mirrors appropriate for towing purposes.

■ Break-in schedule

Lexus recommends that you do not use a new vehicle or a vehicle with any new power train components (engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearings, etc.) to tow a trailer for the first 500 miles (800 km) of driving.

■ Maintenance

- If you tow a trailer, your vehicle will require more frequent maintenance due to the additional load. (See "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/ Scheduled Maintenance".)
- Retighten the fixing bolts of the towing ball and bracket after approximately 600 miles (1000 km) of trailer towing.

 CAUTION**■ To avoid accident or injury**

- The total trailer weight (trailer weight plus the weight of cargo) must not exceed 1000 lb. (450 kg).
- Do not exceed the trailer hitch assembly weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load capacities.
- Never load more weight in the back than in the front of the trailer. About 60% of the load should be in the front half of the trailer, and the remaining 40% in the rear.

■ Hitches

Trailer hitch assemblies have different weight capacities established by the hitch manufacturer. Even though the vehicle may be physically capable of towing a higher weight, the operator must never exceed the maximum weight rating specified for the trailer hitch.

- If you wish to install a trailer hitch, your Lexus dealer should be consulted.
- Use only a hitch that conforms to the total trailer weight requirement.
- Follow the directions supplied by the hitch manufacturer.
- Lubricate the hitch ball with a light coat of grease.
- Remove the trailer hitch whenever you are not towing a trailer. After removing the hitch, seal any mounting holes in the vehicle body to prevent entry of any substances into the vehicle.

■ When towing a trailer

- Never tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system, as this will lower the vehicle's braking effectiveness.
- Never tow a trailer without using a safety chain securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle. If damage occurs to the coupling unit or hitch ball, there is danger of the trailer wandering into another lane.

NOTICE

■ When installing a trailer hitch

- Use only the position recommended by your Lexus dealer. Do not install the trailer hitch on the bumper; this may cause body damage.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches, as they can cause damage to the axle housing, wheel bearings, wheels or tires.

■ Brakes

Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to any applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.

■ Do not directly splice trailer lights

Directly splicing may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

Trailer towing tips

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. The three main causes of vehicle-trailer accidents are driver error, excessive speed and improper trailer loading. Keep these in mind when towing.

- Before starting out, check the trailer's lights and the vehicle-trailer connections. Recheck after driving a short distance.
- Practice turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer attached in an area away from traffic until you become accustomed to the feel of the vehicle.
- Reversing with a trailer attached is difficult and requires practice. Grip the bottom of the steering wheel and move your hand to the left to move the trailer to the left. Move your hand to the right to move the trailer to the right. (This is generally opposite to reversing without a trailer attached.) Avoid sharp or prolonged turning. Have someone guide you when reversing to reduce the risk of an accident.
- As stopping distance is increased when towing a trailer, vehicle-to-vehicle distance should be increased. For each 10 mph (16 km/h) of speed, allow at least one vehicle and trailer length.

- Avoid sudden braking as you may skid, resulting in jackknifing and loss of control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.
- Avoid jerky starts or sudden acceleration.
- Avoid jerky steering and sharp turns, and slow down before making a turn.
- Note that when making a turn, the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. Compensate by making a larger than normal turning radius.
- Crosswinds and rough roads will adversely affect handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing sway. Periodically check the rear to prepare for being passed by large trucks or buses, which may cause your vehicle and trailer to sway. If swaying occurs, firmly grip the steering wheel, reduce speed immediately but gradually, and steer straight ahead. Never increase speed. If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer will stabilize.
- Take care when passing other vehicles. Passing requires considerable distance. After passing a vehicle, do not forget the length of your trailer, and be sure you have plenty of room before changing lanes.
- In order to maintain efficient engine braking and electrical charging performance, do not use overdrive. Transmission shift range position must be in "4", in the "S" mode.
- Due to the added load of the trailer, your vehicle's engine may overheat on hot days (at temperatures over 85°F [30°C]) when driving up a long or steep grade. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, immediately turn off the air conditioning (if in use), pull your vehicle off the road and stop in a safe spot. See "If your vehicle overheats". (→P. 379)

- Always place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly, and put the transmission in "P". Avoid parking on a slope, but if unavoidable, do so only after performing the following:

STEP 1 Apply the brakes and keep them applied.

STEP 2 Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels.

STEP 3 When the wheel blocks are in place, release the brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.

STEP 4 Apply the parking brake firmly.

STEP 5 Shift into "P" and turn off the engine.

- When restarting after parking on a slope:

STEP 1 With the transmission in the "P" position, start the engine. Be sure to keep the brake pedal pressed.

STEP 2 Shift into "3", "2", "1", or the "R" position (if reversing).

STEP 3 Release the parking brake and brake pedal, and slowly pull or back away from the wheel blocks.
Stop and apply the brakes.

STEP 4 Have someone retrieve the blocks.

CAUTION

■ To avoid an accident

- Do not exceed 45 mph (72 km/h) or posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower. As instability (swaying) of the towing vehicle-trailer combination increases as speed increases, exceeding 45 mph (72 km/h) may cause loss of control.
- Slow down and downshift before descending steep or long downhill grades. Do not make sudden downshifts.
- Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.

Dinghy towing

Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.



NOTICE

■ **To avoid serious damage to your vehicle**

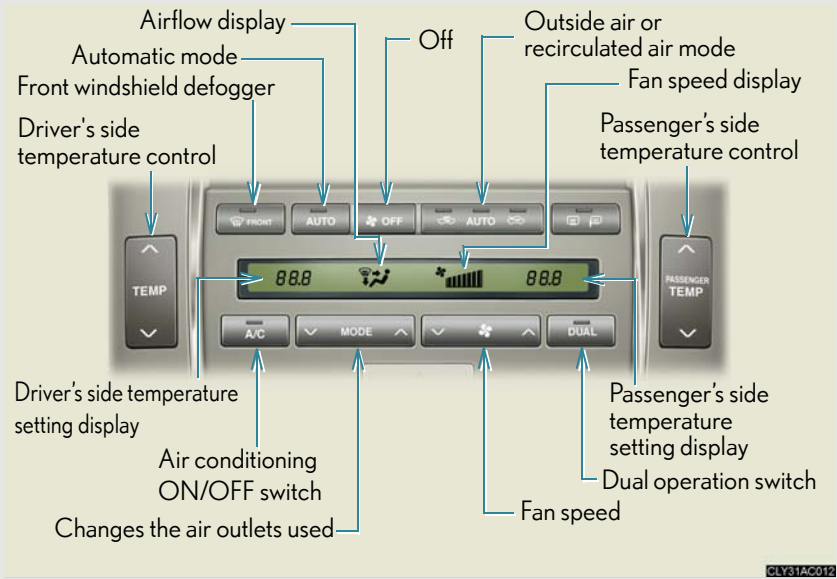
Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground.

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Automatic air conditioning system (without navigation system)

Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".



Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Press .

- ➡ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2 Press  to switch to automatic mode.

- ➡ Automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

STEP 3 Press $\wedge$ to increase the temperature and $\vee$ to decrease the temperature on the  switch.

The temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be set separately.

Adjusting the settings

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press $\wedge$ to increase the temperature and $\vee$ to decrease the temperature on the  switch.

Press $\wedge$ (increase) or $\vee$ (decrease) on the  switch to separately adjust the temperature for the passenger and driver sides (dual mode). Press  to return the driver and passenger side temperatures to the same setting (simultaneous mode).

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time  is pressed.

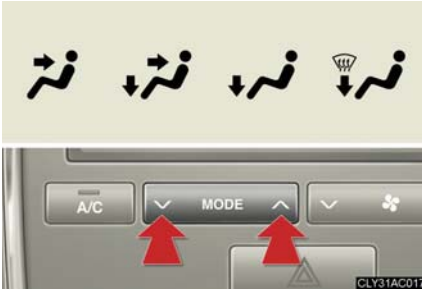
■ Adjusting the fan speed

Press $\wedge$ (increase) or $\vee$ (decrease) on the  button.

Press  to turn the fan off.

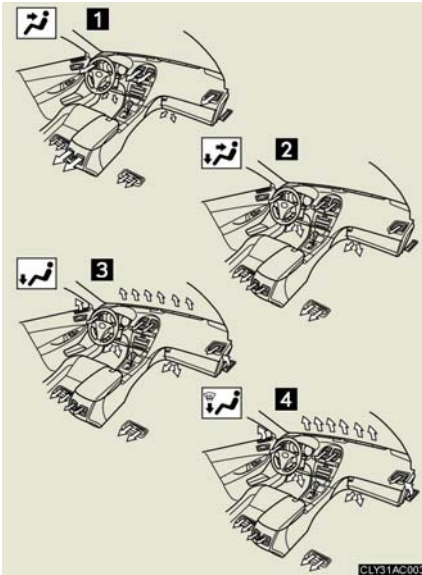
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

■ Changing the air outlets



Press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ on the  switch.

The air outlets switch each time the button is pressed.



- 1 Air flows to the upper body.
- 2 Air flows to the upper body and feet.
- 3 Air flows to the feet.
- 4 Air flows to the feet and the front windshield defogger operates.

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press .

The mode switches between  (recycles air inside the vehicle), AUTO and  (introduces air from outside the vehicle) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically.

Defogging the front windshield



1 Defogging

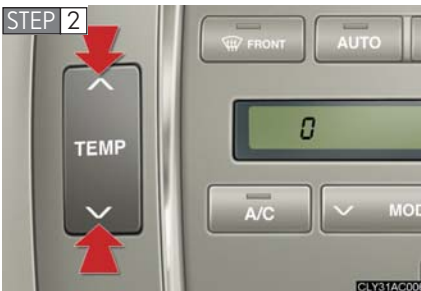
The air conditioning system control operates automatically.

Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode. It is not possible to return to recirculated air mode when the switch is on.

Adjusting the sensitivity of the air intake control in automatic mode



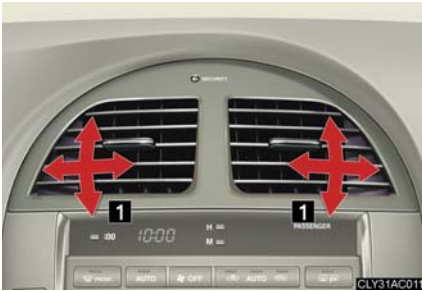
Press  for 2 or more seconds.



Press $\wedge$ (increase) or $\vee$ (decrease) on the  switch.

From -3 (low) to 3 (high) can be set.

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets



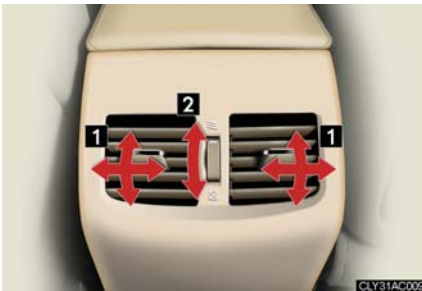
► Center outlets

- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down



► Front outlets (right and left side)

- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2 Turn the knob right to open the vent and left to close the vent



► Rear outlets

- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2 Turn the knob up to open the vent and down to close the vent

■ Using the automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur.

- The system may switch automatically to recirculated mode when the coolest temperature setting is selected in summer.
- Immediately after the switch is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

■ Using the system in recirculated air mode

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

■ Window defogger feature

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

■ Outside air temperature approaches 32°F (0°C).

The air conditioning system may not operate even when  is pressed.

■ When the indicator light on flashes

Press  and turn off the air conditioning system before turning it on once more. There may be a problem in the air conditioning system if the indicator light continues to flash. Turn the air conditioning system off and have it inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Automatic mode for air intake control

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

! CAUTION

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the automatic air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

These features are used to defog the rear window, and to remove rain-drops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

► Without navigation system



ON/OFF

The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 to 60 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.

► With navigation system



 CAUTION

 When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on

Do not touch the outside surface of the rear view mirror, as it can become very hot and burn you.

3-2. Using the audio system

Audio system type (without navigation system)

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner's Manual”.

CD player with changer and AM/FM radio



CLV32AG040

Title	Page
Using the radio	P.172
Using the CD player	P.179
Playing back MP3 and WMA discs	P.185
Optimal use of the audio system	P.193
Using the external audio input port	P.196
Using the steering wheel switches	P.197

■ Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system’s speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

 CAUTION**■ For vehicles sold in USA and Canada****● Part 15 of the FCC Rules****FCC Warning:**

Any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment will void the user's authority to operate this device.

● Laser products

- Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes yourself.

This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.

- This product utilizes a laser.

Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

 NOTICE**■ To prevent battery discharge**

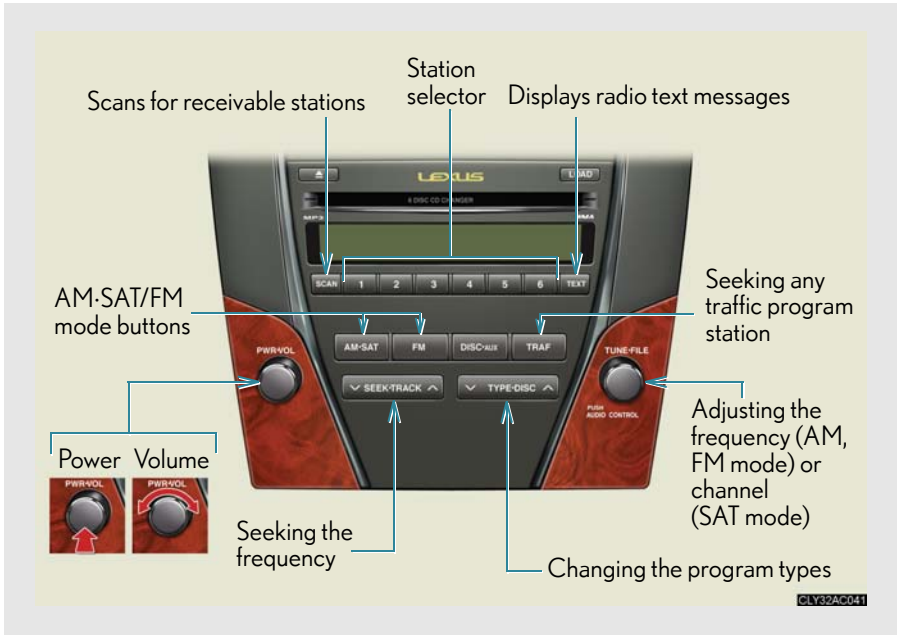
Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary with the engine off.

■ To avoid damaging the audio system

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids over the audio system.

3-2. Using the audio system

Using the radio



Setting station presets (excluding XM® satellite radio)

STEP 1 Search for desired stations by turning the  or pressing $\wedge$ or $\vee$ on .

STEP 2 Press and hold the button (from  to ) the station is to be set to, and you hear a beep.

Scanning radio stations (excluding XM® satellite radio)

■ Scanning the preset radio stations

STEP 1 Press and hold  until you hear a beep.
Preset stations will be played for 5 seconds each.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, press the button once again.

■ Scanning all radio stations within range

STEP 1 Press .

All stations with reception will be played for 5 seconds each.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, press the button once again.

RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive station identification information and program information (classical, jazz, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

■ Receiving RDS broadcasts

STEP 1 Press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ on the  button during FM reception.

The type of program changes each time the button is pressed.

- ROCK
- EASY LIS (Easy listening)
- CLS/JAZZ (Classical music and Jazz)
- R & B (Rhythm and Blues)
- INFORM (Information)
- RELIGION
- MISC (Miscellaneous)
- ALERT (Emergency messages)

If the system receives no RDS stations, NO PTY appears on the display.

STEP 2 Press , or $\wedge$ or $\vee$ on .

The radio seeks or scans the station by the relevant program type.

■ Displaying radio station names

Press .

■ Displaying radio text messages

Press  twice.

If MSG shows in the display, a text message will be displayed.

If the text continues past the end of the display, ► is displayed. Press and hold  until you hear a beep.

XM[®] satellite radio (If equipped)

■ Receiving XM[®] satellite radio

STEP 1 Press and hold  until SAT shows in the display.

The display changes as follows each time the switch is pressed.

AM → SAT1 → SAT2 → SAT3

STEP 2 Turn the  to select the desired channel in the all categories

or press ^ or v on  to select the desired channel in the current category.

■ Setting XM[®] satellite radio channel presets

Select the desired channel. Press the button the channel is to be set to (from  to ), and you hear a beep.

■ Changing the channel category

Press ^ or v on the  switch.

■ Scanning XM[®] satellite radio channels

● Scanning channels in the current category

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 When the desired channel is reached, press the switch again.

- Scanning preset channels

STEP 1 Press and hold  until you hear a beep.

STEP 2 When the desired channel is reached, press the switch again.

- **Displaying text information**

Press .

The display will show up to 10 characters.

The display changes as follows each time the button is pressed.

- CH NAME
- TITLE (SONG/PROGRAM TITLE)
- NAME (ARTIST NAME/FEATURE)
- CH NUMBER

■ When the battery is disconnected

Stations presets are erased.

■ Reception sensitivity

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.

■ Receiving XM[®] satellite radio

The optional Lexus genuine satellite radio tuner and antenna allows you to receive and play XM[®] satellite radio broadcasts. (Subscription is required. Not available in Hawaii and Alaska.)*

● XM[®] subscriptions

For detailed information about XM[®] satellite radio or to subscribe, visit XM[®] on the web at www.xmradio.com or call (800) 967-2346.

● Radio ID

You will need the radio ID when activating XM[®] service or reporting a problem. Select "CH000" using , and the receiver's 8-character ID number will appear.

● Satellite tuner

The tuner supports only Audio Services (Music and Talk) and the accompanying Text Information of XM[®] satellite radio.

*: Terms and services provided by XM[®] Radio are subject to change without notice.

■ If the satellite radio does not operate normally

If a problem occurs with the XM[®] tuner, a message will appear on the display. Refer to the table below to identify the problem, and take the suggested corrective action.

ANTENNA	The XM [®] antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM [®] antenna cable is attached securely.
	There is a short-circuit in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Lexus certified dealer.
UPDATING	You have not subscribed to the XM [®] satellite radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact the XM [®] satellite radio for subscription information. When a contract is canceled, you can choose the "CH000" and all free-to-air channels.
	The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact the XM [®] satellite radio.
NO SIGNAL	The XM [®] signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal.
LOADING	The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information.
OFF AIR	The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel.
-----	There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action needed.

The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel.

Contact the XM[®] Listener Care Center at (800) 967-2346 during the following hours*.

Monday - Saturday: 6 a.m. - 2 a.m. Sunday: 8 a.m. - 8 p.m. (ET)

*: Subject to change without notice.

■ Certifications for the radio tuner

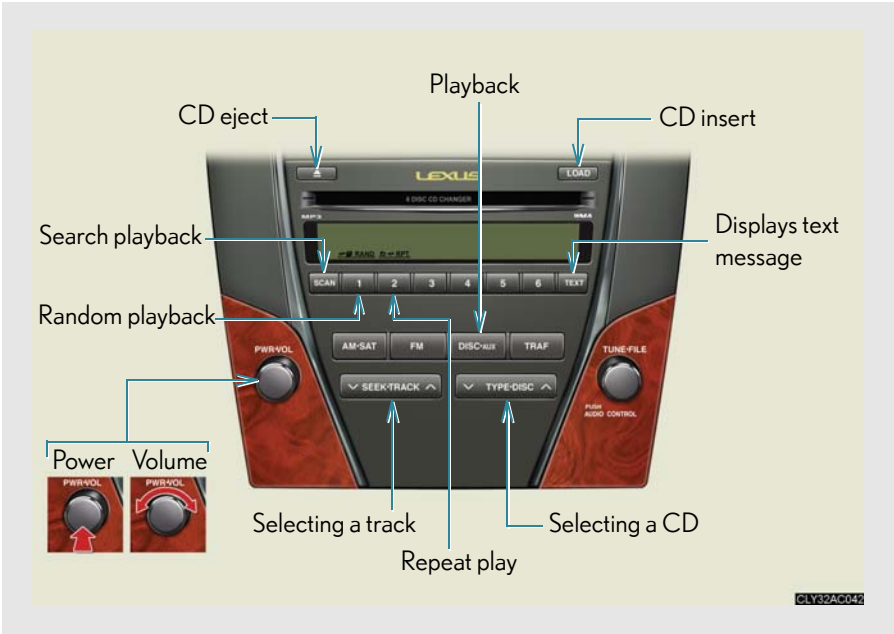
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by trying one or more of the following:

- Reorienting or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increasing the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connecting the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consulting the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

3-2. Using the audio system

Using the CD player



Loading CDs

■ Loading a CD

STEP 1 Push **LOAD**.

WAIT is shown on the display.

STEP 2 Insert a CD when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green.

The display changes from WAIT to LOAD.

■ Loading multiple CDs

STEP 1 Press and hold **LOAD** until you hear a beep.

WAIT is shown on the display.

STEP 2 Insert a CD when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green.

The display changes from WAIT to LOAD.

The indicator on the slot turns to amber when the CD is inserted.

STEP 3 Insert the next CD when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green again.

Repeat the procedure for the remaining CDs.

To stop the operation, press .

Ejecting CDs

■ Ejecting a CD



To select the CD to be ejected, press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ on .

The number of the CD selected is shown on the display.

STEP 2 Press  and remove the CD.

■ Ejecting all the CDs

Press and hold  until you hear a beep, and then remove the CDs.

Selecting, fast-forwarding, rewinding, and scanning tracks

■ Selecting a track

Press $\wedge$ to move up and $\vee$ to move down using  until the desired track number is displayed.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold $\wedge$ or $\vee$ on .

■ Scanning a CD

STEP 1 Press .

The first ten seconds of each track will be played.

STEP 2 Press the switch again when the desired track is reached.

Selecting a CD

■ To select a CD to play

To select the desired CD, press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ on .

■ To scan loaded CDs

STEP 1 Press and hold  until you hear a beep.

The first ten seconds of the first track on each CD will be played.

STEP 2 Press the switch again when the desired CD is reached.

Repeat play

■ To repeat a track

Press  (RPT).

■ To repeat all of the tracks on a CD

Press and hold  (RPT) until you hear a beep.

Random playback

■ Current CD

Press  (RAND).

Tracks are played in random order until random playback is canceled.

■ All CDs

Press and hold  (RAND) until you hear a beep.

Tracks on all loaded CDs are played in a random order until the button is pressed once more.

Switching the display

Press .

Each time the switch is pressed, the display changes in the order of Track no./ Elapsed time $\rightarrow$ CD title $\rightarrow$ Track name.

■ Canceling random, repeat and scan playback

Press  (RAND),  (RPT), or  again.

■ When LOAD, ERROR or WAIT is shown on the display

LOAD: This indicates that the CD player has completed loading the CD.

ERROR: This indicates is a trouble either in the CD or inside the player. The CD may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.

WAIT: Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press . Contact your Lexus dealer if the CD still cannot be played back.

■ Discs that can be used

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.

Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



CDs with copy-protect features may not be used.

■ CD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

■ If CDs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

CDs may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

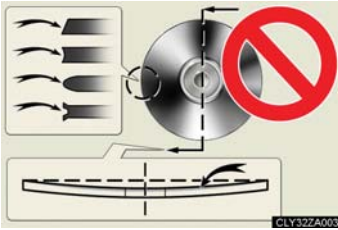
NOTICE

■ CDs and adapters that cannot be used

Do not use the following types of CDs or 3 in. (8 cm) CD adapters. Doing so may damage the CD player and/or the CD insert/eject function.



- CDs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm).



- Low-quality and deformed CDs.



- CDs with a transparent or translucent recording area.



- CDs that have had tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off.

NOTICE

■ CD player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious damage to the CDs or the player itself.

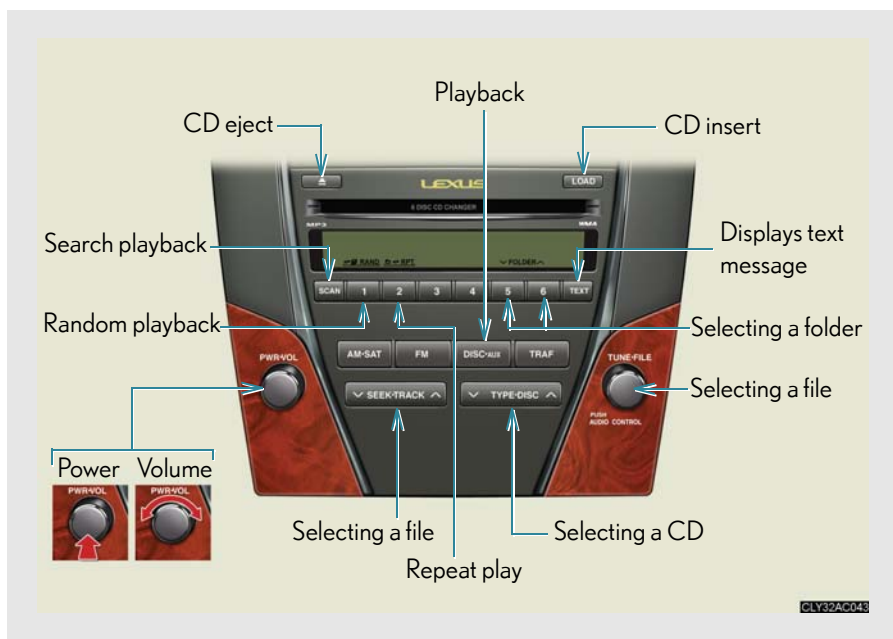
- Do not insert anything other than CDs into the CD slot.
- Do not apply oil to the CD player.
- Store CDs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the CD player.



- Do not insert more than one CD at a time.

3-2. Using the audio system

Playing back MP3 and WMA discs



Loading and ejecting MP3 and WMA discs

Refer to the section entitled "Using the CD player" for details. (→P. 179)

Selecting a folder

■ Selecting folders one at a time

Press **6** (^) or **5** (v) to select the desired folder.

■ Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder

Press and hold **SCAN** until you hear a beep. When the desired folder is reached, press the switch once again.

■ Returning to the first folder

Press and hold **5** (v) until you hear a beep.

Selecting and scanning files

■ Selecting 1 file at a time

Turn the  or press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ on  to select the desired file.

■ Selecting the desired file by cueing the files in the folder

Press .

When the desired file is reached, press the switch once again.

Repeat play

■ To repeat a file

Press  (RPT).

Folder repeat

■ To repeat all of the files on a folder

Press and hold  (RPT) until you hear a beep.

Random playback

■ To play files from a particular folder in random order

Press  (RAND).

■ To play all of the files on a disc in random order

Press and hold  (RAND) until you hear a beep.

Switching the display

Press .

Each time the switch is pressed, the display changes in the order of Folder no./File no./Elapsed time → Folder name → File name → Album title (MP3 only) → Track title → Artist name.

■ Canceling random, repeat and scan playback

Press **1** (RAND), **2** (RPT), or **SCAN** again.

■ When LOAD, ERROR or WAIT is shown on the display.

LOAD: This indicates that the CD player has completed loading the CD.

ERROR: This indicates is a trouble either in the CD or inside the player. The CD may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.

WAIT: Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press **DISC-AUX**. Contact your Lexus dealer if the CD still cannot be played back.

NO MUSIC: This indicates that the MP3/WMA file is not included in the CD.

■ Discs that can be used

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.

Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



■ CD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected while the CD player is being used.

■ If CDs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

CDs may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

■ MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media TMAudio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards and to the media/formats recorded by them that can be used.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
- MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
* Compatible with VBR
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)
* Only compatible with 2-channel playback

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible, depending on the status of the CD-R or CD-RW. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 level 1, level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows.

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● Multi-sessions

As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 file with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the USA and other countries.

NOTICE

■ CDs and adapters that cannot be used

Do not use the following types of CDs or 3 in. (8 cm) CD adapters. Doing so may damage the CD player and render the CD insert/eject function unusable.



- CDs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm).



- Low-quality and deformed CDs.



- CDs with a transparent or translucent recording area.



- CDs that have had tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off.

NOTICE

■ CD player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the CDs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than CDs into the CD slot.
- Do not apply oil to the CD player.
- Store CDs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the CD player.



- Do not insert more than one CD at a time.

3-2. Using the audio system

Optimal use of the audio system



- 1 Displays the current mode.
- 2 Changes the following setting.

- Listening position (→P.194)

The sound feel setting can be changed to produce the best sound for each listening position.

- Sound quality and volume balance (→P.194)

The sound quality and balance setting can be changed to produce the best sound.

- Automatic Sound Levelizer ON/OFF (→P.195)

Using the AUDIO CONTROL function

■ Changing modes

Pressing  selects the mode to be change in the following order.

POS→BAS→MID→TRE→FAD→BAL→ASL

■ Changing the listening position

Turning  changes the position in the following order.

Display	Listening position
DRIVER	Position best suited to the driver's seat
FRONT	Position best suited to the driver's and front passenger seats
REAR	Position best suited to the rear seats
ALL	Position best suited to all seats

■ Adjusting sound quality

Turning  adjusts the level.

Sound quality mode	Mode displayed	Level	Turn to the left	Turn to the right
Bass [*]	BAS	-5 to 5	Low	High
Mid-range [*]	MID	-5 to 5		
Treble [*]	TRE	-5 to 5		
Front/rear volume balance	FAD	F7 to R7	Shifts to rear	Shifts to front
Left/right volume balance	BAL	L7 to R7	Shifts to left	Shifts to right

^{*}: The sound quality level is adjusted individually in each radio mode or CD mode.

■ Adjusting the Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL)

Turning  to the right turns ON the ASL, and turning  to the left turns OFF the ASL.

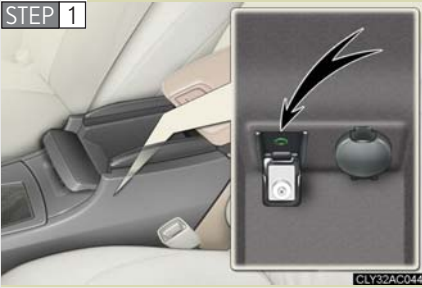
ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the noise level as you drive your vehicle.

3-2. Using the audio system

Using the AUX adapter

This adapter can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.

STEP 1



Connect the portable audio device.

STEP 2

Press **DISC-AUX** .

■ Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

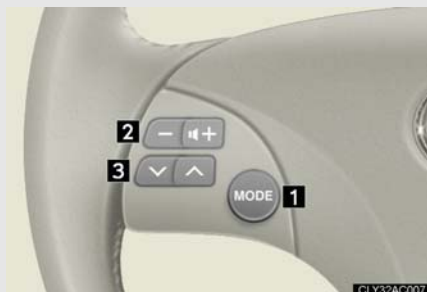
■ When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

3-2. Using the audio system

Using the steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.



- 1** Power on, select audio source
- 2** Volume
- 3** Radio: Select radio stations
CD: Select tracks, files (MP3 and WMA) and discs

Turning on the power

Press  when the audio system is turned OFF.

The audio system can be turned off by holding the switch down for a few seconds.

Changing the audio source

Press  when the audio system is turned ON. The audio source changes as follows each time the button is pressed.

FM1→FM2→CD changer→AUX→AM→SAT1→SAT2→SAT3

Adjusting the volume

Press + on  to increase the volume and - to decrease the volume.

Hold down the button to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

Selecting a radio station

STEP 1 Press  to select the radio mode.

STEP 2 Press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ on the  switch to select a radio station.

To seek for receivable stations, press and hold the switch until you hear a beep.

Selecting a track/file

STEP 1 Press  to select the CD mode.

STEP 2 Press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ on the  switch to select the desired track/file.

Selecting a disc in the CD player

STEP 1 Press  to select the CD mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold $\wedge$ or $\vee$ on  switch until a beep is heard.

CAUTION

To reduce the risk of an accident

Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

3-3. Using the hands-free phone system

Hands-free phone system features (if equipped)

This system supports Bluetooth[®], which allows you to make or receive calls without using cables to connect a cellular phone and the system, and without operating the cellular phone.

Title	Page
Using the hands-free phone system	P. 202
Making a phone call	P. 210
Setting a cellular phone	P. 214
Security and system setup	P. 218
Using the phone book	P. 221

■ Conditions affecting operation

The hands-free phone system may not operate normally in the following situations:

- The cellular phone is turned off, or located outside the service area.
- The cellular phone has a low battery.
- The cellular phone is not connected to the system.
- The cellular phone is behind the seat or in the glove box, or metal material covers or touches the phone.

■ When transferring ownership of the vehicle

Be sure to initialize the system to prevent the personal data from being improperly accessed.

■ Required profiles for the cellular phone

- HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0
- OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1

■ Trademark owned by Bluetooth SIG. Inc.



■ Certification for the hands-free phone system

FCC ID: HYQBTAU01A IC ID: 1551A-BTAU01A MADE IN JAPAN

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTICE:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

CAUTION:**Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure**

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth, for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that is deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 20 cm and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and legs).

Co-location:

This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

**CAUTION**

 Caution while driving

Do not use a cellular phone, or connect the Bluetooth[®] phone.

**NOTICE**

 To prevent damage to a cellular phone

Do not leave a cellular phone in the vehicle. The temperature inside may become high resulting in damage to the phone.

3-3. Using the hands-free phone system

Using the hands-free phone system

■ Audio unit



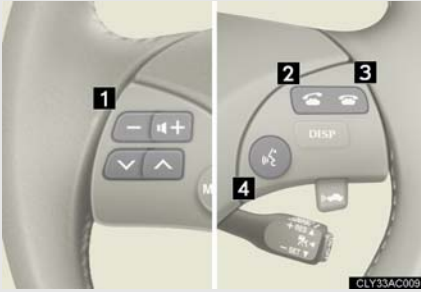
- 1 Displays such items as message, name, and phone number

Lower-case characters and special characters, such as an umlaut, cannot be displayed.

- 2 Push and hold: Displays information that is too long to be displayed at one time on the screen
- 3 Selects speed dials
- 4 Selects items such as menu or number
Turn: Selects an item
Press: Inputs the selected item
- 5 Displays the reception level
- 6 Displays Bluetooth[®] connection condition

If BT is not displayed, the hands-free phone system cannot be used.

■ Steering wheel



1 Volume

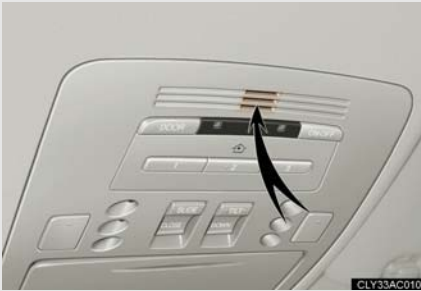
The voice guidance volume cannot be adjusted by using this button.

2 Hands-free phone system ON/starts a call

3 Hands-free phone system OFF/ends a call/refuses a call

4 Press: Voice command system ON Press and hold: Voice command system OFF

■ Microphone



Operating the system by using a voice command

By following voice guidance instructions output from the speaker, voice commands can be given to allow for operation of the hands-free phone system without checking the display or operating



■ Operation procedure when using a voice command

Press  and say a command for a desired function.
(→P. 206)

■ Auxiliary commands when using a voice command

The following auxiliary commands can be used when operating the system using a voice command:

Cancel: Exits the hands-free phone system

Repeat: Repeats the previous voice guidance instruction

Go back: Returns to the previous procedure

Help: Reads aloud the function summary if a help comment is registered for the selected function

Using the hands-free phone system for the first time

Before using the hands-free phone system, it is necessary to register a cellular phone in the system. The phone registration mode will be entered automatically when starting the system with no cellular phone registered. Follow the procedure below to register a cellular phone:

STEP 1 Press  or .

The introductory guidance and phone name registration instructions are heard.

STEP 2 Register a phone name by either of the following methods.

a. Select “Record Name” by using , and say a name to be registered.

b. Press  and say a name to be registered.

Voice guidance instruction to confirm the input is heard.

STEP 3 Select “Confirm” by using a voice command or .

A passkey is displayed and heard, and voice guidance instruction for inputting the passkey into the cellular phone is heard.

STEP 4 Input the passkey into the cellular phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the cellular phone for the operation of the phone.

Guidance for registration completion is heard.

Menu list of the hands-free phone system

■ Normal operation

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Operation detail
Callback	-	-	Dialing a number stored in the incoming history memory
Redial	-	-	Dialing a number stored in the outgoing history memory
Dial by number	-	-	Dialing by inputting a number
Dial by name	-	-	Dialing by inputting a name registered in the phone book
Phonebook	Add Entry	-	Adding a new number
	Change Name	-	Changing a name in the phone book
	Delete Entry	-	Deleting the phone book data
	Delete Speed Dial (Delete Spd Dial)	-	Deleting a registered speed dial
	List Names	-	List the phone book data
	Set Speed Dial (Set Spd Dial)	-	Registering speed dial

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Operation detail
Setup	Security	Set PIN	Setting a PIN code
		Phonebook Lock	Locking the phone book
		Phonebook Unlock	Unlocking the phone book
	Phone Setup	Pair Phone	Registering a cellular phone to be used
		Change Name	Changing a registered name of a cellular phone
		Delete	Deleting a registered cellular phone
		List phones	Listing the registered cellular phones
		Select phone	Selecting a cellular phone to be used
		Set Passkey	Changing the passkey
	System Setup	Guidance Volume (Guidance Vol)	Setting voice guidance volume
		Initialize	Initialization

■ Using a short cut key

First menu	Second menu	Operation detail
Dial “XXX (name)”	-	Dialing a number registered in the phone book
Phone book add entry	-	Adding a new number
Phone book change name	-	Changing a name of a phone number in the phone book
Phone book delete entry	-	Deleting phone book data
Phone book set speed dial	-	Registering speed dial
Phone book delete speed dial	-	Deleting speed dial
Phonebook	Phonebook Unlock	Unlocking the phone book
	Phonebook Lock	Locking the phone book

■ Automatic adjustment of volume

When vehicle speed is 50 mph (80 km/h) or more, the volume automatically increases. The volume returns to the previous volume setting when vehicle speed drops to 43 mph (70 km/h) or less.

■ When using a voice command

- For numbers, say a combination of single digits from zero to nine, # (pound), * (star), and + (plus).
- Say a command correctly and clearly.

■ The system may not recognize your voice in the following situations:

- When driving on a rough road
- When driving at high speeds
- When air is blowing out of the vents onto the microphone
- When the air conditioning fan emits a loud noise

■ The following cannot be performed while driving:

- Operating the system with 
- Registering a cellular phone to the system

■ Changing the passkey

(→P. 217)

3-3. Using the hands-free phone system

Making a phone call

■ Making a phone call

- Dialing by inputting a number
 1. "Dial by number"
- Dialing by inputting a name
 1. "Dial by name"
- Speed dialing
- Dialing a number stored in the outgoing history memory
 1. "Redial"
- Dialing a number stored in the incoming history memory
 1. "Call back"

■ Receiving a phone call

- Answering the phone
- Refusing the call

■ Transferring a call

■ Using a call history memory

- Dialing
- Storing data in the phone book
- Deleting

Dialing by inputting a number

STEP 1 Press  and say "Dial by number".

STEP 2 Press  and say the phone number.

STEP 3 Dial by one of the following methods:

- Press .
- Press  and say "Dial".
- Select "Dial" by using .

Dialing by inputting a name

STEP 1 Press  and say "Dial by name".

STEP 2 Select a registered name to be input by either of the following methods:

- Press  and say a registered name.
- Press  and say "List names". Press  while the desired name is being read aloud.

STEP 3 Dial by one of the following methods:

- Press .
- Press  and say "Dial".
- Select "Dial" by using .

Speed dialing

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Press the preset button in which the desired number is registered.

STEP 3 Press .

When receiving a phone call

■ Answering the phone

Press  .

■ Refusing the call

Press  .

Transferring a call

A call can be transferred between the cellular phone and system while dialing, receiving a call, or during a call. Use one of the following methods:

- a. Operate the cellular phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the cellular phone for the operation of the phone.

- b. Press  *¹.

- c. Press  and say "Call Transfer" *².

*¹: This operation can be performed only when transferring a call from the cellular phone to the system during a call.

*²: While the vehicle is in motion, a call cannot be transferred from the system to the cellular phone.

Using a call history memory

Follow the procedure below to use number stored in call history memory:

STEP 1 Press  and say "Redial" (when using a number stored in the outgoing history memory) or "Call back" (when using a number stored in the incoming history memory).

STEP 2 Select the number by either of the following methods:

- a. Say "Previous" or "Go back" until the desired number is displayed.
- b. Select the desired number by using  .

The following operations can be performed:

Dialing: Press  or select "Dial" by using a voice command or



Storing the number in the phone book: Select "Store" by using a voice command or  .

Deleting: Select "Delete" by using a voice command or  .

■ Muting your voice

Your voice can be muted so that the other party cannot hear your voice during a call.

To set or cancel: Press  and say "Mute".

■ Call history

Up to 5 numbers can be stored in each of the outgoing and incoming history memories.

■ When talking on the phone

- Do not talk simultaneously with the other party.
- Keep the volume of the receiving voice down. Otherwise, voice echo will increase.

3-3. Using the hands-free phone system

Setting a cellular phone

Registering a cellular phone in the hands-free phone system allows the system to function. The following function can be used for registered cellular phones:

■ Functions and operation procedures

To enter menu for each function, follow the steps below by using a voice command or  :

- Registering a cellular phone
 1. "Setup" → 2. "Phone Setup" → 3. "Pair Phone"
- Selecting a cellular phone to be used
 1. "Setup" → 2. "Phone Setup" → 3. "Select Phone"
- Changing a registered name
 1. "Setup" → 2. "Phone Setup" → 3. "Change Name"
- Listing the registered cellular phones
 1. "Setup" → 2. "Phone Setup" → 3. "List Phones"
- Deleting a cellular phone
 1. "Setup" → 2. "Phone Setup" → 3. "Delete"
- Changing the passkey
 1. "Setup" → 2. "Phone Setup" → 3. "Set Passkey"

Registering a cellular phone

Select "Pair Phone" by using a voice command or , and do the procedure for registering a cellular phone. (→P. 205)

Selecting a cellular phone to be used

STEP 1 Select “Select Phone” by using a voice command or  .

► Pattern A

STEP 2 Select a cellular phone to be used by either of the following methods, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or  :

- Press  and say the desired phone name.
- Press  and say “List phones”. While the name of the desired cellular phone is being read aloud, press  .

► Pattern B

STEP 2 Select a cellular phone to be used by using  .

Changing a registered name

STEP 1 Select “Change Name” by using a voice command or  .

STEP 2 Select a name of cellular phone to be changed by either of the following methods:

- Press  and say the desired phone name, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or  .
- Press  and say “List phones”. While the desired phone name is being read aloud, press  .
- Select the desired phone name by using  .

3-3. Using the hands-free phone system

STEP 3 Press  or select “Record Name” by using , and say a new name.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” by using a voice command or .

Listing the registered cellular phones

Selecting “List Phones” by using a voice command or  begins reading aloud the list of the registered cellular phones. When listing is complete, the system returns to “Phone Setup”.

Pressing  while a name of cellular phone is being read selects the cellular phone, and the following functions will be available:

- Selecting a cellular phone: “Select Phone”
- Changing a registered name: “Change Name”
- Deleting a cellular phone: “Delete”

Deleting a cellular phone

STEP 1 Select “Delete” by using a voice command or .

► Pattern A

STEP 2 Select a cellular phone to be deleted by either of the following methods and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or



- a. Press  and say the name of the desired cellular phone.
- b. Press  and say “List phones”. While the name of the desired cellular phone is being read aloud, press .

► Pattern B

STEP 2 Select a desired cellular phone to be deleted by using  .

Changing the passkey

STEP 1 Select “Set Passkey” by using a voice command or  .

► Pattern A

STEP 2 Press  , say a four to eight-digit number, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or  .

► Pattern B

STEP 2 Select a four to eight-digit number by using  .

The number should be input one digit at a time.

STEP 3 When the entire number to be registered as a passkey has been input, press  once again.

■ The number of cellular phone that can be registered

Up to 6 cellular phones can be registered in the system.

3-3. Using the hands-free phone system

Security and system setup

To enter the menu of each setting, follow the steps below:

■ Security setting items and operation procedure

- Setting or changing the PIN (Personal Identification Number)

1. "Setup" → 2. "Security" → 3. "Set PIN"

- Locking the phone book

1. "Setup" → 2. "Security" → 3. "Phonebook Lock"

- Unlocking the phone book

1. "Setup" → 2. "Security" → 3. "Phonebook Unlock"

■ System setup items and operation procedure

- Setting voice guidance volume

1. "Setup" → 2. "System Setup" → 3. "Guidance Vol"

- Initialization

1. "Setup" → 2. "System Setup" → 3. "Initialize"



can only be used for system setup operation.

Setting or changing the PIN

■ Setting a PIN

STEP 1 Select "Set PIN" by using a voice command or .

STEP 2 Enter a PIN by using a voice command or .

When using , input the code one digit at a time.

■ Changing the PIN

STEP 1 Select "Set PIN" by using a voice command or .

STEP 2 Enter the registered PIN by using a voice command or .

STEP 3 Enter a new PIN by using a voice command or .

When using , input the code one digit at a time.

Locking or unlocking the phone book

STEP 1 Select “Phonebook Lock (Phbk Lock)” or “Phonebook Unlock (Phbk Unlock)” by using a voice command or .

STEP 2 Input the PIN by either of the following methods and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or :

- Press  and say the registered PIN.
- Input a new PIN by using .

Setting voice guidance volume

STEP 1 Select “Guidance Vol” by using .

STEP 2 Change the voice guidance volume.

To decrease the volume: Turn  counterclockwise.

To increase the volume: Turn  clockwise.

Initialization

STEP 1 Select “Initialize” and then “Confirm” by using  .

STEP 2 Select “Confirm” by using a voice command or  again.

Initialization

- The following data in the system can be initialized:
 - Phone book
 - Outgoing and incoming history
 - Speed dial
 - Registered cellular phone data
 - Security code
- Once the initialization has been completed, the data cannot be restored to its original state.

When the phone book is locked

The following functions cannot be used:

- Dialing by inputting a name
- Speed dialing
- Dialing a number stored in the call history memory
- Using the phone book

Using the phone book

To enter the menu of each setting, follow the steps below:

- Adding a new phone number
1. "Phonebook" → 2. "Add Entry"
- Setting speed dial
1. "Phonebook" → 2. "Set Speed Dial (Speed Dial)"
- Changing a registered name
1. "Phonebook" → 2. "Change Name"
- Deleting registered data
1. "Phonebook" → 2. "Delete Entry"
- Deleting speed dial
1. "Phonebook" → 2. "Delete Speed Dial (Delete Spd Dial)"
- Listing the registered data
1. "Phonebook" → 2. "List Names"

Adding a new phone number

The following methods can be used to add a new phone number:

- Inputting a phone number by using a voice command
- Transferring data from the cellular phone
- Inputting a phone number by using 
- Selecting a phone number from outgoing or incoming history

■ Adding procedure

STEP 1 Select "Add Entry" by using a voice command or .

3-3. Using the hands-free phone system

STEP 2 Use one of the following methods to input a telephone number:

► Inputting a telephone number by using a voice command

STEP2-1 Select “By Voice” by using a voice command or



STEP2-2 Press , say the desired number, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command.

► Transferring data from the cellular phone

STEP2-1 Select “By Phone” and then “Confirm” by using a voice command or



STEP2-2 Transfer the data from the cellular phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the cellular phone for the details of transferring data.

STEP2-3 Select the data to be registered by either of the following methods:

a. Say “Previous” or “Next” until the desired data is displayed, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or



b. Select the desired data by using



► Inputting a phone number by using



STEP2-1 Select “Manual Input” by using



STEP2-2 Input a phone number by using



once again.

Input the phone number one digit at a time.

► Selecting a phone number from outgoing or incoming history

STEP2-1 Select “Call History” by using a voice command or



STEP2-2 Select “Outgoing” or “Incoming” by using a voice command or



STEP2-3 Select the data to be registered by either of the following methods:

- a. Say “Previous” or “Go back” until the desired data is displayed, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or



- b. Select the desired data by using



STEP 3 Select the name to be registered by either of the following methods, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or



- a. Press  and say the desired name.

- b. Select “Record Name” by using



name.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” by using a voice command or



again.

In **STEP 3**, selecting “Set Speed Dial (Speed Dial)” instead of “Confirm” registers the newly added phone number as speed dial.

Setting speed dial

STEP 1 Select “Set Speed Dial (Speed Dial)” by using a voice command or  .

STEP 2 Select the data to be registered as speed dial by either of the following methods:

a. Press  , say desired number, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or  .

b. Press  , and say “List names”. While the desired name is being read aloud, press  , and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or  .

c. Select the desired data by using  .

STEP 3 Select the desired preset button, and register the data into speed dial by either of the following methods:

a. Press the desired preset button, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or  .

b. Press and hold the desired preset button.

Changing a registered name

STEP 1 Select “Change Name” by using a voice command or  .

STEP 2 Select a name to be changed by either of the following methods.

- Press  , say desired name, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or  .
- Press  , and say “List names”. During the desired name is read aloud, press  .
- Select the desired name by using  .

STEP 3 Select “Record Name” by using a voice command or  .

STEP 4 Say a new name, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or  .

Deleting registered data

STEP 1 Select “Delete Entry” by using a voice command or  .

► Pattern A

STEP 2 Select data to be deleted by either of the following methods, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or  :

- Press  , and say the name of the desired phone number to be deleted.
- Press  , say “List phones”. While the name of the desired phone number is being read aloud, press  .

► Pattern B

STEP 2 Select data to be deleted by using  .

Deleting speed dial

STEP 1 Select “Delete Speed Dial (Delete Spd Dial)” by using a voice command or  .

STEP 2 Press the preset button in which the desired speed dial is registered, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or  .

Listing the registered data

Selecting “List names” by using a voice command begins reading the list of the registered data.

When listing is complete, the system returns to “Phonebook”.

Pressing  while a data is being read aloud selects the data, and the following function will be available.

- Dialing: “Dial”
- Changing a registered name: “Change Name”
- Deleting an entry: “Delete Entry”
- Setting speed dial: “Set Speed Dial (Speed Dial)”

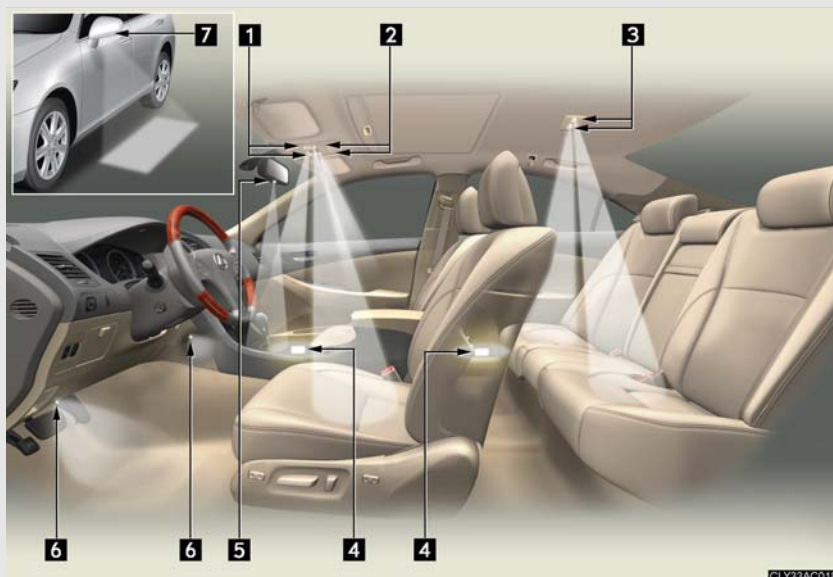
■ Limitation of number of digits

A phone number that exceeds 24 digits cannot be registered.

3-4. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list

Your Lexus is equipped with the illuminated entry system to assist in entering the vehicle. Owing to the function of the system, the lights shown in the following illustration automatically turn on/off according to the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, whether the doors are opened/closed, and the engine switch mode.



1 Front personal lights (→P. 229)

2 Front interior lights (→P. 229)

3 Rear interior lights

4 Door courtesy lightings

5 Shift lever lighting

This light turns on or off depending on the darkness of the surroundings when the engine switch is in ACC or IG-ON mode.

6 Front foot well lightings

7 Outer foot lights

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

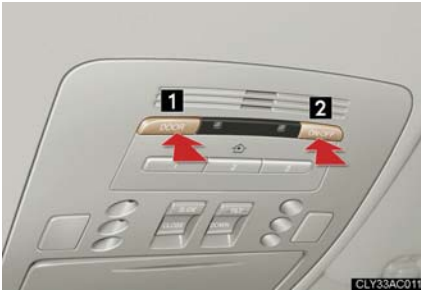
If the following lights remain ON when the door is not fully closed and the DOOR switch is ON, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

- Interior lights
- Front personal lights
- Front foot well lightings
- Rear door courtesy lightings

■ Customization

Setting (e.g. The time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed. (→P. 413)

Front interior lights

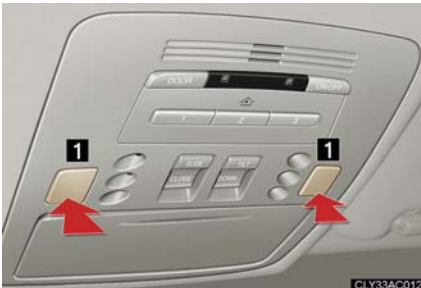


1 Door position OFF/ON

The illuminated entry system is activated when the switch is not in the locked position (the door position is on).

2 ON/OFF

Front personal lights



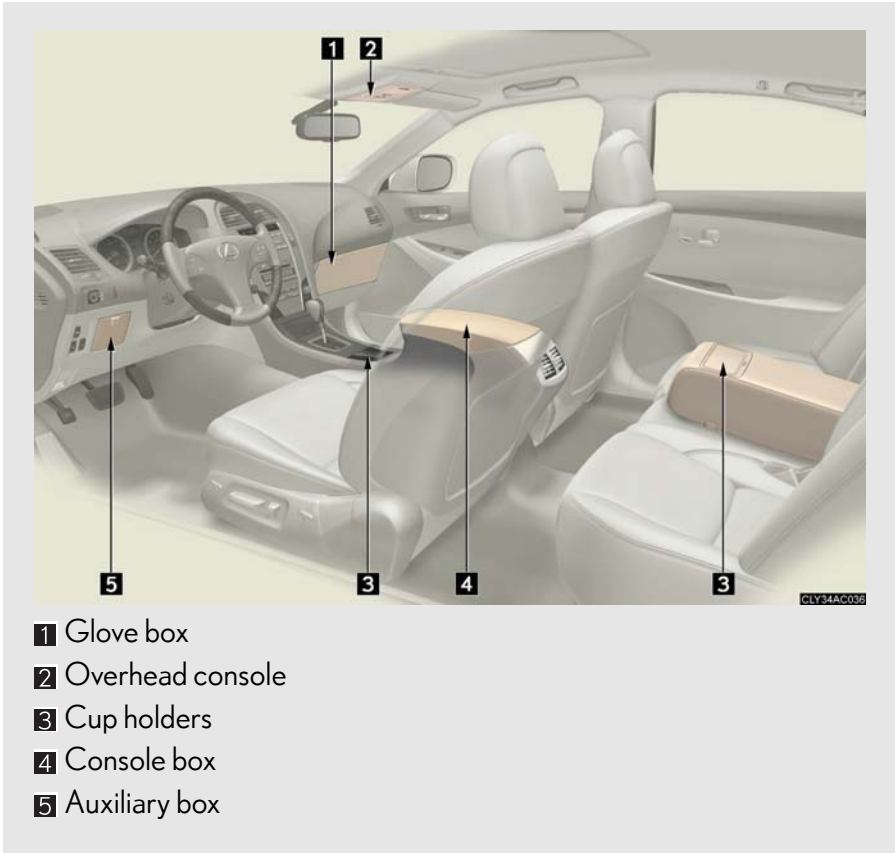
1 ON/OFF

The illuminated entry system is activated even if the switch is in the off position when the DOOR switch of the interior light is on.

3-5. Using the storage features

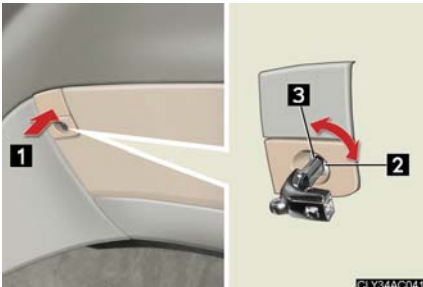
List of storage features

Glove box



- 1 Glove box
- 2 Overhead console
- 3 Cup holders
- 4 Console box
- 5 Auxiliary box

Glove box



- 1 Open (push button)
- 2 Lock with the mechanical key
- 3 Unlock with the mechanical key

■ Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are turned on.

■ Trunk opener main switch

The trunk opener main switch located in the glove box. (→ P. 23)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the glove box closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Console box



To open, press the button.



To close, pull up the lever.

■ Tray in the console box



The tray slides forward/backward and can be removed.

■ Console box light

The console box light turns on when the tail lights are turned on.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the console box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Overhead console



The overhead console is useful for temporarily storing sunglasses and similar small items.

! CAUTION

■ Items that should not be left in the overhead console

Do not leave glasses or lighters in the console.

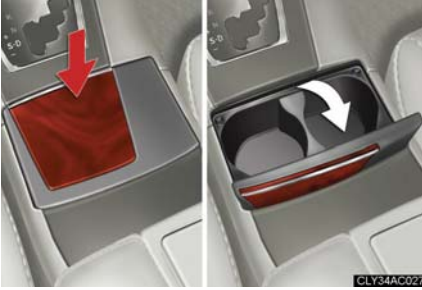
If the interior of the vehicle becomes hot, lighters may explode and glasses may warp or become cracked.

■ Caution while driving

Do not leave the overhead console open while driving.

Items may fall out and cause injury.

Cup holders



► Front

To open, press down and release the front of the cup holder lid.



► Rear

■ Using the cup holder (front) to store small items



Remove the holder.

■ The cup holder (front) can be adjustable to the size of the cups or drink-cans



Change the holder position.

! CAUTION

■ Items unsuitable for the cup holder

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

■ When not in use

Keep the cup holders closed. Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Auxiliary box



To open, press down the knob.

CAUTION

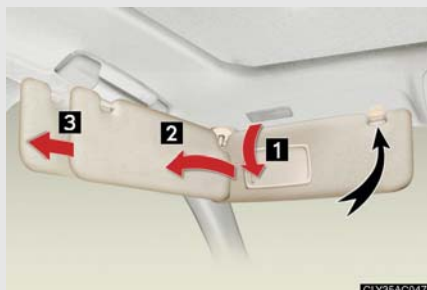
Caution while driving

Keep the auxiliary box closed.

In the event of sudden braking, personal injury may result from contact due to movement of the open auxiliary box or items that may come out of the auxiliary box.

3-6. Other interior features

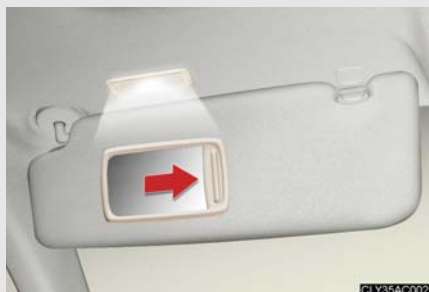
Sun visors



- 1 Forward position:
Flip down.
- 2 Side position:
Flip down, unhook, and swing to the side.
- 3 Side extender:
Place in side position, then slide backwards.

3-6. Other interior features

Vanity mirror



The light turns on when the cover is opened.

3-6. Other interior features

Clock

► Without navigation system



- 1 Adjusts the hour.
- 2 Adjusts the minutes.
- 3 Rounds to the nearest hour.*

*: e.g. 1:00 to 1:29 → 1:00

1:30 to 1:59 → 2:00

► With navigation system



■ The clock is displayed when

The engine switch is in ACC or IG-ON mode.

3-6. Other interior features

Ashtray



Push the back part of the lid to open.

To remove, pull the ashtray upwards.

CAUTION

When not in use

Keep the ashtray closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

NOTICE

To prevent fire

- Fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.
- Do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.

3-6. Other interior features

Cigarette lighter



Push the back part of the lid to open, and push the cigarette lighter down.

The cigarette lighter will pop up when it is ready for use.

■ The cigarette lighter can be used when

The engine switch is in ACC or IG-ON mode.

! CAUTION

■ To avoid burns or fires

- Do not touch the metal parts of the cigarette lighter.
- Do not hold the cigarette lighter down. It could overheat and cause a fire.
- Do not insert anything other than the cigarette lighter into the outlet.

3-6. Other interior features

Power outlet

The power outlet can be used for 12 V accessories that run on less than 10 A.



- The power outlet can be used when
The engine switch is in ACC or IG-ON mode.

NOTICE

- **To avoid damaging the power outlet**

Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

- **To prevent the fuse from being blown**

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.

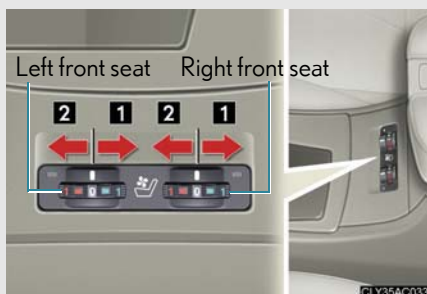
- **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

3-6. Other interior features

Seat heaters and ventilators (if equipped)

The seat heaters and ventilators heat the seats and maintain good airflow by blowing air from the seats.



1 Heats the seats

The indicator light (orange) comes on.

The higher the number, the warmer the seats become.

2 Blows air from the seats

The indicator light (green) comes on.

The higher the number, the stronger the airflow becomes.

3

Interior features

■ The seat heaters and ventilators can be used when

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

■ When not in use

Set the dial to 0. The indicator light turns off.

! CAUTION

■ Burns

● Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

● Do not cover the seat with anything when using the seat heater.

Using the seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.



NOTICE

■ **To prevent seat heater damage**

Do not put unevenly weighted objects on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Set the dial to 0 when the engine is not running.

3-6. Other interior features

Armrest



Pull the armrest down for use.



NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the armrest**

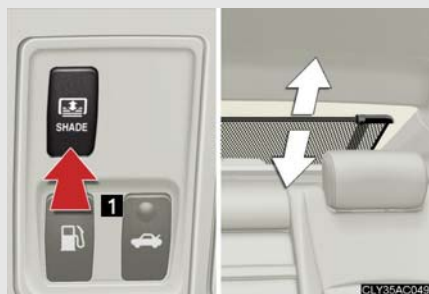
Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

3-6. Other interior features

Rear sunshade (if equipped)

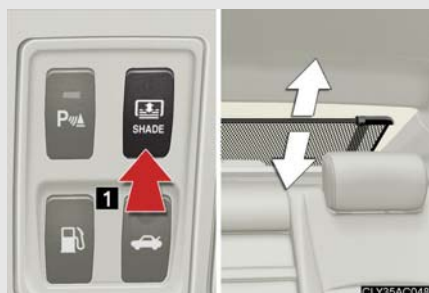
The rear sunshade can be raised and lowered by operating the switch shown below.

► Type A



1 Raise/lower

► Type B



■ The rear sunshade can be used when

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

■ Reverse operation feature

The rear sunshade automatically lowers when the shift lever is shifted into R. The rear sunshade rises when the shift lever is shifted out of R and vehicle speed reaches 9 mph (15 km/h).

■ When the reverse operation feature does not operate

The rear sunshade may not lower or rise automatically. In this case, press the switch to lower or raise the rear sunshade.

 CAUTION**■ When the rear sunshade is being raised or lowered**

Do not place fingers or other objects in the fastener section or in the opening. They may get caught, causing injury.

 NOTICE**■ To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not operate the rear sunshade when the engine is not running.

■ To ensure normal operation of the sunshade

Observe the following precautions.

- Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components.
- Do not place objects where they may hinder opening and closing operations.
- Do not attach items to the rear sunshade.
- Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
- Do not operate the rear sunshade continuously over long periods of time.

3-6. Other interior features

Extended trunk

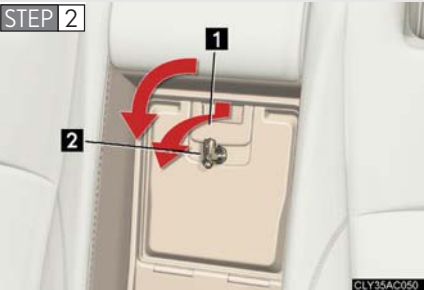
Long objects can be loaded in the vehicle by utilizing the trunk space and rear seat area.

STEP 1



Pull down the armrest.

STEP 2



Open the armrest door.

The armrest door can be locked and unlocked using the mechanical key.

- 1 Lock
- 2 Unlock

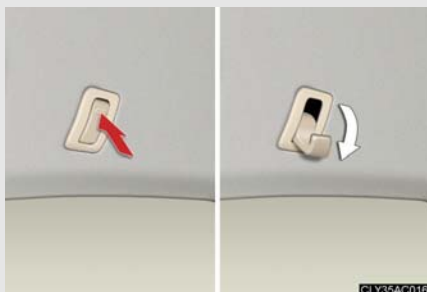
 CAUTION

 When not in use

Ensure that the armrest door is closed.
In the event of sudden braking, items stored in the trunk may be thrown forward into the cabin, resulting in injury.

3-6. Other interior features

Coat hooks



To use coat hook, push it on.

CAUTION

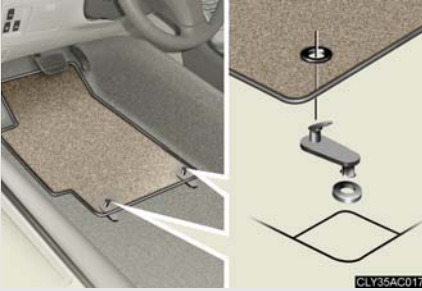
Items that must not be hung on the hook

Do not hang a coat hanger or other hard or sharp object on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles that cause death or serious injury.

3-6. Other interior features

Floor mat

Securely place a mat that matches the size of the space on the carpet.



Secure the driver's floor mat using the hooks provided.

CAUTION

When inserting the floor mat

Make sure the floor mat is properly placed on the vehicle carpet. If the floor mat slips and interferes with the movement of the pedals during driving, it may cause an accident.

3-6. Other interior features

Trunk features

■ Cargo hooks



Cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

■ Grocery bag hooks



■ Luggage mat



Pull the lever upwards when lifting the luggage mat up.



The lever can be hooked on the edge of the trunk.

! CAUTION

■ When the cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their positions when they are not in use.

! NOTICE

■ When closing the trunk

Do not leave the luggage mat lever hooked on the edge of the trunk.
The luggage mat may get damaged.

3-6. Other interior features

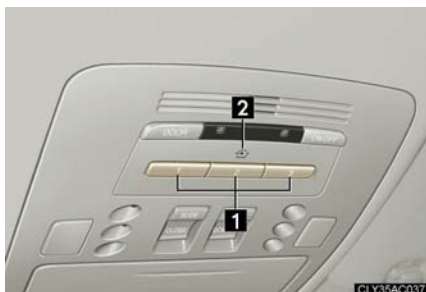
Garage door opener

The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, and security systems, and other devices.

The garage door opener (HomeLink[®] Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink[®].

Programming the HomeLink[®] (for USA owners)

The HomeLink[®] compatible transceiver in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming method below appropriate for the device.



- 1 Buttons
- 2 Indicator

■ Programming the HomeLink[®]



Point the remote control for the device 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) from the HomeLink[®] control buttons.

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink[®] in view while programming.

3-6. Other interior features



Press and hold down one of the buttons on the HomeLink[®] and the button on the transmitter. When the indicator light on the HomeLink[®] changes from a slow to a rapid flash after 20 seconds, you can release both buttons.



Test the operation of the HomeLink[®] by pressing the newly programmed button.

If programming a garage door opener, check to see if the garage door opens and closes. If the garage door does not operate, see if your garage transmitter is of the Rolling Code type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink[®] button. The garage door has the rolling code feature if the indicator light (on the HomeLink[®]) flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is the Rolling Code type, proceed to the heading "Programming a rolling code system".

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink[®] buttons.

■ Programming a Rolling Code system (for USA owners)

If your device is Rolling Code equipped, follow the steps under the heading “Programming the HomeLink®” before proceeding with the steps listed below.

STEP 1 Locate the training button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener.

Refer to the operation manual supplied with the garage door opener for the location of the training button.

STEP 2 Press the training button.

STEP 3 Press and release the vehicle’s programmed HomeLink® button twice. The garage door may open.

If the garage door opens, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink® transceiver and operate the garage door.

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another rolling code system for any of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ Programming an entry gate (for USA owners)/Programming all devices in the Canadian market

STEP 1 Place your transmitter 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) away from the surface of the HomeLink®.

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink® in view while programming.

STEP 2 Press and hold the selected HomeLink® button.

STEP 3 Repeatedly press and release (cycle) the device’s remote control button for two seconds each until step 4 is complete.

STEP 4 When the indicator light on the HomeLink® compatible transceiver start to flashing rapidly, release the buttons.

STEP 5 Test the operation of the HomeLink[®] by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

STEP 6 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink[®] buttons.

■ Programming other devices

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your authorized Lexus dealer for assistance.

■ Reprogramming a button

The individual HomeLink[®] buttons cannot be erased but can be reprogrammed. To reprogram a button, follow the “Basic programming” instructions.

Operating the HomeLink[®]

Press the appropriate HomeLink[®] button. The HomeLink[®] indicator light on the HomeLink[®] transceiver should turn on.

The HomeLink[®] continues to send a signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

Erasing the entire HomeLink[®] memory (all three programs)



Press and hold down the 2 outside buttons for 20 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink[®] memory.

■ Before programming

- Install a new battery in the transmitter.
- The battery side of the transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink[®].

■ Certification for the garage door opener

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of the IC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: This transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

CAUTION

■ When programming a garage door or other remote control device

The garage door may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

■ Conforming to federal safety standards

Do not use the HomeLink[®] Compatible Transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.

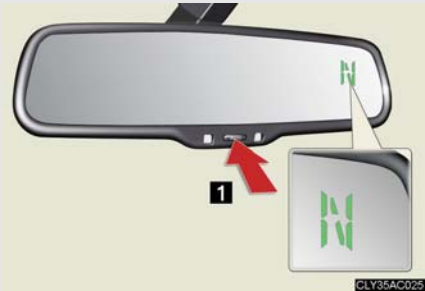
This includes any garage door that cannot detect an obstruction object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

3-6. Other interior features

Compass

The compass on the inside rear view mirror indicates the direction in which the vehicle is heading.

■ Operation

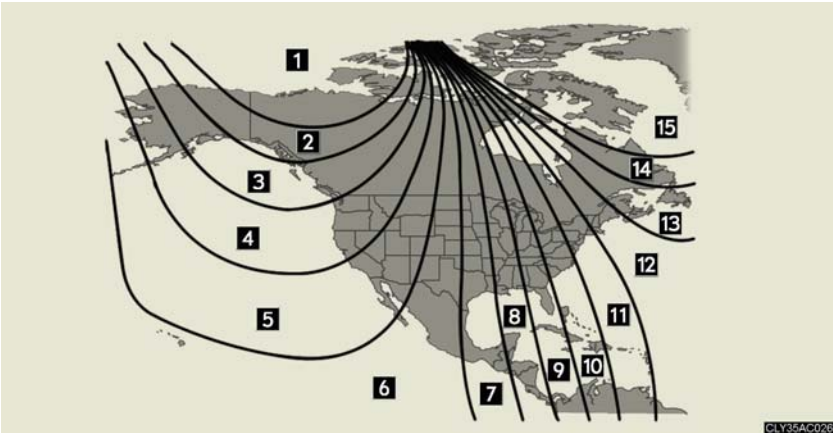


- 1** To turn the compass on or off, push and hold AUTO for 3 seconds.

■ Displays and directions

Display	Direction
N	North
NE	Northeast
E	East
SE	Southeast
S	South
SW	Southwest
W	West
NW	Northwest

Calibrating the compass



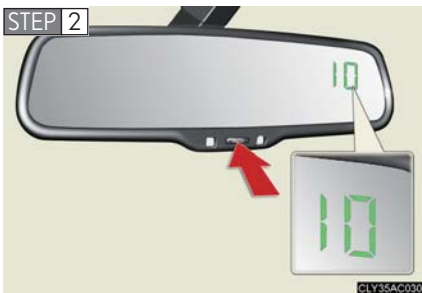
The direction display deviates from the true direction determined by the earth's magnetic field. The amount of deviation varies according to the geographic position of the vehicle.

If you cross over a map boundary shown in illustration, the compass will deviate.

To obtain higher precision or perfect calibration, refer to the following.

■ Deviation calibration

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle where it is safe to drive in a circle.



Push and hold AUTO for 6 seconds.

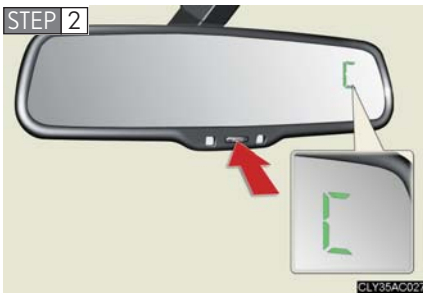
A number (1 to 15) appears on the compass display.

STEP 3 Press AUTO, and referring to the map above, select the number of the zone where you are.

If the direction is displayed several seconds after adjustment, the calibration is complete.

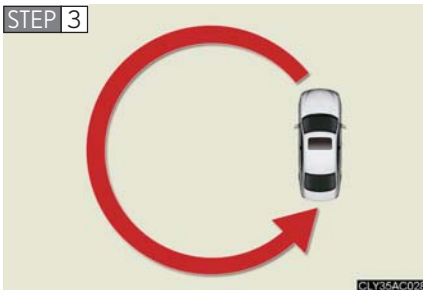
■ Circling calibration

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle where it is safe to drive in a circle.



Push and hold AUTO for 9 seconds.

C appears on the compass display.



Drive the vehicle at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less in a circle until a direction is displayed.

If there is not enough space to drive in a circle, drive around the block until the direction is displayed.

■ Conditions unfavorable to correct operation

The compass may not show the correct direction in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped immediately after turning.
- The vehicle is on an inclined surface.
- The vehicle is in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground car park/parking lot, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof car park/parking lot, near an intersection, near a large vehicle, etc.).
- The vehicle has become magnetized.
(There is a magnet or metal object near the inside rear view mirror.)
- The battery has been disconnected.
- A door is open.

CAUTION

■ While driving the vehicle

Do not adjust the display. Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.

■ When doing the circling calibration

Be sure to secure a wide space, and watch out for people and vehicles in the neighborhood. Do not violate any local traffic rules while performing circling calibration.

NOTICE

■ To avoid compass malfunctions

Do not place magnets or any metal objects near the inside rear view mirror. Doing this may cause a malfunction of the compass sensor.

■ To ensure normal operation of the compass

- Do not perform circling calibration of the compass in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields.
- During calibration, do not operate electric systems (moon roof, power windows, etc.) as they may interfere with the calibration.

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition.

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ Automatic car washes

- Fold the mirrors back before washing the vehicle.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

■ High pressure automatic car washes

Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows. Before entering an automatic car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

■ Aluminum wheels

Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.

■ Bumpers and side moldings

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ To prevent deterioration and do by corrosion

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
 - After driving near the sea coast
 - After driving on salted roads
 - If you see coal tar or tree sap on the paint surface
 - If you see dead insects or insect droppings on the paint
 - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
 - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled in dust or mud
 - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.

CAUTION

■ Caution about the exhaust pipe

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipe until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

NOTICE

■ To protect your vehicle's painted surfaces

Do not use organic cleaners such as benzene or gasoline.

■ Cleaning the exterior lights

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

■ Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

■ Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.
Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in shaded and ventilated area.

■ Synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires.

■ Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. The excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Water in the vehicle

- Be careful not to splash or spill liquid on the floor.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet.
(→P. 59)
Electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or severe injury.

NOTICE

■ **Cleaning detergents**

Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces.

- Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach.
- Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol.

■ **Preventing damage to leather surfaces**

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces.

- Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ **Water on the floor**

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of the vehicle, and may also cause the body to rust.

■ **Cleaning the inside of the rear window**

Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. It is the owner's responsibility to perform regular checks. Lexus recommends the following maintenance.

■ General maintenance

Should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Lexus dealer.

■ Scheduled maintenance

Should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".

■ Do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform some maintenance procedures yourself.

Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

The use of Lexus Repair Manuals is recommended.

For details about warranty coverage, see the separate "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".

■ Repair and replacement

It is recommended that genuine Lexus parts be used for repair to ensure performance of each system. If non-Lexus parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Lexus dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

■ Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Lexus dealer

- Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operations of all systems on your vehicle.
- Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it.

CAUTION

■ Warning in handling of battery

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 293)
- Used engine oil contains chemicals that have been shown to cause cancer in laboratory animals. Avoid prolonged and repeated contact. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

4-2. Maintenance

General maintenance

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the “Warranty and Service Guide” or “Owners Manual Supplement”. It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

Engine compartment

Items	Check points
Battery	Maintenance-free. (→P. 293)
Brake fluid	At the correct level? (→P. 290)
Engine coolant	At the correct level? (→P. 288)
Engine oil	At the correct level? (→P. 284)
Exhaust system	No fumes or strange sounds?
Power steering fluid	At this correct level? (→P. 291)
Radiator/condenser/hoses	Not blocked with foreign matter? (→P. 290)
Washer fluid	At the correct level? (→P. 296)

Vehicle interior

Items	Check points
Accelerator pedal	• Moves smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching)?
Automatic transmission “Park” mechanism	• Can the vehicle be hold securely on an incline with the shift lever in P?
Brake pedal	• Moves smoothly? • Does it have appropriate clearance and correct amount of free play?
Brakes	• Not pull to one side when applied? • Loss of brake effectiveness? • Spongy feeling brake pedal? • Pedal almost touches floor?
Head restraints	• Move smoothly and lock securely?
Indicators/buzzers	• Function properly?
Lights	• Do all the lights come on? • Headlights aimed correctly? (→P. 324)
Parking brake	• Moves smoothly? • Can hold the vehicle securely on an incline?
Seat belts	• Does the seat belt system operate smoothly? • Are the belts undamaged?
Seats	• Do the seat controls operate properly?

Items	Check points
Steering wheel	• Moves smoothly? • Has correct free play? • No strange noises?

Vehicle exterior

Items	Check points
Door/trunk	• Operate smoothly?
Engine hood	• The lock system works properly?
Fluid leaks	• Is there any leakage after parking?
Tire	• Inflation pressure is correct? • Tire surfaces not worn or damaged? • Tires rotated according to the maintenance schedule? • Wheel nuts are not loose?

 **CAUTION**

 **If the engine is running**

Turn the engine off and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.

4-2. Maintenance

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

■ If the electronic engine control system warning light comes on

The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

■ Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test:

- When the battery is disconnected or discharged

Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.

- When the fuel tank cap is loose

The electronic engine control system warning light comes on as a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

■ When the electronic engine control system warning light goes off after several driving trips

The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

■ If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test

Contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P. 293)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Brake fluid level (→P. 290)	• FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)
Engine coolant level (→P. 288)	• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrate and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. For the USA: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. For Canada: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding engine coolant)

Items	Parts and tools
Engine oil level (→P. 284)	• “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent • Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P. 315)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 305)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Headlight aim (→P. 324)	• Phillips-head screwdriver
Power steering fluid level (→P. 291)	• Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding power steering fluid)
Radiator and condenser (→P. 290)	—
Washer fluid (→P. 296)	• Water washer fluid containing anti-freeze (for winter use) • Funnel

CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury.

When working on the engine compartment:

- Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.
If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille:

Be sure the engine switch is OFF.

With the engine switch in IG-ON mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high.
(→P. 290)

Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in the eyes.



NOTICE

■ **If you remove the air cleaner:**

Driving with the air filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.

■ **If the fluid level is low or high**

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.

If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

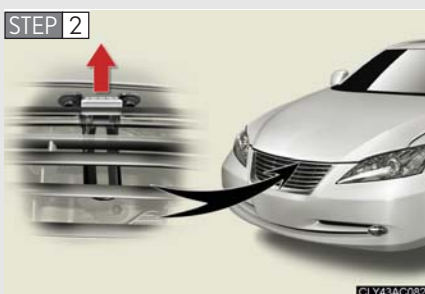
Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.



Pull the hood release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



Lift the hood catch and lift the hood.

CAUTION

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.

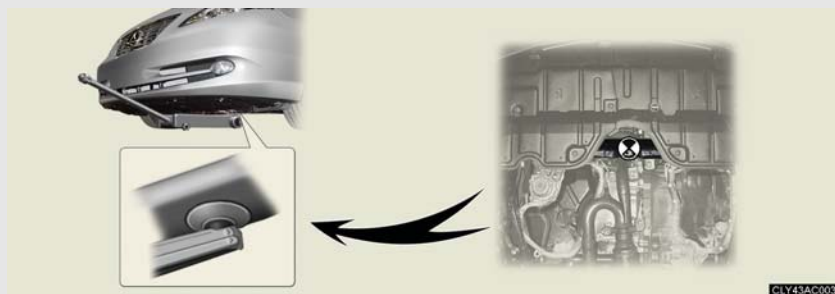
If the hood is not locked properly it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Positioning the jack

When raising your vehicle with the jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

■ Front



■ Rear



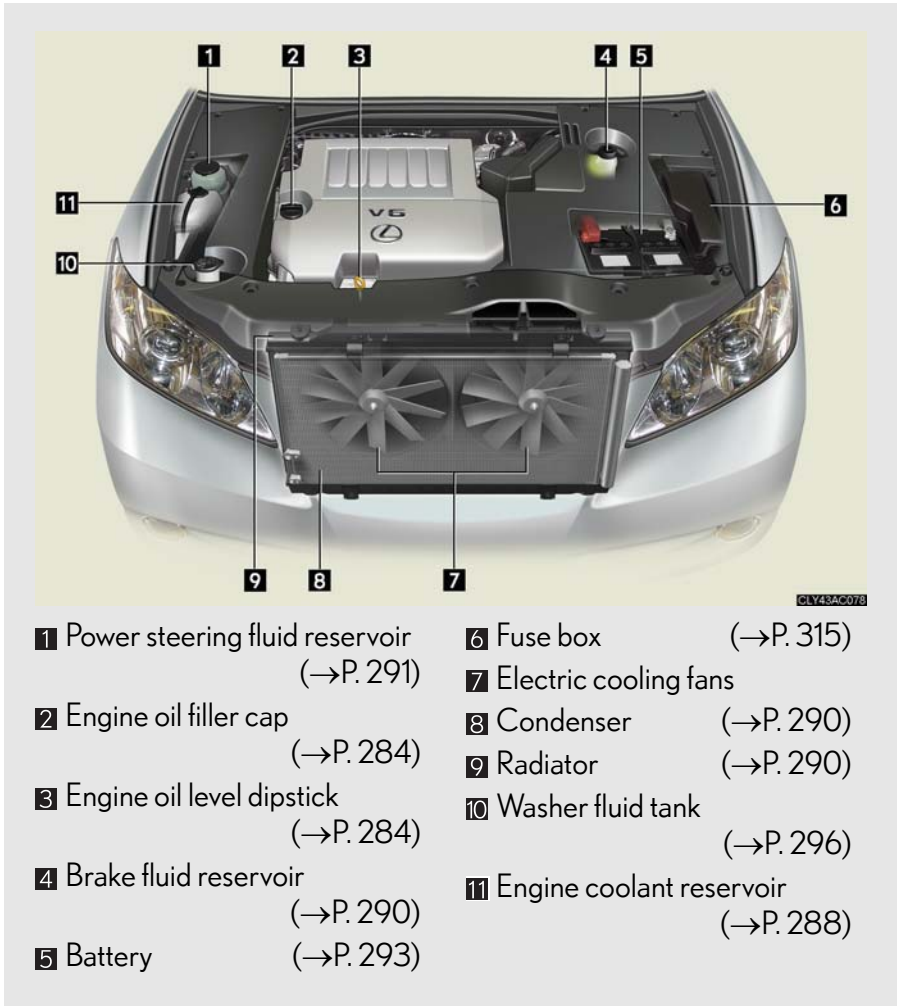
 CAUTION**■ When raising your vehicle:**

Make sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury.

- Do not put any part of your body or get underneath the vehicle supported only by the jack.
Always use automotive jack stands or a solid, level, surface.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Stop the vehicle on level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the shift lever in P.
- Make sure to set the jack properly at the jack point.
Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned jack will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the jack.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Engine compartment



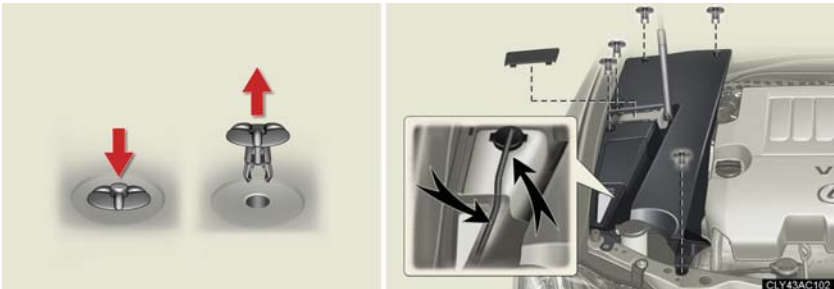
Engine compartment cover

■ Removing the engine compartment cover

► Front



► Right-hand side

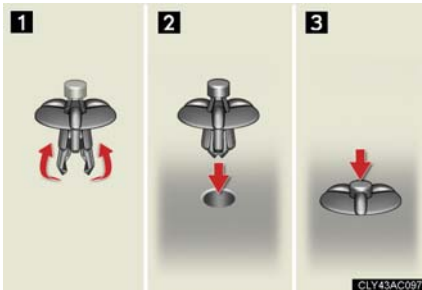


- When installing the cover, make sure that the engine coolant reservoir hose positioned as shown in the illustration.

► Left-hand side



■ Installing the clips



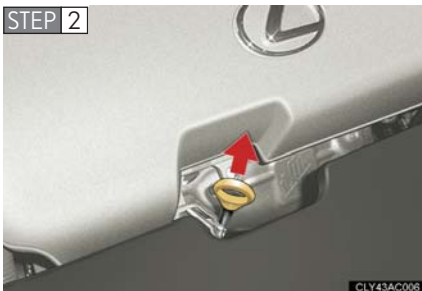
- 1 Open
- 2 Insert
- 3 Press

Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

STEP 1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After turning off the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.



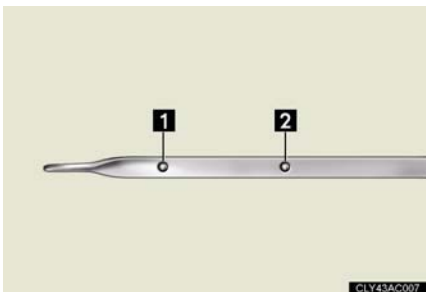
Hold a rag under the end and pull the dipstick out.

STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

STEP 4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

STEP 5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

STEP 6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.



- 1** Low
- 2** Full

■ Adding engine oil



If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Oil grade	ILSAC multi-grade engine oil
Items	Clean funnel

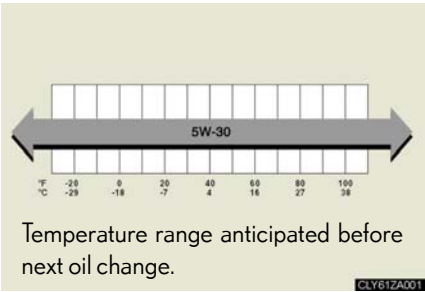
STEP 1 Remove the oil filler cap.

STEP 2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

STEP 3 Install the filler cap, turning it clockwise.

It takes about 1.6 qt. (1.5 L, 1.3 Imp. qt.) to raise the oil level from low to full on the dipstick.

■ Recommended viscosity



SAE 5W-30 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 5W-30 is not available, SAE 10W-30 may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 5W-30 at the next oil change.

■ How to read oil container labels

Some oil containers are labeled with ILSAC certification marks that help you to select the proper oil.



■ Engine oil consumption

- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds and frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 Imp.qt./600 miles (1.0 L per 1000 km)
- If you consume more than 1.1 qt. (1.0 L, 0.9 Imp.qt.) every 600 miles (1000 km), contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Changing the engine oil (USA only)

To reset the oil change system, follow the procedure below:

1. Turn the engine switch OFF.
2. While pressing the trip meter reset button (→P. 102), set the engine switch to the IG-ON mode. Continue to press and hold the knob until the trip meter displays 000000.

⚠ CAUTION**■ Used engine oil**

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

NOTICE

■ To prevent serious engine damage:

Check the oil level on regular basis.

■ When replacing the engine oil

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly retightened.

Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the F and L lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.

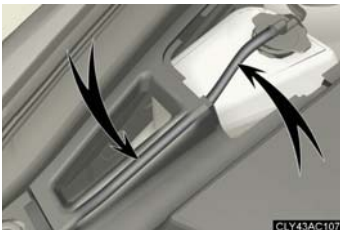


1 Full

2 Low

If the level is on or below the L line, add coolant up to the F line.

■ When adding the engine coolant



When installing the reservoir cap, make sure that the engine coolant reservoir hose is positioned as shown in the illustration.

■ **If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing**

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant filler cap, radiator cap, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer pressure test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

■ **Coolant selection**

Only use Toyota Super Long Life Coolant or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

USA: Toyota Super Long Life Coolant is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Enabled: -31°F [-35°C])

Canada: Toyota Super Long Life Coolant is a mixture of 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. (Enabled: -44°F [-42°C])

For more details about engine coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

 CAUTION

■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not remove the radiator cap.

The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing burns or other injuries.

 NOTICE

■ **When adding engine coolant**

Coolant is neither plain water not straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and anti freeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ **If you spill coolant**

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it damaging parts or paint.

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear any foreign objects.
If either of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

 **CAUTION**

 **When the engine is hot**
Do not touch the radiator or condenser, as they may be hot and you may be burned.

Brake fluid

 Checking fluid level



The brake fluid level should be between the MAX and MIN lines on the tank.

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

 Adding fluid

Fluid type	FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid
Items	Clean funnel

 Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air

Excess moisture in the fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

! CAUTION**■ When filling the reservoir**

Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.

If fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

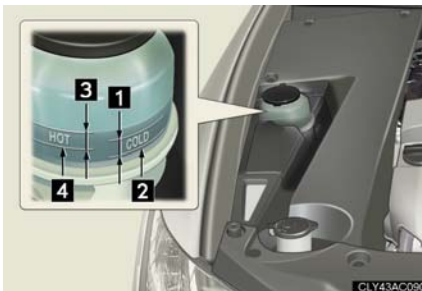
! NOTICE**■ If the fluid level is low or high**

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.

If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

Power steering fluid**■ Fluid level**

The fluid level should be within the appropriate range.



- 1** Full (when cold)
- 2** Add fluid (when cold)
- 3** Full (when hot)
- 4** Add fluid (when hot)

Hot: Vehicle has been driven around 50 mph (80 km/h) for 20 minutes, or slightly longer in frigid temperatures. (Fluid temperature, 140°F - 175°F [60°C - 80°C])

Cold: Engine has not been run for about 5 hours. (Room temperature, 50°F - 85°F [10°C - 30°C])

■ **Checking the fluid level**

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

Fluid type	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III
Items	Rag or paper towel and funnel (only for adding fluid)

- STEP 1 Clean all dirt off the reservoir.
- STEP 2 Remove the reservoir cap by turning it counterclockwise and wipe the dipstick clean.
- STEP 3 Reinstall the reservoir cap.
- STEP 4 Remove the reservoir cap again and look at the fluid level.



CAUTION

■ **Checking the fluid level**

Take care, as the reservoir may be hot.



NOTICE

■ **When adding fluid**

Avoid overfilling, or the power steering may be damaged.

■ **After replacing the reservoir cap**

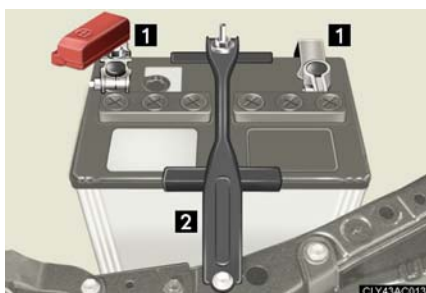
Check the steering box case, vane pump and hose connections for leaks or damage.

Battery

Check the battery as follows.

Battery exterior

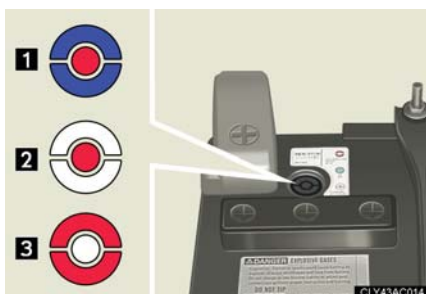
Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.



- 1 Terminals
- 2 Hold-down clamp

Checking battery condition

Check the battery condition using the indicator color.



- 1 Blue: Good condition
- 2 White: Charging is necessary. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- 3 Red: Not working properly, have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ Before recharging

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ After recharging the battery

The engine may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.

1. Shift the shift lever to P.
2. Open and close any of the doors.
3. Restart the engine.

CAUTION

Chemicals in the battery:

A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

How to recharge the battery

Only perform a slow charge (5 A or less). The battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

NOTICE

■ When recharging the battery

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

Washer fluid



If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

NOTICE

■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid. Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

■ Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the washer fluid tank.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and tread wear.

■ Checking tires



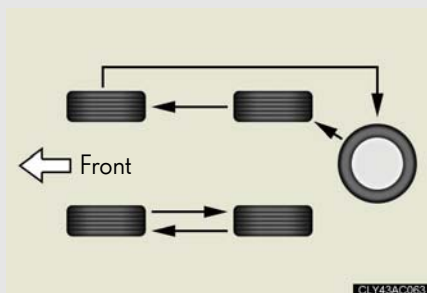
- 1 New tread
- 2 Tread wear indicator
- 3 Worn tread

The location of tread wear indicators is shown by the TWI or Δ marks, etc., molded on the side-wall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.

■ Tire rotation

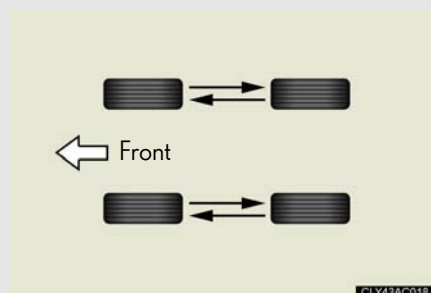
- If equipped with standard spare tire



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

Lexus recommends tire rotation in accordance with the maintenance schedule to equalize tire wear and extend tire life.

- If equipped with compact spare tire



■ The tire pressure warning system

Your Lexus is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valve & transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 343)

Installing tire pressure warning valve & transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valve & transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valve & transmitters are installed, new tire pressure warning valve & transmitter ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning ECU and tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve & transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P. 299, 300)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:

- When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc.
- When changing the tire size.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the pressure benchmark.

■ How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

STEP 1 Park the vehicle in safe place and turn off the engine.

STEP 2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 391)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

STEP 3 Turn the engine switch to IG-ON mode.



Press the tire pressure warning reset button for more than 3 seconds. At this time, the tire inflation pressure warning indicator flashes 3 times.

STEP 5 Wait for a few minutes with the IG-ON mode, and then turn the engine switch to OFF mode.

Registering and selecting ID codes

■ Registering ID codes

2 sets of tire pressure warning valve & transmitter ID codes can be registered. Once a second set of tires is registered at “2nd”, you can switch between tire set settings simply by pressing the tire pressure warning select switch.

There are 2 settings:

“MAIN” position: The ID code of the tire pressure warning valve & transmitter on the tires originally installed on the vehicle is registered.

“2nd” position: The code is not registered. When you replace a new set of tires, purchase tire pressure warning valve & transmitters from your Lexus dealer and have the new ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

■ Selecting ID codes

When replacing tires, make sure to select the ID code set that matches the new tire set. If the tire pressure select switch is set to the wrong tire setting, the system will not work properly. After about 1 hour, the tire pressure warning light blinks (comes on after blinking for 1 minute) to indicate a system malfunction.



1 MAIN

2 2nd

■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric or bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ If the tread wears down below 0.16 in. (4 mm) on snow tires

The effectiveness of snow tires is lost.

■ Maximum load of tire

Check that the maximum load of the replaced tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.

As for the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire, and as for the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR), see the Certification Label. (→P. 305, 397).

■ Tire types

1 Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

2 All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use year round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

3 Snow tires

For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restriction. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 147)

■ Initializing the tire pressure warning system

Initialize the tires with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

■ If you push the tire pressure reset switch accidentally

If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the system again.

■ When the initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the warning light does not flash.
- After driving for a certain period of time since the initialization has been completed, the warning light flashes.

■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ Tire pressure warning system certification

► For vehicles sold in the USA

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTICE:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio-TV technician for help.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

► For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

CAUTION

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents. Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to fatal or injury accidents.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models, tread patterns or tread wear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix radial, bias-belted, or bias-ply tires.
- Do not mix summer, all season and winter tires.

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not push the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire not inflation pressure is actually normal.

NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing tires, wheels and tire pressure warning valve & transmitters

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve & transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve & transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- When replacing tires, make sure also to replace the tire pressure warning valve & transmitter grommets.

■ Do not use puncture sealant sprays to repair flats

Puncture sealant sprays may damage tire pressure warning valve & transmitters.

■ Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ If tire inflation pressures become low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Tire inflation pressure

Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size is displayed on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 391)



■ Inspection and adjustment procedure



STEP 1 Remove the tire valve cap.

STEP 2 Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.

STEP 3 Read the pressure using the graduations of the gauge.

STEP 4 If the tire inflation pressure is not within the recommended levels, adjust inflate the tire.

If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to lower.

STEP 5 After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.

STEP 6 Reinstall the tire valve cap.

■ Tire inflation pressure check interval

You should check tire inflation pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month. Do not forget to check the spare.

■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

CAUTION

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury.

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps.

Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps have been lost, replace them as soon as possible.

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

■ Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and offset.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

Lexus does not recommend using:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

■ Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

■ When replacing wheels

The wheels of your Lexus are equipped with sensors that allow the tire pressure warning system sensors to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valve & transmitters must be switched over from the old wheels. (→P. 299)

CAUTION

■ When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing serious injury or death.

NOTICE

■ Replacing tire pressure warning valve & transmitters

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valve & transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valve & transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only Genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
Tire pressure warning valve & transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

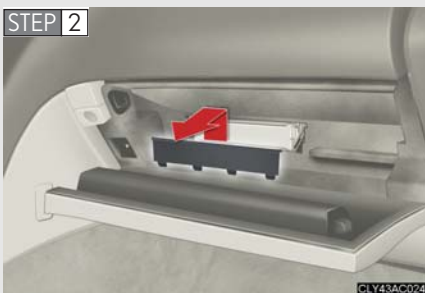
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

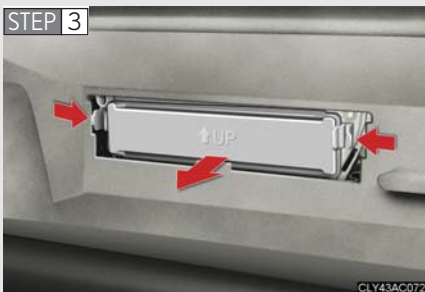
STEP 1 Turn the engine switch OFF.

STEP 2



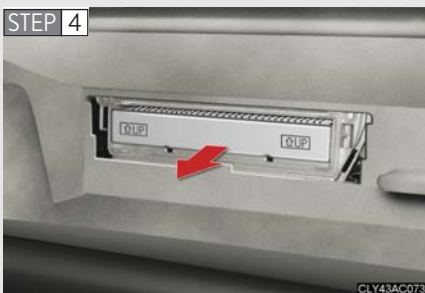
Open the glove box. Remove the glove box cover.

STEP 3



Remove the filter cover.

STEP 4



Remove the filter.

Be sure that the correct side of the filter faces up when installing it.

■ Changing interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".)

■ If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.



NOTICE

■ When using the air conditioning system

Make sure that a filter is always installed.

Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is discharged.

■ You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR1632)

■ Replacing the battery

STEP 1



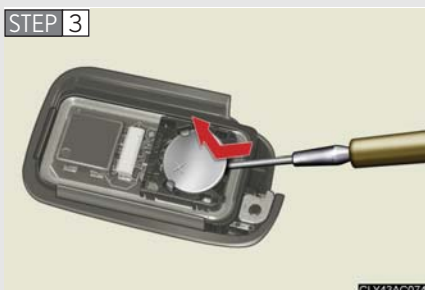
Take out the mechanical key.

STEP 2



Remove the cover.

STEP 3



Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the + terminal facing up.

■ If the electronic key battery is discharged

The following symptoms may occur.

- The smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

■ Use a CR1632 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, jewelers, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by a Lexus dealer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

CAUTION

■ Removed battery and other parts

Keep away from children.

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child they can cause choking.

NOTICE

■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

- Always work with dry hands.
Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

STEP 1 Turn the engine switch OFF.

STEP 2 Remove the engine compartment cover.

→P. 283

STEP 3 Open the fuse box cover.



► Engine compartment

Push the tabs in and lift the lid off.



► Driver's side instrument panel

Remove the lid.

STEP 4 After a system failure, see "Fuse layout and amperage ratings" (→P. 317) for details about which fuse to check.

STEP 5



Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

STEP 6 Check if the fuse has blown.

1



2



CLY43AC006

► Type A

1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

1



2



CLY43AC005

► Type B

1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating.

1



2



CLY43AC007

► Type C

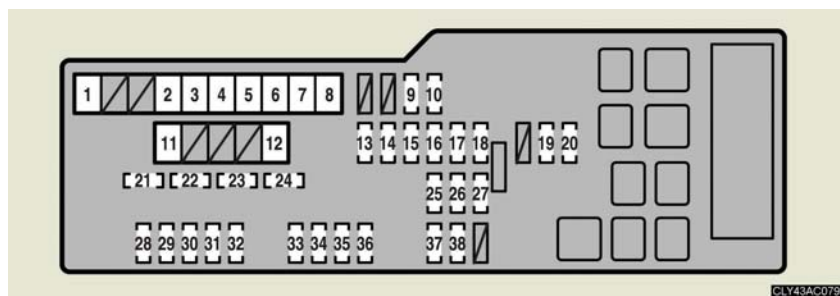
1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

Fuse layout and amperage ratings

■ Engine compartment

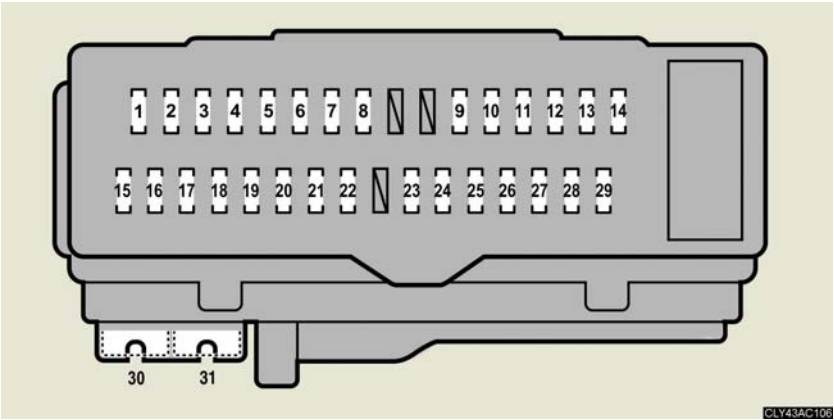


Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	PSB	30 A	Pre-collision seat belt
2	H-LP CLN	30 A	_____
3	P-P / SEAT	30 A	Power seat
4	RR DEF	50 A	Rear window defogger
5	ABS NO.2	30 A	Anti-lock brake system, vehicle stabil- ity control system
6	FAN MAIN	50 A	Electric cooling fans
7	ABS NO.1	50 A	Anti-lock brake system, vehicle stabil- ity control system
8	HTR	50 A	Air conditioning system
9	RR FOG	10 A	_____
10	ALT-CDS	10 A	Alternator condenser
11	ST	30 A	Starting system

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
12	ALT	140 A	PSB, H-LP CLN, P-P/SEAT, RR DEF, ABS NO.2, FAN MAIN, ABS NO.1, HTR, RR FOG, RR DOOR RH, RR DOOR LH, FUEL OPN, FR FOG, OBD, STOP, TI & TE, A/C, PWR, DOOR NO.2, S/ROOF, GAUGE NO.2, POWER, P/SEAT
13	STR LOCK	20 A	Steering lock system
14	IG2	20 A	GAUGE NO.2, IGN, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
15	HAZ	15 A	Turn signal lights
16	ETCS	10 A	Electronic throttle control system
17	E-ACM	10 A	Electric active control mount
18	A/C CTRL PNL	15 A	Air conditioning system
19	ALT-S	7.5 A	Charging system
20	AM2	7.5 A	Starting system
21	EFI MAIN	30 A	EFI NO.2, EFI NO.3, fuel system, ECT system
22	AMP	30 A	Audio system
23	AMP2	30 A	Audio system
24	DOOR NO.1	25 A	Power door lock system
25	RADIO NO.1	15 A	Audio system
26	ECU-B NO.1	10 A	ECU powers
27	DOME	10 A	Interior lights, meters, vanity lights
28	H-LP (LH)	15 A	Left-hand headlight (high beam)
29	H-LP (RH)	15 A	Right-hand headlight (high beam)

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
30	H-LP (LL)	15 A	Left-hand headlight (low beam)
31	H-LP (RL)	15 A	Right-hand headlight (low beam)
32	HORN	10 A	Horns
33	EFI NO.1	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection sys- tem, ECT system
34	MPX-B	10 A	Meters
35	A/F	20 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection sys- tem
36	S-HORN	7.5 A	Horn
37	EFI NO.2	15 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection sys- tem
38	EFI NO.3	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection sys- tem

■ Driver’s side instrument panel



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	RR DOOR RH	25 A	Power window
2	RR DOOR LH	25 A	Power window
3	FUEL OPN	7.5 A	Fuel filler door opener
4	FR FOG	15 A	Front fog lights
5	OBD	7.5 A	On-board diagnosis system
6	ECU-B NO.2	7.5 A	ECU powers
7	STOP	10 A	Stop lights
8	TI & TE	30 A	Tilt and telescopic steering
9	A/C	7.5 A	Air conditioning system
10	PWR	25 A	Power windows
11	DOOR NO.2	25 A	Main body ECU
12	S/ROOF	30 A	Moon roof
13	TAIL	10 A	Front and rear side marker lights, tail lights, license plate lights

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
14	PANEL	7.5 A	Seat heaters, air conditioning system, audio system, rear sunshade, steering switches, fuel filler door opener, outside rear view mirror
15	ECU-IG NO.1	10 A	Moon roof, seat heaters, power windows, clock, automatic windshield wiper, electric cooling fans, driving position memory system, seat position memory system
16	ECU-IG NO. 2	7.5 A	Anti-lock brake system, vehicle stability control system, traction control system, brake assist system, cruise control system, stop lights, shift lock control system
17	A/C NO. 2	10 A	Air conditioning system, rear window defogger
18	WASH	10 A	Windshield washer
19	S-HTR	20 A	Seat heaters, air conditioning system
20	GAUGE NO.1	10 A	Emergency flashers, back-up lights, rear sunshade, charging system
21	WIP	25 A	Windshield wipers
22	H-LP LVL	7.5 A	Headlight leveling system
23	IGN	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, SRS airbag system, steering lock system
24	GAUGE NO. 2	7.5 A	Meters
25	ECU-ACC	7.5 A	Clock, main body ECU
26	CIG	20 A	Cigarette lighter

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
27	PWR OUTLET	20 A	Power outlet
28	RADIO NO. 2	7.5 A	Audio system
29	MIR HTR	15 A	Outside rear view mirror defoggers
30	POWER	30 A	Power window
31	P/SEAT	30 A	Power seat

■ **After a fuse is replaced**

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 325)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If there is an overload in the circuits**

The fuses are designed to blow before the entire wiring harness is damaged.

 CAUTION

■ **To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire**

- Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.
- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify fuses or the fuse box.

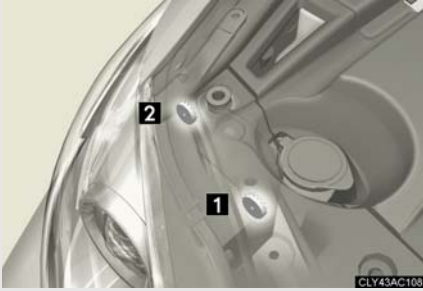
**NOTICE****■ Before replacing fuses**

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Headlight aim (vehicles with discharge headlights)

■ Vertical movement adjusting bolts



1 Adjustment bolt A

2 Adjustment bolt B

■ Before checking the headlight aim

STEP 1 Make sure the vehicle has a full tank of gas and the area around the headlight is not deformed.

STEP 2 Park the vehicle on level ground.

STEP 3 Sit in the driver's seat.

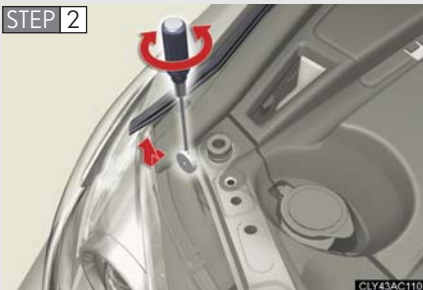
STEP 4 Bounce the vehicle several times.

■ Adjusting the headlight aim



Turn bolt A in either direction using a Phillips-head screwdriver.

Remember the turning direction and the number of turns in mind.



Turn bolt B the same number of turns and in the same direction as step 1 using a Phillips-head screwdriver.

If the error is over the value specified above, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer to adjust the headlight aim.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs yourself. For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact your Lexus dealer.

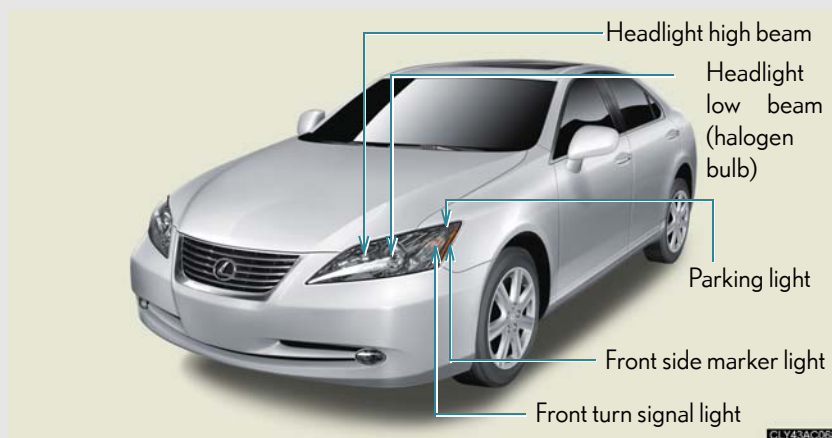
■ Prepare a replacement light bulb.

Check the wattage of the light bulb being replaced. (→P. 393)

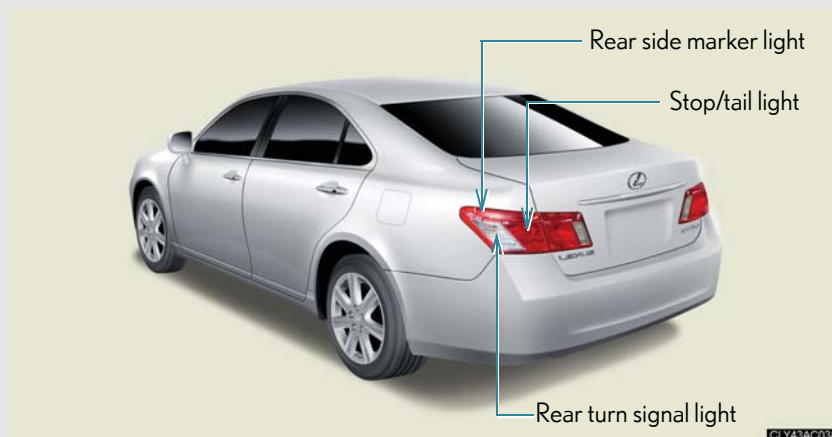
■ Remove the engine compartment cover.

→P. 283

■ Front bulb locations

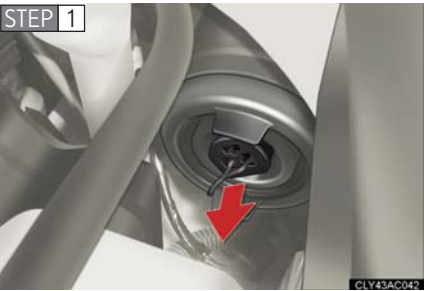


■ Rear bulb locations

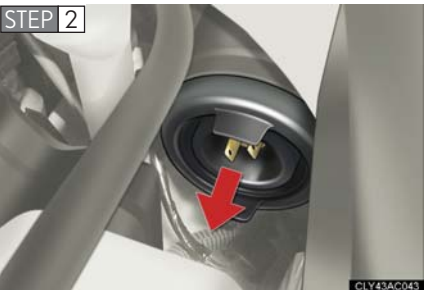


Replacing light bulbs

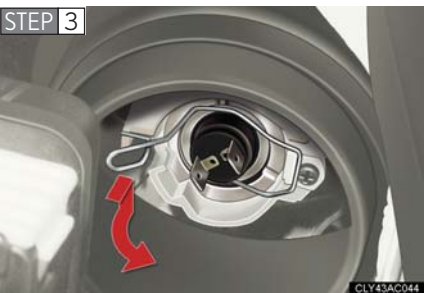
■ Headlight low beams (for vehicles without discharge bulbs)



Unplug the connector.



Remove the cover.



Release the lock.



Remove the light bulb.

Headlight high beams

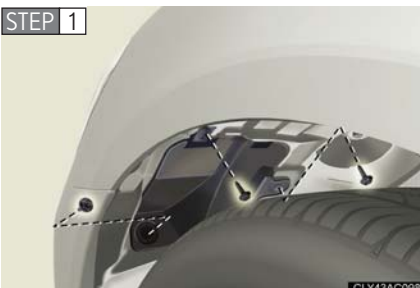


Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.

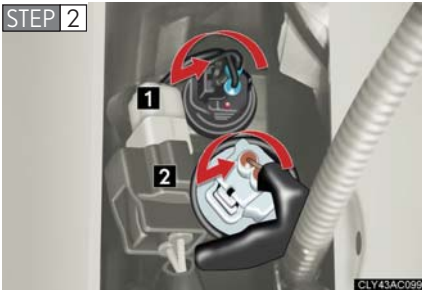
Parking lights and front side marker lights, front turn signal lights



Remove the access hole cover.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

STEP 2



1 Parking light and front side marker light

2 Front turn signal light

Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

► Parking light and front side marker light

STEP 3



Remove the light bulb.

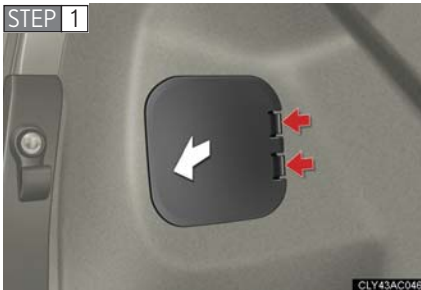
► Front turn signal light

STEP 3

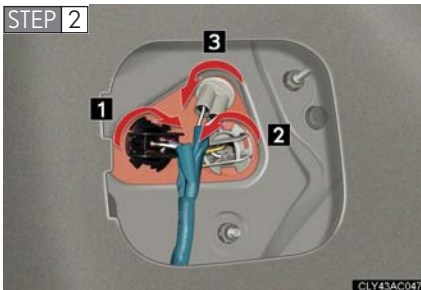


Remove the light bulb.

■ Stop/tail, rear turn signal and rear side marker lights



Open the trunk lid and remove the access hole cover.



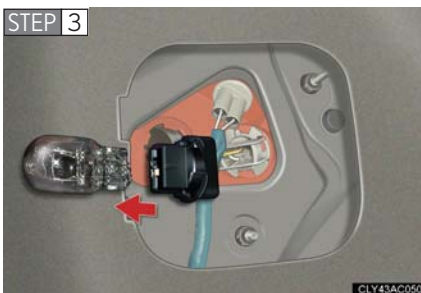
1 Stop/tail light

2 Rear turn signal light

3 Rear side marker light

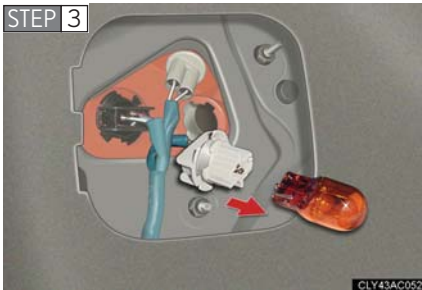
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

► Stop/tail light



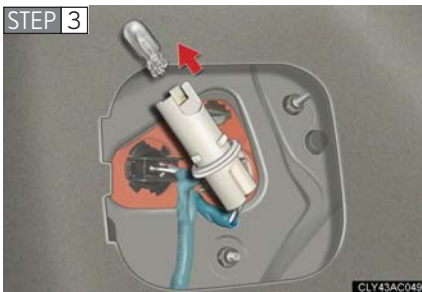
Remove the light bulb.

► Rear turn signal light



Remove the light bulb.

► Rear side marker light



Remove the light bulb.

■ Bulbs other than the above

If any of the bulbs listed below has burnt out, have your Lexus dealer replace it.

- Headlight low beams (discharge bulbs)
- Front fog lights
- Tail lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights
- Back-up lights

■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

■ Discharge headlights

If voltage to the discharge bulbs is insufficient, the bulbs may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

■ LED stop lights

The high mounted stoplight consists of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

CAUTION

■ Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the headlights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the headlights.
The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion.
If the bulb is scratched or dropped it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failing to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- Do not attempt to take apart or repair the low beam headlight bulbs, connectors, power supply circuits, or related components.
Doing so could result in electric shock and serious injury or death.

■ Discharge headlights

- Contact your Lexus dealer before replacing discharge headlights (including light bulbs).
- Do not touch the high-intensity discharge headlight's high voltage socket when the headlights are turned on.
An extremely high voltage of 20000 V will be discharged and could result in serious injury or death by electric shock.

■ To prevent damage or fire

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

5-1. Essential information

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or a flat bed truck.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

If towing from the front, the vehicle's rear wheels and axles must be in good condition. (→P. 335)

If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flat bed truck.

Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer before towing.

- The engine is running, but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Towing with a sling-type truck

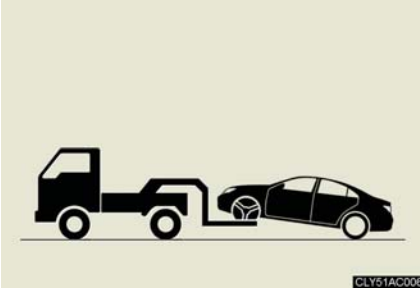


NOTICE

To prevent body damage

Do not tow with a sling type truck, either from the front or rear.

Towing with a wheel lift-type truck

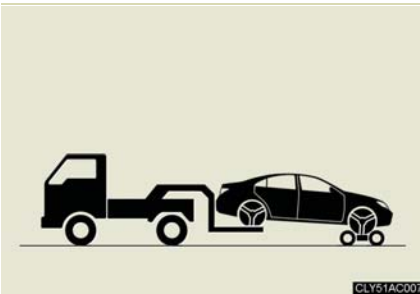


- ▶ From front
Release the parking brake.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damaging the vehicle

When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.



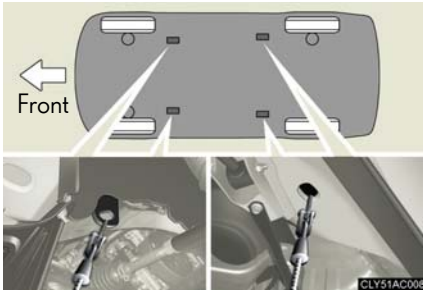
- ▶ From rear
Use a towing dolly under the front wheel.

NOTICE

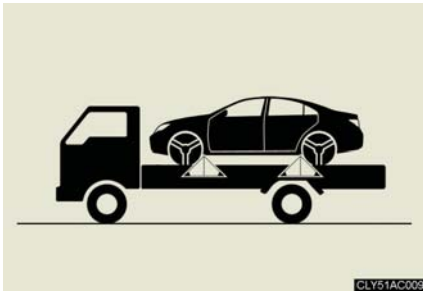
■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission

Never tow this vehicle from the rear with the front wheels on the ground.

Using a flat bed truck



If your Lexus is transported by a flat bed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle
(Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal

■ Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

■ Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

5-1. Essential information

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

STEP 1 Switch to ACC mode or OFF.

STEP 2 Restart the engine.



NOTICE

■ Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.

If you find that fuel has leaked on to the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and it is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

5-1. Essential information

Event data recorder

Your vehicle has computers that monitor and control certain aspects of your vehicle. These computers assist in driving and maintaining optimal vehicle performance.

Besides storing data useful for troubleshooting, there is a system to that record data in a crash or a near car crash event.

In a crash or a near car crash event

The SRS airbag sensor assembly contains the EDR. In a crash or a near car crash event, this device may record some or all of the following information:

- Engine speed
- Whether the brake pedal was applied or not
- Vehicle speed
- To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- Position of the transmission shift lever
- Whether the driver and front passenger wore seat belts or not
- Driver's seat position
- SRS airbag deployment data
- SRS airbag system diagnostic data

The VSC Electronic Control Unit (ECU) may contain another EDR. In case the VSC or Brake Assist system is activated, or the lateral acceleration is beyond a certain value, this device may record some or all of the following information:

- Behavior of the vehicle
- Steering wheel angle
- Vehicle speed

- To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- To what extent the brake pedal was applied
- To what extent the ECU controlled the condition of the 4 wheels
- Vehicle stability control system diagnostic data

The information above is intended to be used for the purpose of improving vehicle safety performance. Unlike general data recorders, the EDR does not record sound data such as conversation between passengers.

Disclosure of the data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the leasing company for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- Officially requested by the police or other authorities
- Used as a defense for Lexus in a law suit
- Ordered by a court law

However, if necessary Lexus will:

- Use the data for research on Lexus vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing details of the vehicle owner, and only when it is deemed necessary
- Disclose summarized data cleared of vehicle identification information to a non-Lexus organization for research purposes

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights turn on or flash. If a light turns on or flashes, but then turns off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (USA)	Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)* Indicates the following; • Low brake fluid • Malfunction in the brake booster system This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released the system is operating normally.
 (Canada)	

*: Parking brake engaged warning buzzer:

→P. 353

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warnings indicate the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	Charging system warning light Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system.
 (USA)  (Canada)	Malfunction indicator lamp Indicates the following: • Empty fuel tank • Loose fuel tank • Malfunction in the electronic engine control system; • Malfunction in the electronic throttle control system; or • Malfunction in the electronic automatic transmission control system.

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	SRS warning light Indicates a malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; or • Front passenger occupant classification system • The seat belt pretensioner system.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (USA)	ABS warning light Indicates a malfunction in: • The ABS; or • The brake assist system.
 (Canada)	
	Pre-collision system warning light Indicates a malfunction in the pre-collision system.

Follow the correction procedure.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Open door warning light (warning buzzer*1) Indicates that a door or a trunk is not fully closed.	Check that all doors and the trunk are closed.
	Rear light failure warning light Indicates one or more stop lights are burned out.	Have the defective bulbs replaced by your Lexus dealer.
	Low fuel level warning light Indicates remaining fuel level is low. (Approximately 2.8 gal. [10.5 L, 2.3 Imp.gal.] or less)	Refuel the vehicle.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer*2) Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
 (with navigation system)  (without navigation system)	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer*2) Warns the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
	Tire pressure warning light	
	When the light comes on: Indicates low tire inflation pressure.	Adjust the tire pressure.
	When the light stays on after blinking for 1 minute: Indicates a malfunction in the tire pressure warning system.	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Master warning light A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction.	→P. 350

***1:Open door warning buzzer:**

→P. 353

***2:Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminders:**

The driver's and front passenger's seat belts reminder sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds intermittently for 10 seconds after the vehicle has reached a speed of at least 12 mph (20 km/h). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

■ **First check when the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

Check the following:

- Is the fuel tank empty?
If it is, fill the fuel tank immediately.
- Is the fuel tank cap loose?
If it is, tighten it securely.

The light will go off after taking several driving trips.

If the light does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ SRS warning light

This warning light system monitors the following:

- The airbag sensor assembly
- The front airbag sensors
- The side and curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies
- The curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies
- The driver's seat position sensor
- The driver's seat belt buckle switch
- Occupant detection system (ECU and sensors)
- AIRBAG ON and AIRBAG OFF indicator lights
- Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch
- The seat belt pretensioner assemblies
- The inflators
- The interconnecting wiring and power sources

■ Front passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder

If luggage or other load is placed on the front passenger seat, depending on its weight, the reminder light to flash and buzzer to sound.

■ When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch does not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

■ The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes

The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ When a tire is replaced with a spare tire

► Grand spare tire

The spare tire is also equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the warning light does not turn off. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

► Compact spare tire

The compact spare tire is not equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

■ If the tire pressure warning system is inoperative

The tire pressure warning system may become inoperative in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered.
- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby.
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle.
- If the tire pressure warning select switch is set to a different tire setting.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
- If tire chains are used.
- If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception.
- If the tire inflation pressure is more than 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm² or bar) or higher.

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently

If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently when the power switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ Customization

The vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer can be disabled. (→P. 413)

CAUTION

■ Maintenance of the tires

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (low tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (low tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (low tire pressure warning light).

 CAUTION**■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If the tire is flat, change to the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by your Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

 NOTICE**■ Precaution when installing a different tire**

When a tire of a different specification or maker is installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning message is displayed

If a warning is shown on the multi-information display, stay calm and perform the following actions:



- 1 Master warning light
The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.
- 2 Multi-information display

If any of the warning message turns on again after performing the following actions, contact your Lexus dealer.

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warnings indicate the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

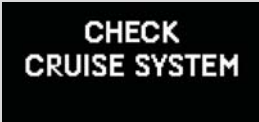
Warning message	Details
LOW OIL PRESSURE  (Flashing)	Indicates an abnormal engine oil pressure. A buzzer also sounds.

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning message	Details
CHECK S/T LOCK  (Flashing)	Indicates a malfunction in the steering lock system. A buzzer also sounds.
CHECK PCS SYSTEM PCS  (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the pre-collision system. A buzzer also sounds.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Warning message	Details
  (If equipped)	Indicates intuitive parking assist malfunction. A buzzer also sounds. The malfunctioning assist-sensor is shown flashing on the display.
 (Flashing)   (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the radar cruise control system. A buzzer also sounds. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Switch the engine switch to OFF and then to IG-ON mode again to reset the cruise control system.
 	Indicates a malfunction in the TRAC and VSC systems.

Follow the correction procedure.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message turns off.

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
   	Indicates that one or more of the doors is not fully closed. The system also indicates which doors are not fully closed.  flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that one or more of the doors is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).	Make sure that all of the doors are closed.
	Indicates that the hood is not fully closed.  flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that hood is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).	Close the hood.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
 TRUNK	Indicates that the trunk is not fully closed.  flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that trunk is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).	Close the trunk.
 MOONROOF OPEN  (Flashing)	Indicates that the moon roof is not fully closed (with the engine switch OFF and the driver's door opened). A buzzer also sounds.	Close the moon roof.
 PARK BRAKE  (Flashing)	Indicates that the parking brake is still engaged (with the vehicle having reached a speed of more than 3 mph [5 km/h]). A buzzer also sounds.	Release the parking brake.
 LOW WASHER FLUID 	Indicates that the washer fluid level is low. A buzzer also sounds.	Add washer fluid.

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
LOW ENGINE OIL LEVEL 	Indicates that engine oil level is low. A buzzer also sounds.	Check the level of engine oil, and add if necessary.
OIL MAINT REQD SOON  (USA only)	Indicates that the engine oil is scheduled to be changed. A buzzer also sounds. Comes on approximately 4500 miles (7200 km) after the engine oil is changed. (The indicator will not work properly unless the oil maintenance data has been reset).	Check and the engine oil, and change if necessary.
OIL MAINT REQD  (USA only)	Indicates that the engine oil should be changed. A buzzer also sounds. Comes on approximately 5000 miles (8000 km) after the engine oil is changed (and the oil maintenance data has been reset).	Check and change the engine oil.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
PCS NOT AVAILABLE NOW PCS (Flashing)  (If equipped)	Indicates that the pre-collision system is not currently functional. A buzzer also sounds.	Clean the grille and the sensor. This message appears when the pre-collision system is hot. In this case, wait until the system cools down.
 (If equipped) 	Indicates that the sensor of intuitive parking assist is dirty or covered with ice. A buzzer also sounds.	Clean the sensor.
CLEAN RADAR SENSOR (If equipped) (Flashing) CRUISE (Flashing) 	Indicates that the radar cruise control sensor is dirty or covered with ice. A buzzer also sounds.	Clean the sensor.

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
 (Flashing and then continuously on)  (Flashing)  (If equipped)	Indicates that the radar cruise control system is unable to judge vehicle-to-vehicle distance because the windshield wipers are set at high speed operation mode. A buzzer also sounds.	Turn them off or set them to either the intermittent or the slow mode.
 (Flashing) (If equipped)	Indicates that your vehicle is nearing the vehicle ahead (in radar cruise mode). A buzzer also sounds.	Slow the vehicle by applying the brakes.

■ Changing the engine oil (USA only)

Make sure to reset the oil change system. (→P. 284)

■ Warning light display in radar cruise mode

In the following cases, the warning light may not be displayed even if vehicle-to-vehicle distance closes.

- When your vehicle and the vehicle ahead are traveling at the same speed or the vehicle ahead is traveling more quickly than your vehicle
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at a very low speed
- Immediately after cruise control speed is set
- At the instant the accelerator pedal is depressed

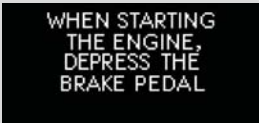
Follow the correction procedure for problem in smart access system with push-button start.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message turns off.

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	—	 (Comes on for 8 seconds.)  (Flashing)	Indicates that the electronic key is not present when attempting to start the engine.	Confirm the location of the electronic key.
Once	3 times	  (Flashing)	Indicates that a door other than the driver's door has been opened and closed with the engine switch in any mode other than OFF and the electronic key outside of the detection area.	Confirm the location of the electronic key.

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	3 times	KEY IS NOT DETECTED  (Flashing)	Indicates that the driver's door has been opened or closed with the shift lever in P, the engine switch in any mode other than OFF and the electronic key outside of the detection area.	Turn the engine switch OFF or confirm the location of the electronic key.
Once	Continuous	SHIFT TO P RANGE KEY IS NOT DETECTED (Displayed alternately)  (Flashing)	Indicates that the driver's door has been opened or closed (with the shift lever out of in P, the engine switch in any mode other than OFF and the electronic key outside of the detection area).	• Shift the shift lever to P. • Confirm the location of the electronic key.
Once	—	LOW KEY BATTERY  (Flashing)	Indicates that the key battery is low.	Replace the battery. (→P. 313)

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	—		Indicates that a door has been opened or closed and the engine switch has been switched twice to ACC mode from OFF.	Press the engine switch while applying the brakes.
—	—	  (Flashing)	Indicates that the steering lock has not released within 3 seconds of pressing the engine switch.	Press the engine switch again while turning the steering wheel with the brake pedal depressed.

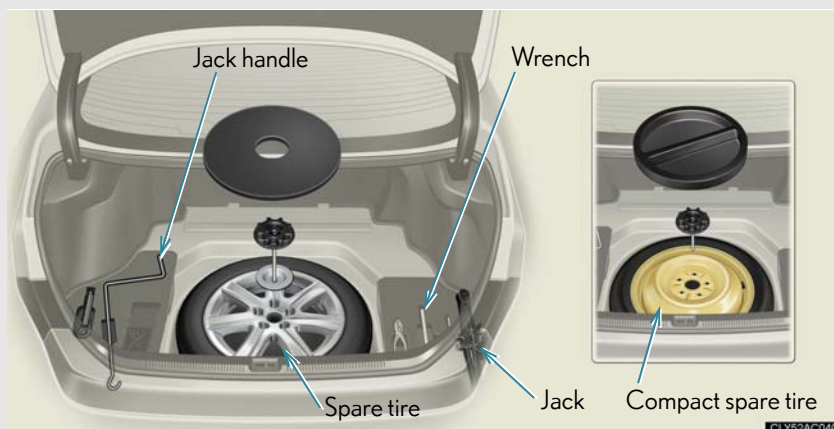
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If you have a flat tire

Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare provided.

■ Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

■ Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



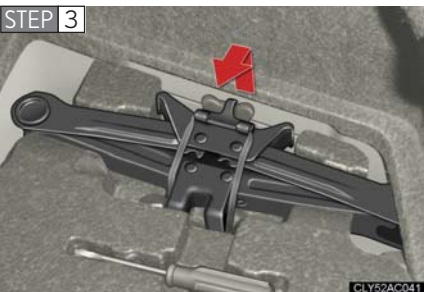
Taking out the jack



Lift up the hook of the panel on the trunk floor.



Secure the panel using the hook provided.



Remove the hook.

Taking out the spare tire

STEP 1



Lift up the hook of the panel on the trunk floor.

STEP 2



Secure the panel using the hook provided.

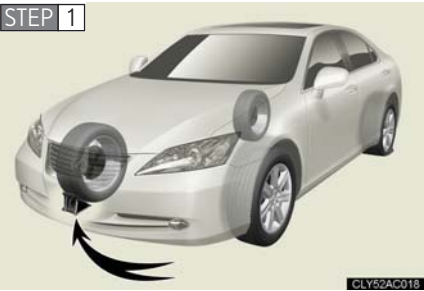
STEP 3



Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

Replacing a flat tire

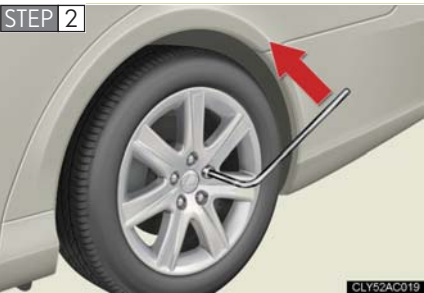
STEP 1



Chock the tires.

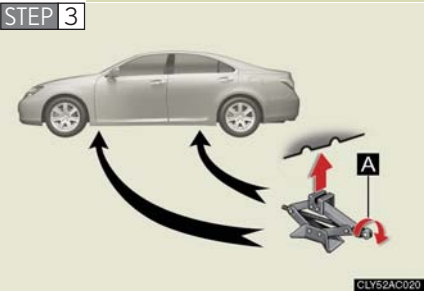
Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

STEP 2



Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

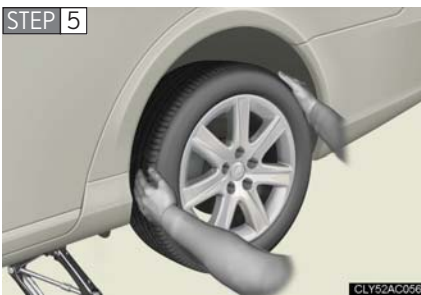
STEP 3



Turn the tire jack portion "A" by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.



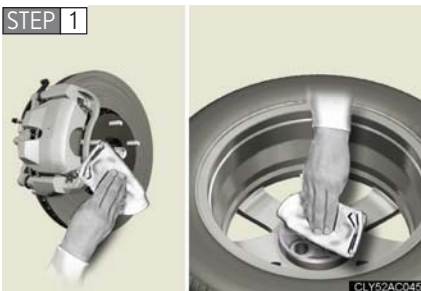
Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

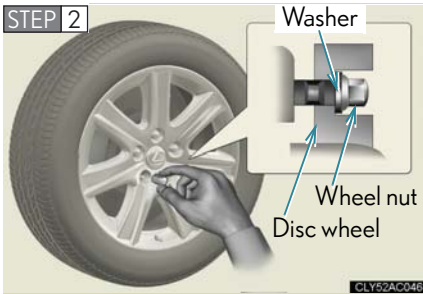
Installing the spare tire



Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the tire may come off the vehicle.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

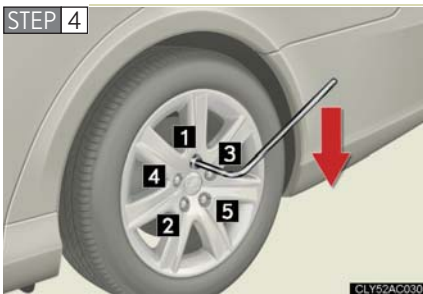


Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each nut by hand to approximately the same amount.

Turn the lug nuts until the washers come into contact with the wheel.



Lower the vehicle.



Firmly tighten each nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
10.5 kgf•m (103 N•m, 76 ft•lbf)

STEP 5 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

■ The compact spare tire

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label TEMPORARY USE ONLY on the tire sidewall.
Use the compact spare tire temporarily only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire pressure of the compact spare tire. (→P. 391)

■ If you have a flat front tire on a road covered with snow or ice

Install the compact spare tire on the rear of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the front tires.

STEP 1 Replace a rear tire with the compact spare tire.

STEP 2 Replace the flat front tire with the tire removed from the rear of the vehicle.

STEP 3 Fit tire chains to the front tires.

■ After completing the tire change

The tire pressure warning system must be reset.

CAUTION

■ Using the tire jack

Improper use of the tire jack may lead to death or injuries due to the vehicle suddenly falling off the jack.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire.
Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in it.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

■ Replacing a flat tire

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury.

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
The oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen, causing a serious accident.
Remove any oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 10.5 kgf•m (103 N•m, 76 ft•lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
Failure to follow these precautions could cause the nuts to loosen and the wheels may fall off, which could lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

 CAUTION**■ When using the spare tire**

- Remember that your spare tire is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use two spare tires simultaneously.
- Replace the spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, deceleration and braking, as well as sharp cornering.

■ Speed limit when using the compact spare tire

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 50 mph (80 km/h) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failing to observe this precaution may lead to an accident.

 NOTICE**■ Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire.**

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

■ Be careful when driving over bumps with the compact spare tire installed on the vehicle.

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.

■ Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.

Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start, even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 94), consider each of the following points.

■ **The engine will not start even when the starter motor operates normally.**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.

Add fuel to the vehicle.

- The engine may be flooded.

Try to restart the engine once more following correct starting procedures. (→P. 94)

- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system.

(→P. 52)

■ **The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 376)

- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

■ **The starter motor does not turn over**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as an open circuit or a blown fuse. However, a interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P. 371)

■ **The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 376)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be use as an interim measure to start the engine if the engine switch is functioning normally.

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Put the shift lever in P.

STEP 3 Set the engine switch to the ACC mode.

STEP 4 Push and hold the engine switch about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Turn the engine switch to the ACC mode.

STEP 3 Depress the brake pedal.



Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent.



Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

If you lose your keys

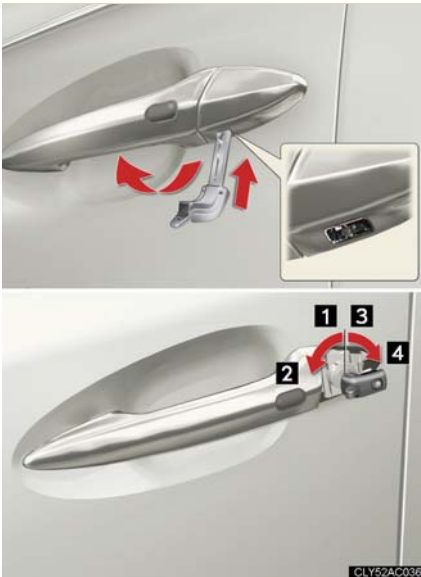
New genuine Lexus keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using one of the other keys or the key number stamped on your key number plate.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

When the electronic key battery is discharged

If the electronic key battery is discharged, the doors can be opened by the mechanical key. The engine can be still started by following the procedure.

Locking and unlocking the doors and key linked functions



Remove the cover on the driver's door handle using the mechanical key in order to perform the following operations.

- 1 Locks all doors
- 2 Closes the windows/standard moon roof (turn and hold)
- 3 Unlocks the door

Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again unlocks the other doors.

- 4 Opens the windows/standard moon roof (turn and hold)

Return the cover to the original position after use.

Starting the engine

STEP 1 Put the shift lever in P and apply the brakes.



Hold the electronic key close to the engine switch (within 0.4 in. [10 mm]). Make sure that the button side of the key is facing away from the engine switch.

An alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the key with the depleted battery if any of the doors will be opened and closed while this operation.

STEP 3 Press the engine switch within 5 seconds [after the buzzer sounds], keeping the brake pedal depressed.

In the event that the engine still cannot be started, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Replacing the key battery

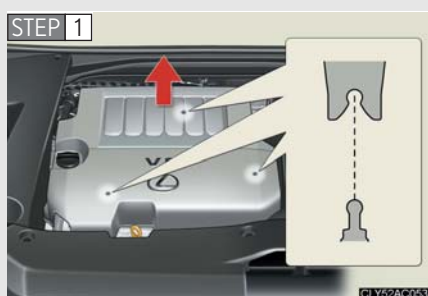
As this procedure is the temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic battery be replaced immediately. (→P. 313)

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the vehicle battery is discharged

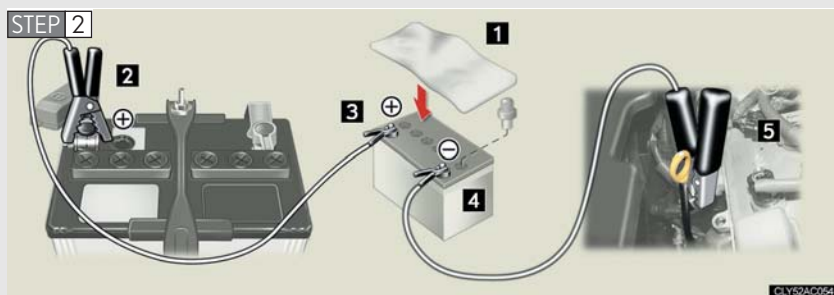
The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.

You can call your Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Lexus Customer Service Assistance.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your Lexus following the steps below.



Remove the cover.



Connecting the jumper cables.

- 1** If required, remove all vent plugs from the booster battery. Lay a cloth over the open vents on the booster battery. (This helps reduce the explosion hazard, personal injuries and burns.)
- 2** Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle
- 3** Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle
- 4** Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle
- 5** Connect the jumper cable to ground on your vehicle as shown in the illustration.

STEP 3 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

STEP 4 Open and close any of the doors with the engine switch OFF.

STEP 5 Maintain the engine speed on the second vehicle and turn the ignition switch to the IG-ON mode, then start the vehicle's engine.

STEP 6 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order in which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Avoiding a discharged battery

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is turned off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic, etc.

CAUTION

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery.

- Make sure the jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the jumper cables to come into contact with the "+" and "-" terminals.
- Do not allow open flame or use matches, cigarette lighters or smoke near the battery.

CAUTION

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery.

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damaging the vehicle

Do not pull- or push-start the vehicle, because the three-way catalytic converter may overheat and become a fire hazard.

■ When handling jumper cables

Be careful that the jumper cables do not become tangled in the cooling fan or any of the belts when connecting or disconnecting them.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If your vehicle overheats

If your engine overheats:

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the automatic air conditioning system.

STEP 2 Check to see if steam is coming out from under the hood.

If you see steam:

Stop the engine and carefully lift the hood.

If you do not see steam:

Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

STEP 3 Remove the access hole cover.

STEP 4 Check to see if the cooling fan is operating.

If the fan is operating:

Wait until the temperature of the engine (shown on the instrument cluster) begins to fall and then stop the engine.

If the fan is not operating:

Stop the engine immediately and call your local Lexus dealer.

STEP 5



After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the engine coolant level and inspect the radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

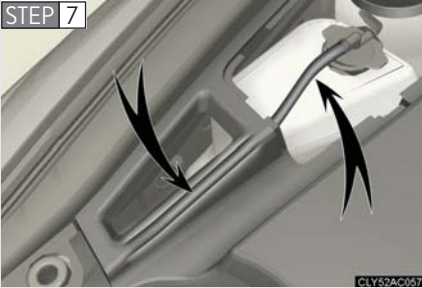
STEP 6



Add engine coolant if required.

Water can be used in an emergency measure if engine coolant is unavailable. (→P. 388)

STEP 7



Install the reservoir cap.

Make sure that the engine coolant reservoir hose is positioned as shown in the illustration.

Have the vehicle checked at your nearest Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Overheating

If you observe the following, your vehicle may be overheating.

- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
- Steam is coming from under the hood.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

- Keep hands and clothing away from the fan and other belts while the engine is running.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding engine coolant. When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow.

- Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and put the selector lever in P.
- Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the stuck tire.
- Place wood, stones or some other material to help provide traction under the tires.
- Restart the engine.
- Carefully apply the accelerator to free the vehicle.

CAUTION

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to rock the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear, to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the wheels and do not rev the engine.
- If the vehicle remains stuck after trying these procedures, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data

Dimensions and weight

Overall length		191.1 in. (4855 mm)
Overall width		71.7 in. (1820 mm)
Overall height *		57.1 in. (1450 mm)
Wheelbase		109.3 in. (2775 mm)
Tread	Front	62.0 in. (1575 mm)
	Rear	61.6 in. (1565 mm)
Vehicle capacity weight (Occupants + luggage)		900 lb. (410 kg)
Towing capacity (trailer weight + cargo weight)		1000 lb. (450 kg)

*: Unladen vehicle

Vehicle identification

■ Vehicle identification

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

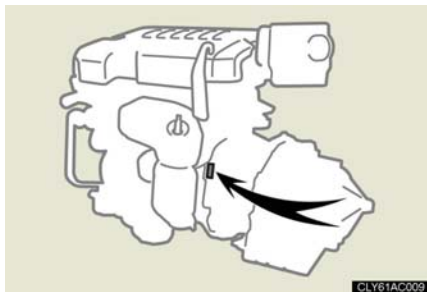


This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also on the Certification Label.

■ Engine number



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

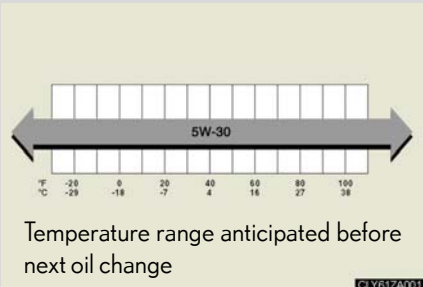
Engine

Model	2GR-FE
Type	6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	3.70 × 3.27 in. (94.0 × 83.0 mm)
Displacement	210.9 cu.in. (3456 cm ³)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only
Octane rating	91 (Research octane number 96) or higher
Fuel tank capacity	18.5 gal. (70 L, 15.4 Imp.gal)

Lubrication system

Oil capacity (drain and refill)	
with filter	6.4 qt. (6.1 L, 5.3 Imp.qt.)
without filter	6.0 qt. (5.7 L, 5.0 Imp.qt.)
Oil grade	ILSAC multi-grade engine oil
Recommended oil viscosity	Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the above grade and viscosity.  Temperature range anticipated before next oil change CLY612A001

*:5W-30 is an oil that provides optimal levels of fuel efficiency.

Oil viscosity

- The 5W portion of the oil viscosity rating indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 30 in 5W-30 indicates the oil viscosity when the oil is at its operating temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load condition.

Cooling system

Capacity	9.5 qt. (9.0 L, 7.9 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following. • “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

Ignition system

Spark plug	
Make	
DENSO	FK20HR11
Gap	0.043 in. (1.1 mm)

 NOTICE

Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only above spark plugs. Do not adjust gaps for your engine performance or smooth driveability.

Electrical system

Battery	
Open voltage at 68°F (20°C):	12.6 — 12.8 V Fully charged 12.2 — 12.4 V Half charged 11.8 — 12.0 V Discharged (Voltage checked 20 minutes after the key is removed with all the lights turned off)
Charging rates	5 A max.

Automatic Transaxle

Fluid capacity*	6.94 qt. (6.57 L, 5.78 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF Type WS

*: The fluid capacity is provide as a reference. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

 NOTICE

Using automatic transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF Type WS" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transaxle accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the automatic transaxle of your vehicle.

Brakes

Pedal clearance ^{*1}	2.4 in. (61 mm) Min.
Pedal free play	0.04 — 0.24 in. (1.0 — 6.0 mm)
Brake pad wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake lining wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake pedal travel ^{*2}	7 — 10 clicks
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

^{*1}: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 51 kgf (500 N, 112 lbf) while the engine is running.

^{*2}: Parking brake pedal travel when depressed with a force of 30.6 kgf (300 N, 67.4 lbf).

Steering

Free play	Less than 1.2 in. (30 mm)
Power steering fluid	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III

Tires and wheels

► Type A

Tire size	P215/55R17 93V
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions Front: 30 psi (210 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm² or bar) Rear: 30 psi (210 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm² or bar) Spare: 30 psi (210 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm² or bar) Driving at high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 4.3 psi (30 kPa, 0.3 kgf/cm² or bar) to the front tires and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall. Towing a trailer Front: 32 psi (220 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm² or bar) Rear: 32 psi (220 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm² or bar) Spare: 32 psi (220 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm² or bar)
Wheel size	17 × 7J
Wheel nut torque	10.5 kgf•m (103 N•m, 76 ft•lbf)

► Type B

Tire size	P215/55R17 93V, T155/70D17 110M (spare)
Front and rear tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions Front: 30 psi (210 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm ² or bar) Rear: 30 psi (210 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm ² or bar) Driving at high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 4.3 psi (30 kPa, 0.3 kgf/cm ² or bar) to the front tires and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall. Towing a trailer Front: 32 psi (220 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm ² or bar) Rear: 32 psi (220 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm ² or bar)
Spare tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm ² or bar)
Wheel size	17 × 7J, 17 × 4T (spare)
Wheel nut torque	10.5 kgf•m (103 N•m, 76 ft•lbf)

Light bulbs

	Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights (low beam)			
	Discharge bulbs	D4S	35	A
	Halogen bulbs	H7	55	B
	Headlights (high beam)	9005	60	C
	Front fog lights	9006	51	D
	Front turn signal lights	—	21	E
	Parking lights and front side marker lights	—	5	F
	Trunk light	—	5	G
	Rear side marker lights	194	3.8	F
	Stop/tail lights	7443	21/5	F
	Tail lights	7443	5	F
	Rear turn signal lights	—	21	E
	Back-up lights	921	16	F
Interior	Outer foot lights	—	5	F
	Vanity lights	—	8	F
	Door courtesy lights	—	5	F

- A: D4S discharge bulbs
B: H7 halogen bulbs
C: HB3 halogen bulbs
D: HB4 halogen bulbs
E: Wedge base bulbs (amber)
F: Wedge base bulbs (clear)
G: Double end bulbs

6-1. Specifications

Fuel information

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.

Premium unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher required for optimum engine performance. However, if such premium type cannot be obtained, you may use unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91).

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB3.5-M93 in Canada.

■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

■ If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

■ Gasoline quality

In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Lexus dealer.

■ Gasoline quality standards

- Automotive manufacturers in the US, Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied worldwide.
- The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the US, category 4 has been adopted.
- The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better performance.

■ Lexus recommends the use of gasoline containing detergent additives

- Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.
- All gasoline sold in the US contains detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems.

■ Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

■ Lexus does not recommend blended gasoline

- Lexus allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE.
- If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.
- Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

■ Lexus does not recommend gasoline containing MMT

Some gasoline contains octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

NOTICE

■ Notice on gasoline quality

- Do not use leaded gasoline.
Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle's three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.
- Do not use gasohol other than that stated here.
Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.
- Using unleaded gasoline with an octane number or rating lower than that stated here will cause persistent heavy knocking.
At worst, this will lead to engine damage.

■ Fuel-related poor driveability

If after using a different type of fuel, poor driveability is encountered (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

■ When refueling with gasohol

Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle's paint.

6-1. Specifications

Tire information

Typical tire symbols



1 Tire size (→P. 399)

2 DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (→P. 398)

3 Location of tread wear indicators (→P. 400)

4 Tire ply composition and materials

Ply is layers of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.

5 Radial tires or bias-ply tires

A radial tire has RADIAL on the sidewall. A tire not marked RADIAL is a bias-ply tire.

6 TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE

A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.

7 Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 402)

8 Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 402)

This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.

9 Uniform tire quality grading

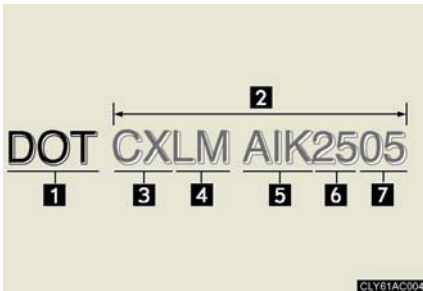
For details, see "Uniform tire quality grading" that follows.

10 Summer tire or all season tire

(→P. 400)

An all season tire has "M+S" on the sidewall. A tire not marked "M+S" is a summer tire.

Typical DOT and tire identification number (TIN)



1 DOT symbol*

2 Tire Identification Number (TIN)

3 Tire manufacturer's identification mark

4 Tire size code

5 Manufacturer's optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)

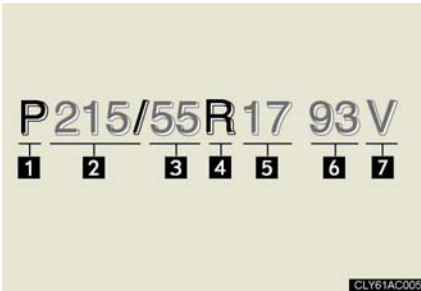
6 Manufacturing week

7 Manufacturing year

*:The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

Tire size

Typical tire size information



The illustration indicates typical tire size.

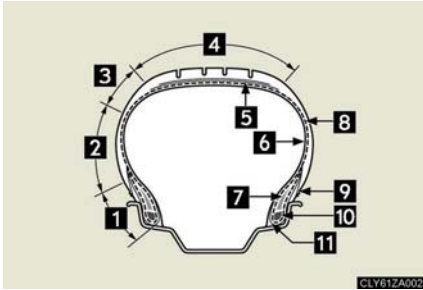
- 1 Tire use
(P = Passenger car,
T = Temporary use)
- 2 Section width (millimeters)
- 3 Aspect ratio
(tire height to section width)
- 4 Tire construction code
(R = Radial, D = Diagonal)
- 5 Wheel diameter (inches)
- 6 Load index (2 or 3 digits)
- 7 Speed symbol
(alphabet with one letter)

Tire dimensions



- 1 Section width
- 2 Tire height
- 3 Wheel diameter

Tire section names



- 1 Bead
- 2 Sidewall
- 3 Shoulder
- 4 Tread
- 5 Belt
- 6 Inner liner
- 7 Reinforcing rubber
- 8 Carcass
- 9 Rim lines
- 10 Bead wires
- 11 Chafer

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S.A. Department of Transportation.

It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

■ DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

■ Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

■ Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

■ Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded.
Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Glossary of tire terminology

Tire related term	Meaning
Accessory weight	The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)
Cold tire inflation pressure	Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition
Curb weight	The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine
Maximum inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire
Maximum loaded vehicle weight	The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight
Normal occupant weight	150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1* that follows

Tire related term	Meaning
Production options weight	The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim
Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)	The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity
Intended outboard sidewall	(a) The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or (b) The outward facing sidewall of asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle
Occupant distribution	Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below
Recommended inflation pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer.
Rim	A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated
Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)	Nominal diameter of the bead seat
Rim size designation	Rim diameter and width
Rim type designation	The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code
Rim width	Nominal distance between rim flanges

Tire related term	Meaning
Vehicle maximum load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two
Vehicle normal load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing it by two
Weather side	The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire

*: Table 1 — Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front
5 through 10	3	2 in front, 1 in second seat

6-2. Customization

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. Programming these preferences requires specialized equipment and may be performed by an authorized Lexus dealership.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 4)	Smart access system with push-button start	ON	OFF
	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	ON	OFF
	Operation signal (Buzzer)	ON	OFF

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Wireless remote control (→P. 16)	Wireless remote control	ON	OFF
	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step.
	Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	60 seconds	30 seconds
	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	ON	OFF
	Operation signal (Buzzer volume)	Level 8	Level 1 to 8
	Door lock buzzer	ON	OFF
	Trunk unlocking function	ON	OFF
	Trunk unlocking operation	Push and hold	Push twice
			One push
	Panic function	ON	OFF

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Door lock (→P.19)	Unlocking using a key	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step.
	Speed-detecting automatic door lock function	OFF	ON
	Opening driver's door unlocks all doors	OFF	ON
	Shifting gears to P unlocks all doors.	ON	OFF
	Shifting gears to position other than P locks all doors.	ON	OFF
Power windows (→P.42)	Linked mechanical key operation	ON (Open and close)	OFF
			Open only
			Close only
	Wireless remote control linked operation	ON (Open only)	OFF
	Linked entry function	ON	OFF

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Moon roof (standard type) (→P. 45)	Linked mechanical key operation	ON (Open and close)	OFF
			Open only
			Close only
	Linked operation of components when mechanical key is used	Slide only	Tilt only
	Wireless remote control linked operation	ON (Open only)	OFF
	Linked operation of components when wireless remote control used	Slide only	Tilt only
	Linked entry function	ON	OFF
Automatic light control system (→P. 112)	Light sensor sensitivity	Level 3	Level 1 to 5
	Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed	30 seconds	0 seconds
			60 seconds
			90 seconds
Lights (→P. 112)	Daytime running light system (USA only)	ON	OFF
Intuitive parking assist (→P. 131)	Back sensor operation display and buzzer	ON	OFF
	Buzzer volume	Level 3	Level 1 to 5
	Distance which a sensor detects	4.5 ft. (150 cm)	1.8 ft. (60 cm)

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Illumination (→P. 227)	Time elapsed before lights turn off	15 seconds	7.5 seconds
			30 seconds
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	ON	OFF
	Operation after the engine switch turned OFF	ON	OFF
	Front foot well lighting	ON	OFF
	Outer foot light	ON	OFF
Seat belt reminder (→P. 343)	Vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer	ON	OFF

6-3. Initialization

Items to initialize

After reconnecting or performing maintenance on the battery, the following items must be initialized for normal system operation.

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Engine oil maintenance data (USA only)	After changing engine oil	P. 284
Tire pressure warning system	When the standard tire pressure changes by replacing tires or wheels	P. 298

A	A/C (Air conditioning system)	162
	ABS (Anti-lock brake system)	137
	Adaptive front lighting system (AFS)	113
	AFS (Adaptive front lighting system)	113
	Air conditioning filter	311
	Air conditioning system (A/C)	
	Air conditioning filter	311
	Automatic air conditioning system	162
	Airbags	
	Airbag operating conditions	61
	Airbag precautions for your child	65
	Airbag warning light	342
	Curtain shield airbag operating conditions	62
	Curtain shield airbag precautions	65
	Front passenger occupant classification system	70
	General airbag precautions	65
	Locations of airbags	59
	Modification and disposal of airbags	69
	Proper driving posture	57, 65
	Side airbag operating conditions	62
	Side airbag precautions	65
	SRS airbags	59
	Alarm	54
	Antenna	176
	Anti-lock brake system (ABS)	137
	Armrest	245
	Ashtray	240

Audio system	
Antenna	176
AUX adapter	196
CD player/changer	179
MP3/WMA disc	185
Optimal use	193
Radio	172
Steering wheel audio switch	197
Automatic air conditioning system	162
Automatic headlight leveling system	114
Automatic light control system	112
Automatic transmission	
Automatic transmission	97
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P	372
S mode	98
AUX adapter	196
Auxiliary box	236
B	
BA (Brake assist)	137
Back-up lights	
Wattage	393
Battery	
Checking	293
If the vehicle has discharged battery	376
Preparing and checking before winter	147
Bluetooth®	199
Brake	
Fluid	290
Parking brake	101
Brake assist (BA)	137
Break-in tips	89

C

Care

Exterior	264
Interior	266
Seat belts	267
Cargo capacity	143
Cargo hooks	251
CD changer	179
CD player	179
Chains	149
Child restraint system (CRS)	
Booster seats, definition	75
Booster seats, installation	79
Convertible seats, definition	75
Convertible seats, installation	79
Front passenger occupant classification system	70
Infant seats, definition	75
Infant seats, installation	79
Installing CRS with lower anchorage	82
Installing CRS with seatbelts	79
Installing CRS with top straps	83
Child safety	
Airbag precautions	65
Battery precautions	295, 378
Child restraint system	75
Child-protectors	20
How your child should wear the seatbelt	35
Installing child restraints	78
Moon roof precautions	48
Power window lock switch	42
Power window precautions	44
Removed electronic key battery precautions	314
Seat belt comfort guide	33
Seat belt extender precautions	37

Seat belt precautions	36
Seat heater precautions	243
Trunk precautions	24
Child-protectors	20
Cigarette lighter	241
Cleaning	
Exterior	264
Interior	266
Seat belts	267
Clock	239
Coat hooks	249
Compass	258
Condenser	290
Console box	231
Cooling system	
Engine overheating	379
Cornering assist sensors	131
Cruise control	
Cruise control	119
Dynamic radar cruise control	122
Cup holders	234
Curtain shield airbags	59
Customizable features	413

D

Daytime running light system	113
Defogger	
Rear window	169
Side mirror	169
Dimension	384
Dinghy towing	159
Display	
Dynamic radar cruise control	122
Trip information	109
Warning message	350
Do-it-yourself maintenance	275

Door courtesy lights

Door courtesy lights.....	227
Wattage.....	393

Doors

Door glasses.....	42
Door lock.....	19
Side mirrors.....	40

Driver's seat belt reminder light343

Driving

Break-in tips.....	89
Correct posture.....	57
Procedures.....	88
Winter driving tips.....	147

Driving position memory 26

E

Electronic key

If your electronic key battery is discharged.....	374
--	-----

Emergency, in case of

If the engine will not start.....	370
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P.....	372
If the vehicle has discharged battery.....	376
If the warning buzzer sounds.....	341
If the warning light turns on.....	341
If the warning message is displayed.....	350
If you have a flat tire.....	361
If you lose your keys.....	373
If you think something is wrong.....	337
If your electronic key battery is discharged.....	374
If your vehicle becomes stuck.....	381

If your vehicle needs to be

towed.....	334
If your vehicle overheats.....	379

Engine

Compartment.....	282
Engine switch.....	94
Hood.....	279
How to start the engine.....	94
Identification number.....	385
If the engine will not start.....	370
Overheating.....	379

Engine compartment cover283

Engine coolant

Capacity.....	388
Checking.....	288
Preparing and checking before winter.....	147

Engine coolant temperature

gauge.....	102
------------	-----

Engine immobilizer system 52

Engine oil

Capacity.....	387
Checking.....	284
Preparing and checking before winter.....	147

Engine oil maintenance data287

Event data recorder339

F

Floor mat.....250

Fluid

Brake.....	290
Power steering fluid.....	291
Washer.....	296

Fog lights

Switch.....	115
Wattage.....	393

Foot well lighting	227
Front fog lights	
Switch	115
Wattage	393
Front passenger occupant classification system	70
Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	343
Front side marker lights	
Replacing light bulbs	327
Wattage	393
Front seats	
Adjustment	25
Driving position memory	26
Seat position memory	29
Front turn signal lights	
Replacing light bulbs	327
Wattage	393
Fuel	
Capacity	386
Fuel gauge	102
Fuel pump shut off system	338
Gas station information	425
Information	394
Refueling	49
Fuel filler door	49
Fuel pump shut off system	338
Fuses	315

G

Garage door opener	253
Gas station information	425
Gauges	102
Grocery bag hooks	251
Glove box	230
Glove box light	231

H

Hands-free phone system	
Bluetooth®	199
Hands-free phone system	199
Head restraints	
Adjusting	31
Headlight aim	324
Headlights	
Discharge headlights precautions	332
Replacing light bulbs	325
Switch	112
Wattage	393
Heaters	
Seat heaters	243
Side mirror	169
Hood	279
Hooks	
Cargo hooks	251
Coat hook	249
Grocery bag hooks	251

I

Identification number	
Engine	385
Vehicle	385
I/M test	274
Illuminated entry system	227
Indicator lights	104
Initialization	
Items to initialize	418
Inside rear view mirror	39
Interior lights	
Interior lights	229
Switch	229
Intuitive parking assist	131

J	Jack	
	Positioning the jack.....	280
	Replacing the wheel.....	361
	Jack handle	361
K	Keys	
	Electronic key.....	2
	Engine switch.....	94
	If you lose your keys.....	373
	If your electronic key battery is discharged.....	374
	Key number.....	2
	Keys.....	2
	Mechanical key.....	2
	Wireless remote control.....	16
L	Light bulbs	
	Replacing.....	325
	Wattage.....	393
	Lights	
	Door courtesy lights.....	227
	Fog light switch.....	115
	Headlights switch.....	112
	Interior light switch.....	227
	Outer foot lights.....	227
	Personal light switch.....	229
	Replacing light bulbs.....	325
	Shift lever lighting.....	227
	Turn signal lever.....	100
	Vanity lights.....	238
	Wattage.....	393
	Load capacity	146
M	Maintenance	
	Do-it-yourself maintenance.....	275
	General maintenance.....	271

	Maintenance data.....	384
	Maintenance requirements.....	269
	Meter	
	Instrument panel light control.....	103
	Meters.....	102
	Mirrors	
	Inside rear view mirror.....	39
	Side mirror heater.....	169
	Side mirrors.....	40
	Vanity mirrors.....	238
	Moon roof	45
	MP3 disc	185
	Multi-information display	108
O	Odometer	102
	Oil	
	Engine oil.....	284
	Opener	
	Fuel filler door.....	49
	Hood.....	279
	Trunk.....	23
	Outer foot lights	
	Outer foot lights.....	227
	Wattage.....	393
	Outside rear view mirrors	
	Adjusting and folding.....	40
	Driving position memory.....	26
	Outside temperature display	109
	Overhead console	233
	Overheating, Engine	379
P	Parking assist sensors	131
	Parking brake	101
	Parking lights	
	Replacing light bulbs.....	327
	Switch.....	112

Wattage	393
PCS (Pre-collision system)	140
Personal lights	
Switch	229
Power outlet	242
Power steering fluid	291
Power windows	42
Pre-collision system (PCS)	140

R

Radar cruise control	122
Radiator	290
Radio	172
RDS (Radio data system)	173
Rear side marker lights	
Replacing light bulbs	325
Wattage	393
Rear sunshade	246
Rear turn signal lights	
Replacing light bulbs	325
Wattage	393
Rear window defogger	169
Replacing	
Electronic key battery	313
Fuses	315
Light bulbs	325
Reporting safety defects for	
U.S.A. owners	412

S

Seat belts	
Adjusting the seat belt	33
Automatic Locking Retractor	
(ALR)	34
Child restraint system	
installation	78
Cleaning and maintaining	
the seat belts	267

Emergency Locking Retractor	
(ELR)	34
How to wear your seat belt	32
How your child should wear	
the seat belt	35
Pregnant women,	
proper seat belt use	34
Reminder light	343
Seat belt extenders	35
Seat belt pretensioners	33
Seat heaters	243
Seat position memory	29
Seat ventilators	243
Seating capacity	146
Seats	
Child seats/child restraint	
system installation	78
Cleaning	266
Driving position memory	26
Front passenger seat position	
memory	29
Head restraint	31
Properly sitting in the seat	57
Seat adjustment	25
Seat adjustment precautions	25
Seat heaters	243
Ventilated seats	243
Service reminder indicators	104
Shift lever	
Automatic transmission	97
If the shift lever cannot be	
shifted from P	372
Shift lever lighting	227
Shift lock system	372
Side airbags	59
Side marker lights	
Replacing light bulbs	327

Switch	112
Wattage.....	393
Side mirror	
Adjusting and folding	40
Driving position memory.....	26
Smart access system with	
push-button start	
Entry function.....	4
Starting the engine	94
Spare tire	
Inflation pressure.....	305
Spare tire.....	361
Spark plug.....	388
Specifications	384
Speedometer.....	102
Steering wheel	
Audio switches	197
Driving position memory.....	26
Power adjustment	38
Stop lights	
Replacing light bulbs.....	325
Wattage.....	393
Storage feature.....	230
Stuck	
If your vehicle becomes stuck.....	381
Sun visors	237
Sunshade	
Rear	246
Roof	47
Switch	
Engine switch.....	94
Fog light switch.....	115
Light switches.....	112
Power door lock switch.....	19
Power window switch.....	42
Window lock switch	42
Wipers and washer switch.....	116

T Tachometer	102
Tail lights	
Replacing light bulbs.....	325
Switch.....	112
Wattage	393
Theft deterrent system	
Alarm.....	54
Engine immobilizer system.....	52
Theft prevention labels.....	56
Tire inflation pressure	305
Tire information	
Glossary	402
Size.....	399
Tire identification number.....	398
Uniform tire quality grading.....	400
Tires	
Chains.....	149
Checking.....	297
If you have a flat tire	361
Inflation pressure	305
Inflation pressure sensor	298
Information	397
Replacing	361
Rotating tires.....	297
Size.....	391
Snow tires.....	150
Spare tire.....	361
Tools.....	361
Total load capacity	146
Towing	
Dinghy towing	159
Emergency towing	334
Trailer towing	152
TRAC (Traction control).....	137
Traction control (TRAC).....	137
Trip meter	102

Trunk	
Extending a space	251
Opener.....	23
Trunk light	
Trunk light	24
Wattage	393
Turn signal lights	
Replacing light bulbs	325
Switch.....	100
Wattage	393

V

Vanity lights	
Vanity lights.....	238
Wattage	393
Vanity mirrors.....	238
Vehicle identification number	385
Vehicle stability control (VSC)	137
Ventilators.....	243
VSC (Vehicle stability control)	137

W

Warning buzzers	
Brake system	341
Downshifting.....	99
Open door	343
Seat belt reminder	343
Warning lights	
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ...	342
Brake assist system	342
Brake system	341
Charging system	342
Low fuel level.....	343
Low tire pressure warning	
light.....	343
Malfunction indicator lamp	342
Master warning light.....	343
Open door	343

Pre-collision system.....	342
Pretensioners.....	342
Rear light failure warning light....	343
Seat belt reminder light.....	343
SRS airbags.....	342

Warning messages

Dynamic radar	
cruise control.....	351, 353
Engine oil level	353
Engine oil maintenance	353
Engine oil pressure	350
Hood.....	353
Intuitive parking assist	
sensor.....	351, 353
Moon roof	353
Open door.....	353
Parking brake	353
Pre-collision system.....	351, 353
Smart access system with	
push-button start.....	358
Steering lock.....	351
Traction control (TRAC)	351
Trunk	353
Vehicle stability control	
(VSC).....	351
Washer fluid	353

Washer

Checking	296
Preparing and checking	
before winter	147
Switch.....	116

Washing and waxing..... 264

Weight

Cargo capacity	143
Load limits	146
Weight.....	384

Wheels.....309

Window glasses	42
Window lock switch	42
Windows	
Power windows.....	42
Rear window defogger	169
Washer	116
Windshield wipers	116
Wireless remote control	
Replacing the battery	313
Wireless remote control.....	16
WMA disc	185

What to do if...
What to do if...

	A tire punctures	P. 361	If you have a flat tire
	The engine does not start	P. 370	If the engine will not start
		P. 52	Engine immobilizer system
		P. 374	If the key battery is discharged
	The shift lever cannot be moved out	P. 372	If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P
	The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone	P. 379	If your vehicle overheats
	Steam can be seen coming from under the hood		
	The key is lost	P. 373	If you lose your keys
	The battery runs out	P. 376	If the battery is discharged
	The doors cannot be locked	P. 19	Doors
	The horn begins to sound	P. 54	Alarm
	The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand	P. 381	If the vehicle becomes stuck



The warning light or indicator light comes on

P. 341 If the warning light turns on



■ Warning lights



Brake system warning light

or



P. 341



Malfunction indicator lamp

or



P. 342



"ABS" warning light

or



P. 342



Driver's seat belt reminder light

P. 343



Front passenger's seat belt reminder light

or



P. 343



Low fuel level warning light

P. 343



SRS warning light

P. 342



Master warning light

P. 343



Open door warning light

P. 343



Pre-collision system warning light

P. 342



Rear light failure warning light

P. 343



Tire pressure warning light

P. 343



Charging system warning light

P. 342

GAS STATION INFORMATION



Fuel tank capacity	18.5 gal. (70L, 15.4 Imp.gal.)	
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only	P. 50, 386
Cold tire inflation pressure		P. 391
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill)		qt. (L, Imp.qt.)
	With filler	6.4 (6.1, 5.3)
	Without filler	6.0 (5.7, 5.0)
Engine oil type	Toyota Genuine Motor Oil or equivalent Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil Recommended oil viscosity: SAE-5W-30	P. 387

List of Warning/Indicator Lights



The units used on the speedometer, the tachometer gauge display, indicators and warning lights may differ depending on the model / type.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

-  (USA) Brake system warning light
-  (Canada)

Stop the vehicle immediately.

-  Charging system warning light
-  (USA) Malfunction indicator lamp
-  (Canada)

Have the vehicle inspected immediately.

-  SRS warning light
-  Pre-collision system warning light^{*1}
-  (USA) ABS warning light
-  (Canada)

For further information, refer to the Owner's Manual.

Follow the correction procedure.



Open door warning light



Low fuel level warning light



Driver's seat belt reminder light



Rear light failure warning light



Front passenger's seat belt reminder light^{*2}



(On the center cluster)

Front passenger's seat belt reminder light^{*3}



Low tire pressure warning light



Master warning light

See the Owner's Manual



Turn signal indicator



Headlight high beam indicator



Headlight indicator (USA)



Tail light indicator (Canada)



Front fog light indicator



Cruise control indicator



AFS OFF indicator^{*1}



Slip indicator



SRS airbag cut-off indicator^{*2}



SRS airbag cut-off indicator^{*3}



Shift position and shift range indicators

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: With navigation system

^{*3}: Without navigation system

For further information, refer to the Owner's Manual.

Spare Tire and Tool Compartment

Jack, tools, and spare tire

► Ground spare tire



- 1 Jack handle
- 2 Spare tire
- 3 Wrench
- 4 Jack

► Compact spare tire



- 1 Jack handle
- 2 Spare tire
- 3 Wrench
- 4 Jack

Taking out the spare tire



- 1 Lift up the luggage mat, and remove the spare wheel cover.
- 2 Loosen the center fastener and remove the spare tire.

If the electronic key battery becomes discharged

Unlocking and locking the doors



To unlock or lock the vehicle, use the mechanical key to remove the lock cover on the driver's door handle. The mechanical key is stored inside the electronic key.

- 1 Locks
- 2 Unlocks

Starting the engine



- 1 Depress the brake pedal.
- 2 Hold the electronic key close to the engine switch (within 0.4 in. [10 mm]), making sure that the button side of the key is facing toward you.
- 3 Press the engine switch within 5 seconds of the buzzer, keeping the brake pedal depressed.

For instructions on replacing the electronic key battery, refer to the Owner's Manual. If you need further assistance, contact your Lexus dealer.

What to do if ...

If the engine doesn't start

Make sure that the correct operating procedures have been followed.



Brake pedal

Make sure that the brake pedal is firmly depressed when attempting to start the engine.
(→P.17)



Steering wheel lock

Make sure that the steering wheel lock is released.

To release the steering wheel lock, gently turn the wheel left or right while pressing the engine switch.

If the engine still does not start, see the Owner's Manual for more information or contact your Lexus dealer.

Electronic Key Alarm

The electronic key alarm uses an alarm and warning messages to indicate that the electronic key has been used improperly. Take appropriate measure in response to any warning messages that are displayed. In some cases, an alarm may sound without an accompanying warning message. If so, follow the correction procedure in the table below.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 2 seconds	Tried to lock the doors using the entry function while the electronic key is still inside the passenger compartment	Retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment and lock the doors again.
	Tried to exit the vehicle with the electronic key and lock the doors without first turning the engine switch OFF	Turn the engine switch OFF and lock the doors again.
	Closed the trunk while the electronic key is still inside the trunk and all doors are locked	Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid.
Exterior alarm sounds once for 10 seconds	Tried to lock the vehicle using the entry function while a door is open	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.
Interior alarm sounds continuously	Tried to open the door and exit the vehicle without shifting the shift lever to P	Shift the shift lever to P.
Interior alarm pings continuously	Switched to ACC mode while the driver's door is open (Opened the driver's door when the engine switch is in ACC mode.)	Turn the engine switch OFF and close the driver's door.
	Turned the engine switch OFF while the driver's door is open	Close the driver's door.

Customizing Your Lexus

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. Programming these preferences requires specialized equipment and may be performed by an authorized Lexus dealership.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Smart access system with push-button start	Smart access system with push-button start	ON	OFF
	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	ON	OFF
	Operation signal (Buzzer)	ON	OFF
Wireless remote control	Wireless remote control	ON	OFF
	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step.
	Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	60 seconds	30 seconds
	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	ON	OFF
	Operation signal (Buzzer volume)	Level 8	Level 1 to 8
	Door lock buzzer	ON	OFF
	Trunk unlocking function	ON	OFF
	Trunk unlocking operation	Push and hold	Push twice One push
	Panic function	ON	OFF

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Door lock	Unlocking using a key	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors locked in one step.
	Speed-detecting automatic door lock function	OFF	ON
	Opening driver's door unlocks all doors	OFF	ON
	Shifting gears to P unlocks all doors.	ON	OFF
	Shifting gears to position other than P locks all doors.	ON	OFF
Power windows	Linked mechanical key operation	ON (Open and close)	OFF
			Open only Close only
	Wireless remote control linked operation	ON (Open only)	OFF
Moon roof (Standard type)	Linked entry function	ON	OFF
	Linked mechanical key operation	ON (Open and close)	OFF
			Open only Close only
	Linked operation of components when mechanical key is used	Slide only	Tilt only
	Wireless remote control linked operation	ON (Open only)	OFF
Automatic light control system	Linked operation of components when wireless remote control used	Slide only	Tilt only
	Linked entry function	ON	OFF
	Light sensor sensitivity	Level 3	Levels 1 to 5
	Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed	30 seconds	0 seconds
			60 seconds
			90 seconds

Entering and Exiting

Before Driving

When Driving

Rain and Night Driving

Driving Comfort

Opening and Closing

What to do if ...

Customizing Your Lexus

Customizing Your Lexus

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Lights	Daytime running lights system (USA only)	ON	OFF
Intuitive parking assist	Back sensor operation display and buzzer	ON	OFF
	Buzzer volume	Level 3	Level 1 to 5
	Distance which a sensor detects	4.5 ft. (150 cm)	1.8 ft. (60 cm)
Illumination	Time elapsed before lights turn off	15 seconds	7.5 seconds 30 seconds
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	ON	OFF
	Operation after the engine switch turned OFF	ON	OFF
	Front foot well lighting	ON	OFF
	Outer foot light	ON	OFF
Seat belt reminder	Vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer	ON	OFF



Your Lexus dealer

Your Lexus dealer will provide quality maintenance and any other assistance you may require.

If there is not a Lexus dealer near you, please call the following number:

■ U.S. OWNERS

- In the U.S. mainland or Canada:

Lexus Roadside Assistance

1-800-25-LEXUS or **1-800-255-3987** (Toll-Free)

- In Hawaii:

Servco Automotive Roadside Assistance/Customer Services

1-800-25-LEXUS or **1-800-255-3987** (Toll-Free)

■ CANADIAN OWNERS

- In Canada or the U.S. mainland:

Lexus Roadside Assistance/Customer Service

1-800-26-LEXUS or **1-800-265-3987** (Toll-Free)

Please access our **websites** for further information.

- The U.S. mainland: www.lexus.com

- Hawaii: www.servcolexus.com

- Canada : www.lexus.ca

©2006 TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

All rights reserved. This material may not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission of Toyota Motor Corporation.

Contents

The Quick Guide is not intended as a substitute for your *Owner's Manual*. We strongly encourage you to review the *Owner's Manual* and supplementary manuals so you will have a better understanding of your vehicle's capabilities and limitations.

Overview ●

Topic 1

Entering and Exiting

- Keys ▶ P.7
- Smart Access System with Push-button Start ▶ P.8
- Theft Deterrent System ▶ P.9



Topic 2

Before Driving

- Seats ▶ P.11
- Driving and Seat Position Memory System ▶ P.12
- Head Restraints ▶ P.13
- Seatbelts ▶ P.13
- Outside Rear View Mirrors ▶ P.14
- Anti-glare Inside Rear View Mirror ▶ P.14
- Steering Wheel ▶ P.15

Topic 3

When Driving

- Starting ▶ P.17
- Automatic Transmission ▶ P.18
- Parking Brake ▶ P.19
- Turn Signal Lever ▶ P.19
- Emergency Flasher Switch ▶ P.20
- Intuitive Parking Assist ▶ P.20
- Multi-information Display ▶ P.21



- Cruise Control ▶ P.22
- Dynamic Radar Cruise Control ▶ P.23



Topic 4

Rain and Night Driving

- Headlights ▶ P.25
- Fog Lights ▶ P.26
- Windshield Wipers and Washers ▶ P.26
- Rear Window and Outside Rear View Mirror Defoggers ▶ P.27
- Instrument Panel Light Control ▶ P.27

Topic 5

Driving Comfort

- Audio System ▶ P.29
- Air Conditioning System ▶ P.32
- Ashtrays ▶ P.33
- Glove Box ▶ P.33
- Auxiliary Box ▶ P.33
- Console Boxes ▶ P.34
- Cup Holders ▶ P.35
- Interior Lights ▶ P.36



- Compass ▶ P.36
- Seat Heaters and Ventilators ▶ P.37
- Rear Sunshade ▶ P.37
- Extended Trunk ▶ P.38
- Luggage Mat ▶ P.39

Topic 6

Opening and Closing

- Door Locks ▶ P.41
- Power Windows ▶ P.42
- Trunk ▶ P.42
- Fuel Tank Cap ▶ P.43
- Hood ▶ P.43
- Moon Roof ▶ P.44



What to do if ...

Responding to warning/indicator lights and other problems that may arise.

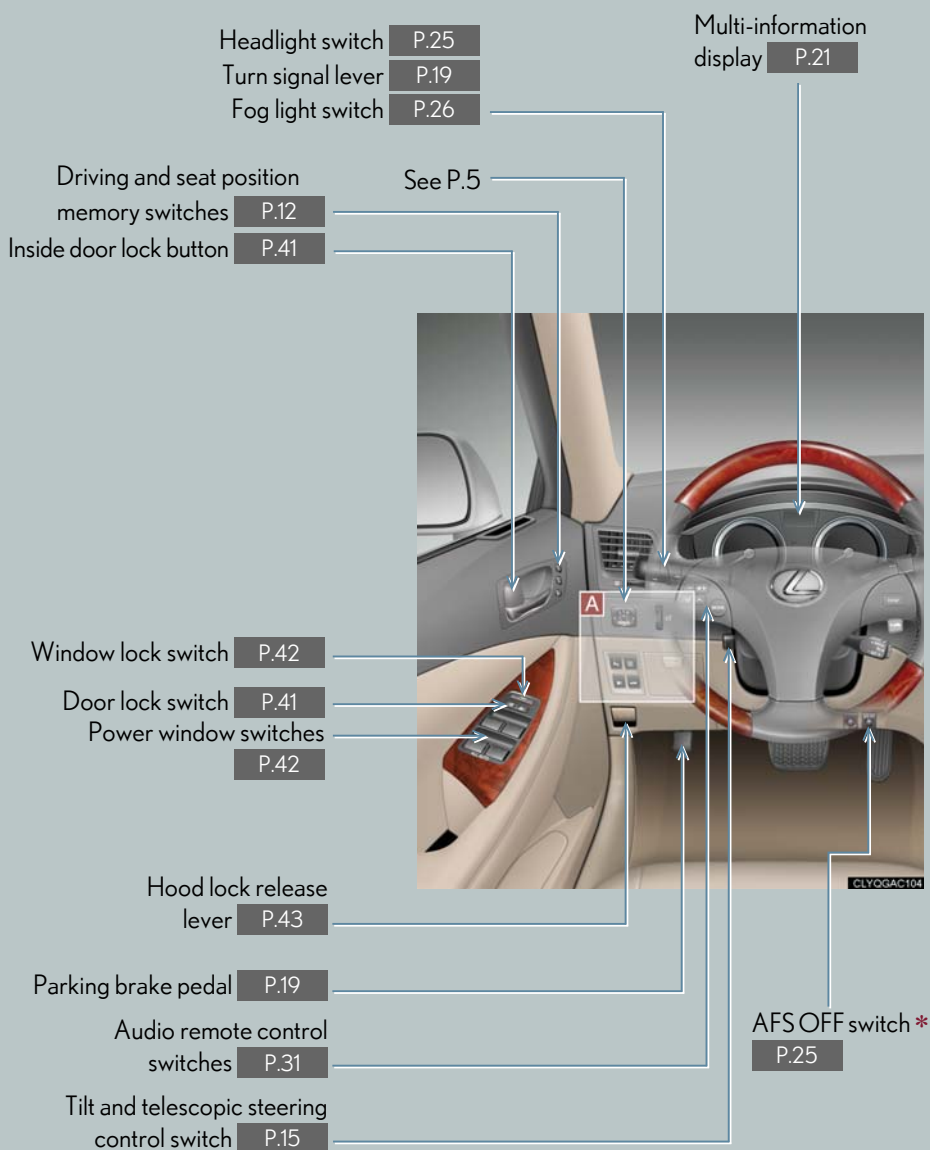
Customizing Your Lexus

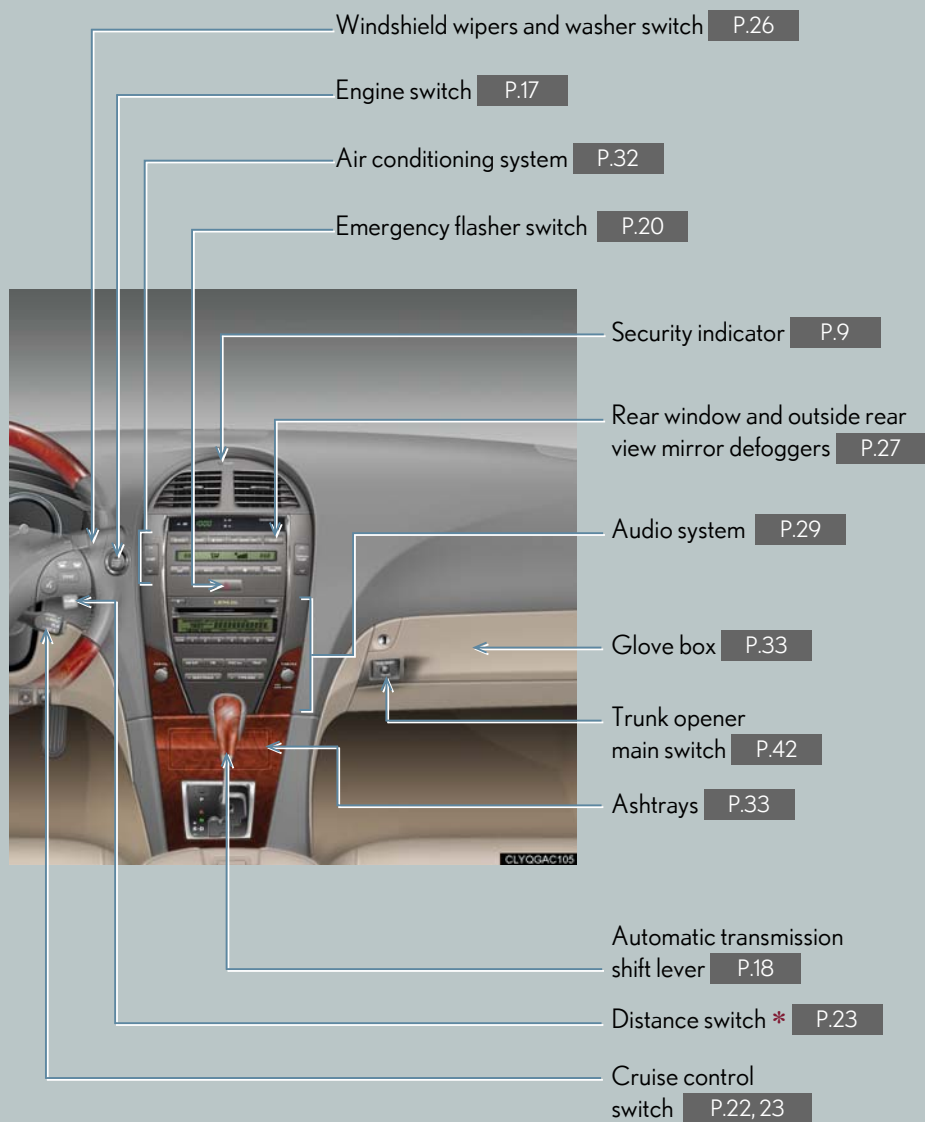
A list of features that can be customized.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustration may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Overview

Instrument Panel





* : If equipped

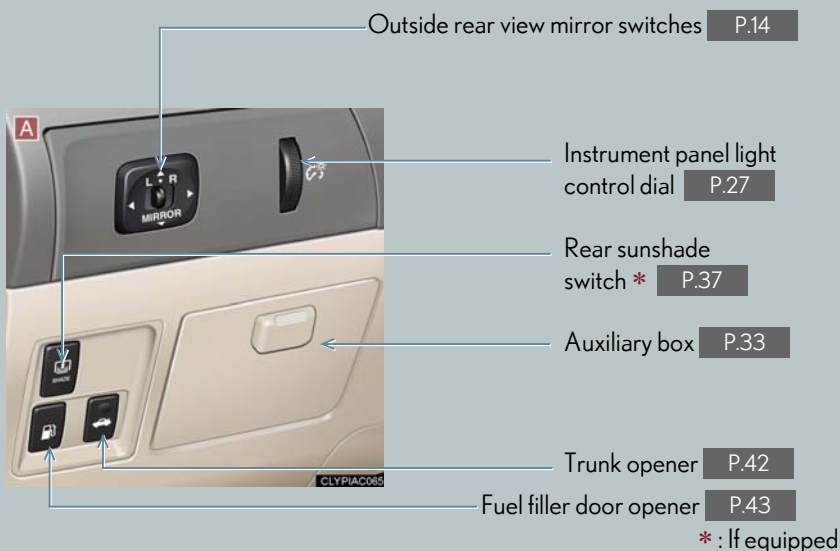
Overview

Instrument Panel

► Type A



► Type B





Topic 1

Entering and Exiting

Keys	7
Smart Access System with Push-button Start	8
Theft Deterrent System.....	9



Topic 2

Before Driving

Seats	11
Driving and Seat Position	
Memory System.....	12
Head Restraints	13
Seatbelts.....	13
Outside Rear View Mirrors	14
Anti-glare Inside Rear View Mirror.....	14
Steering Wheel	15



Topic 3

When Driving

Starting	17
Automatic Transmission.....	18
Parking Brake.....	19
Turn Signal Lever.....	19
Emergency Flasher Switch.....	20
Intuitive Parking Assist	20
Multi-information Display.....	21
Cruise Control	22
Dynamic Radar Cruise Control.....	23



Topic 4

Rain and Night Driving

Headlights.....	25
Fog Lights.....	26
Windshield Wipers and Washers	26
Rear Window and Outside Rear View	
Mirror Defoggers.....	27
Instrument Panel Light Control	27



Topic 5

Driving Comfort

Audio System (without navigation system)...	29
Air Conditioning System	
(without navigation system).....	32
Ashtrays.....	33
Glove Box	33
Auxiliary Box.....	33
Console Boxes.....	34
Cup Holders.....	35
Interior Lights.....	36
Compass.....	36
Seat Heaters and Ventilators	37
Rear Sunshade	37
Extended Trunk.....	38
Luggage Mat.....	39



Topic 6

Opening and Closing

Door Locks	41
Power Windows	42
Trunk	42
Fuel Tank Cap	43
Hood	43
Moon Roof	44



Keys

Electronic key



Smart access system with push-button start
(→P.8, 17)

Mechanical key



- Locks and unlocks the doors
- Locks and unlocks the glove box
- Locks and unlocks the armrest door

The mechanical key is stored inside the electronic key. To extract the key, release the latch and pull.

Wireless remote control



- 1 Locks the doors
- 2 Unlocks the doors
- 3 Opens the trunk
- 4 Sounds the alarm

Use the alarm to attract attention to the vehicle in order to help deter break-ins.
(To stop the alarm, push any button on the wireless remote control.)

The wireless remote control can also be used to open the windows and moon roof (standard type).

To do so, simply press and hold  button.

Smart Access System with Push-button Start

The smart access system with push-button start allows you to enter and exit the vehicle or start the engine by simply carrying the electronic key in your pocket or bag. For details on starting the engine, see page 17.

■ Entering the vehicle



To unlock the vehicle, simply grasp any of the door handles.

■ Exiting the vehicle



To lock the vehicle, press the lock button on any of the door handles.

To close the windows and the moon roof (standard type), press and hold the lock button.

■ Opening the trunk



To open the trunk, press the trunk release button.

For details on what to do when the electronic key battery becomes discharged, see page 48.



Theft Deterrent System

The theft deterrent system includes the following features to help protect your vehicle from theft.

Engine immobilizer system



The engine immobilizer system prevents the engine from being started in the event that an attempt is made to start the vehicle using an unregistered key.

The security indicator light flashes to indicate that the system is set.

Alarm

The system sounds the alarm and flashes lights when forcible entry is detected.

To set the alarm: lock all the doors from outside the vehicle. The security indicator light comes on to indicate that the alarm is in its preparation state. When the indicator light begins to flash, the system is armed.

To deactivate or stop the alarm: start the engine, or unlock the doors or trunk using the electronic key or the wireless remote control.

Steering lock

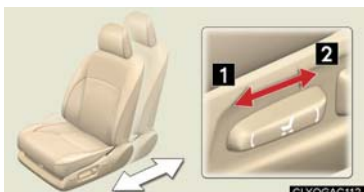


The steering wheel locks when the engine switch is in OFF mode.

To release the steering wheel lock, gently turn the wheel left or right while pressing the engine switch.

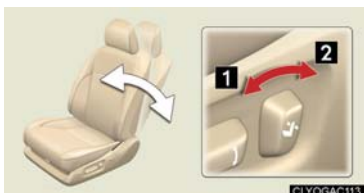
Seats

■ Adjusting seat position



- 1 Moves the seat forward
- 2 Moves the seat backward

■ Adjusting seatback angle



- 1 Tilts the seatback forward
- 2 Reclines the seatback

■ Adjusting the seat cushion



- 1 Raises and lowers the front of the cushion
- 2 Raises and lowers the entire seat

■ Adjusting the lumbar support



- 1 Firmer
- 2 Softer

■ Adjusting the seat cushion length (if equipped)



- 1 Longer
- 2 Shorter

Driving and Seat Position Memory System (If Equipped)

The seats can be returned to a previously set position by simply pressing a button.

The position of the steering wheel and the outside rear view mirrors is adjusted along with the driver's seat.

Positions can be conveniently recorded for the vehicle's primary drivers and passengers.

Setting memory positions



While holding down the SET button, press and hold one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) until you hear a beep.

The current position of the seat, as well as the position of the steering wheel and the outside rear view mirrors (for the driver's seat only) is recorded.

Recalling memory positions



Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2).

Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation (driver's seat only)

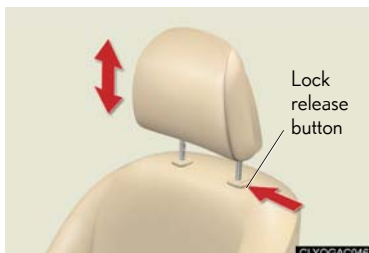


While holding down the desired memory button, press and hold either the  or  button on the wireless remote control until you hear a beep.

Linking driving position memory to the door unlock operation allows the memory position to be recalled automatically when the driver's door is opened. (The linked function does not operate if the driver's door is unlocked using the mechanical key or manually from inside the vehicle.)

Head Restraints

Height adjustment



To raise: pull the head restraint upward.

To lower: push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.

Seatbelts

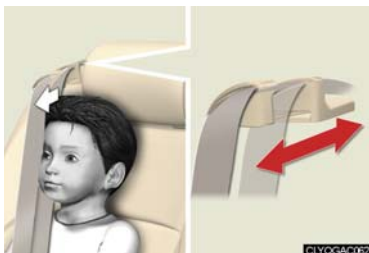
Adjusting shoulder belt height (front seats only)



To raise: pull the anchor upward.

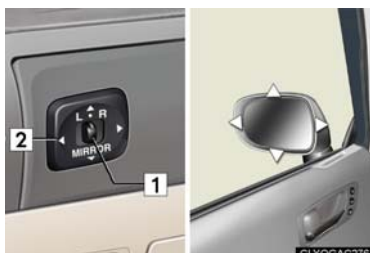
To lower: depress the button and push the anchor down.

Seatbelt comfort guides (outside rear seats only)



If the shoulder belt sits close to the neck, slide the comfort guide forward.

Outside Rear View Mirrors



- 1 To select the mirror you wish to adjust (L or R), use the master switch.
- 2 To adjust mirror angle, use the control switch.

On some models, the mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing. To disable this function, set the master switch in the neutral position (between L and R).

Anti-glare Inside Rear View Mirror

The anti-glare mirror uses a sensor to detect light from vehicles behind and automatically reduces glare.

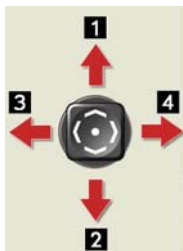


To turn AUTO mode ON/OFF, press the AUTO button.

The indicator comes on when AUTO mode is turned ON.

When the inside rear view mirror is switched to AUTO mode, the outside rear view mirrors are also switched to the AUTO mode automatically.

Steering Wheel



- 1 Up
- 2 Down
- 3 Away from the driver
- 4 Toward the driver

The steering wheel retracts automatically when the engine switch is turned OFF to allow for easy exit and entry. The steering wheel returns automatically to its previously set position when the engine switch is switched to ACC or IG-ON mode.

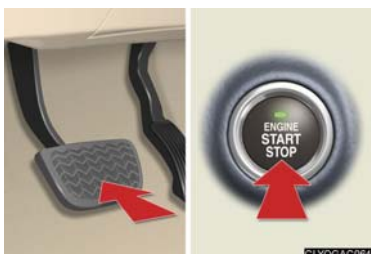


Starting

With the electronic key on your person, the engine can be started by simply pressing the engine switch, while depressing the brake pedal.

(The mechanical key cannot be used to start the engine.)

Starting the engine



Make sure the parking brake is engaged and the shift lever is in P.

- 1 Depress the brake pedal.

The engine switch indicator light turns green.

- 2 Press the engine switch.

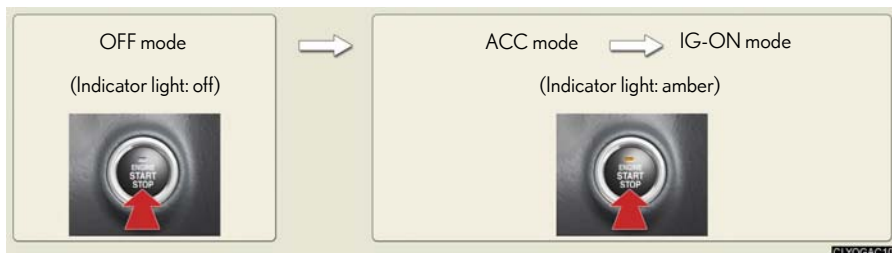
Stopping the engine

- 1 Engage the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

- 2 Press the engine switch.

Changing power modes

To change power modes without turning on the engine, press the engine switch without depressing the brake pedal. The modes can be changed in the following order:



Automatic Transmission

Shift positions



- P Park
- R Reverse
- N Neutral (drive not engaged)
- D Drive
- S S mode

← The vehicle can only be shifted out of P when the engine switch is in IG-ON mode and the brake pedal is depressed.

S mode

S mode allows the driver to select the shift range manually based on driving conditions.



- 1 Shift the shift lever to S.



- 2 To upshift: shift the shift lever toward "+".
To downshift: shift the shift lever toward "-".

The selected shift range is displayed on the instrument cluster.



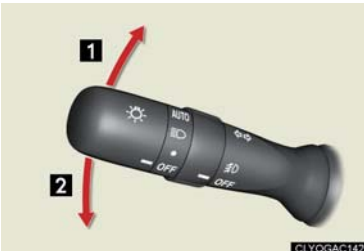
Parking Brake



To set the parking brake: firmly depress the parking brake pedal.

To release the parking brake: depress the parking brake pedal again.

Turn Signal Lever



- 1 Right turn signal
- 2 Left turn signal

To signal a lane change, move the lever partway and hold.

Emergency Flasher Switch



Engaging the emergency flasher switch causes all the turn signal lights to flash.

The emergency flashers can be operated even when the engine switch is OFF.

Intuitive Parking Assist (If Equipped)

The system uses a screen display and buzzer to inform the driver of obstacles near the vehicle when parking or driving at low speed.

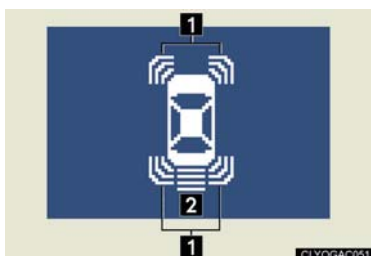
Turning the system on and off



Press the switch.

When ON, an indicator on the switch comes on to inform the driver that the function is operational.

Screen display



Sensors are used to detect obstacles near the vehicle. The distance to a detected obstacle is shown by the number of indicator bars.

- 1** Indicates obstacles detected by the corner sensors
- 2** Indicates obstacles detected by the back sensors



Multi-information Display

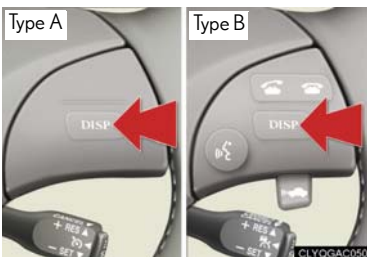
The multi-information display shows information about your vehicle, including the items shown below.

Display information



- Trip information
 - Outside temperature
 - Driving range
 - Average fuel consumption
 - Average fuel consumption after refueling
 - Current fuel consumption
 - Average vehicle speed
- Dynamic radar cruise control settings (if equipped)
- Intuitive parking assist information (if equipped)
- Warning messages

Changing the display of trip information



Trip information items can be switched by pressing the DISP switch.

- When using the intuitive parking assist system or dynamic radar cruise control, the appropriate display is shown on the screen.
- In the event that a problem is detected in any of the vehicle's systems, a warning message is shown on the multi-information display.

Cruise Control (If Equipped)

Cruise control allows the driver to maintain a constant speed without having to operate the accelerator pedal.

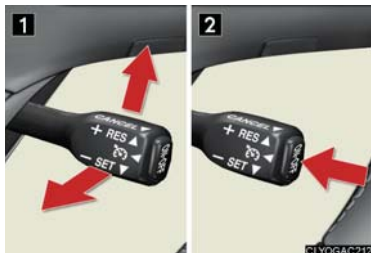
Use for highway driving or when traveling at a constant speed for long periods of time.

Setting the speed



- 1 Press the ON-OFF button.
The system will turn on.
- 2 Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed, and then push the lever down.
This sets the speed in the cruise control memory.

Canceling



- 1 To temporarily cancel the cruise control, pull the lever toward you. To resume the cruise control, push the lever up.
- 2 To turn the system off, press the ON-OFF button.

Adjusting the speed setting



- To increase speed:** push the lever up.
To decrease speed: push the lever down.

Release the lever when the desired speed is reached.

Dynamic Radar Cruise Control (If Equipped)

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

■ Cruise control display



Cruise control settings are shown on the multi-information display.

- 1 Vehicle ahead indicator
- 2 Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
- 3 Preset speed

■ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode



- 1 Press the ON-OFF button.
- 2 Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed, and then push the lever down. Following distance can be adjusted using the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control switch.

■ Conventional (constant speed) cruise control mode



- 1 Press the ON-OFF button.
- 2 Push the lever forward and hold for at least one second.
- 3 Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed, and then push the lever down.

■ Canceling



To temporarily cancel the dynamic radar cruise control, pull the lever.

To turn the system off, press the ON-OFF button.

■ Adjusting the speed setting



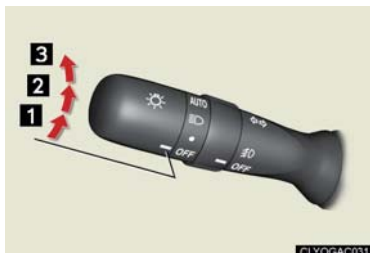
To increase speed: push the lever up.

To decrease speed: push the lever down.

Release the lever when the desired speed is reached.

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode maintains the preset cruising speed as long as no vehicle is detected ahead.

Headlights



- 1 The instrument panel, the side marker, parking, tail and license plate lights turn on.
- 2 The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.
- 3 The headlights and parking lights turn on/off automatically in accordance with ambient light levels.

To engage the high beams, push the lever forward.
To flash the high beams, pull the lever and hold.

■ AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) (if equipped)

AFS improves visibility on curves by automatically adjusting the horizontal orientation of the headlights in accordance with vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

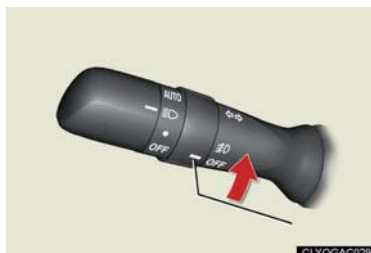


To cancel the system, press the AFS OFF button.

- 1 OFF
- 2 ON

The indicator comes on when the system is off.

Fog Lights



The fog lights can be used only when the head-lights (low beam) are on.

Windshield Wipers and Washers

■ Intermittent wiper with interval adjuster (if equipped)



MIST: operates once

INT: intermittent operation*

LO: low speed

HI: high speed

*: Wiper interval can be adjusted by turning the band.

To spray washer fluid, pull the lever.

The wipers will operate automatically.

■ Rain-sensing windshield wipers (if equipped)



MIST: operates once

AUTO: automatic operation*

LO: low speed

HI: high speed

*: Sensitivity can be adjusted by turning the band.

To spray washer fluid, pull the lever.

The wipers will operate automatically.

Rear Window and Outside Rear View Mirror Defoggers



To defog the rear window and the outside mirrors, press the button.

Press again to cancel.

The system turns off automatically after 15 to 60 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.

Instrument Panel Light Control



1 To brighten: turn the knob upward.

2 To dim: turn the knob downward.

When the headlight switch is turned to ON, the brightness will be reduced slightly unless the control dial is turned fully on.

Audio System (without navigation system)

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Basic operation



- 1 Power/Volume
- 2 Audio sources
- 3 Sound quality modes
Listening position
ASL (Automatic Sound Levelizer)

Audio sources

AM·SAT: AM radio/Satellite radio*

FM: FM radio

DISC·AUX: CD player/Auxiliary audio device

*: The optional Lexus genuine satellite tuner and antenna allows you to receive and play XM® satellite radio broadcasts. (Subscription is required. For detailed information, see the Owner's Manual.)

Radio



- 1 Scan
All radio stations: press
Preset radio stations: press and hold
- 2 Station presets
- 3 Text messages
- 4 Traffic information
- 5 Tune
- 6 RDS genre select
- 7 Seek

Entering station presets

- 1 Select the desired station by using the tune, the seek or the scan function.
- 2 Press and hold one of the preset buttons (1~6) until you hear a beep, indicating that the station is set.

CD player

Playing an audio CD



- 1 Eject
- 2 CD load
- 3 Text information
- 4 CD select
- 5 Repeat
 - Current track: press
 - Current CD: press and hold
- 6 Track select/reverse/fast-forward
- 7 Random playback
 - Current CD: press
 - All CDs: press and hold
- 8 Scan
 - All tracks in current CD: press
 - First track of each CD: press and hold

Playing a CD with MP3/WMA files



- 1 Eject
- 2 CD load
- 3 Text information
- 4 Folder select
- 5 File select
- 6 CD select
- 7 Repeat
 - Current file: press
 - Current folders: press and hold
- 8 File select/reverse/fast-forward
- 9 Random playback
 - Current folder: press
 - Current CD: press and hold
- 10 Scan
 - All files in current folder: press
 - First file of each folder: press and hold



■ Loading a CD

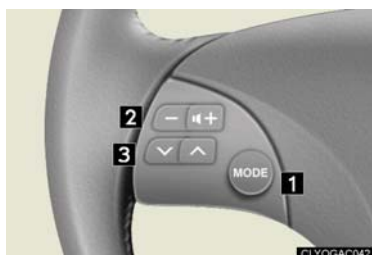
- 1 Press the LOAD button.
WAIT is shown on the display.
- 2 Insert a CD when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green.
The display changes from WAIT to LOAD.

■ Loading multiple CDs

- 1 Press and hold the LOAD button until you hear a beep.
WAIT is shown on the display.
- 2 Insert a CD when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green.
The display changes from WAIT to LOAD.
The indicator on the slot turns to amber when the CD is inserted.
- 3 Insert the next CD when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green again.
Repeat the procedure for the remaining CDs.
To stop the operation, press the DISC·AUX button.

■ Remote control (steering wheel switches)

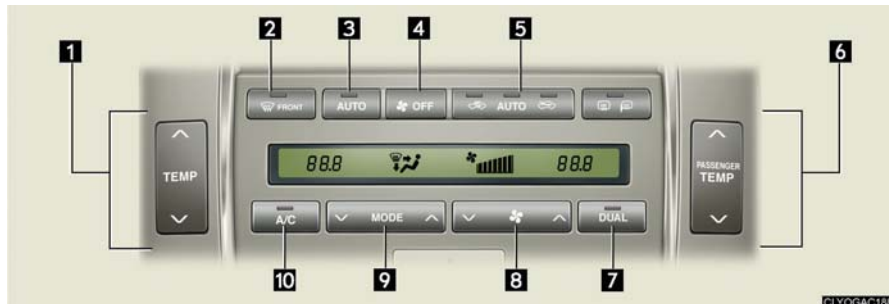
The audio system can be operated using the remote control located on the steering wheel.



- 1 Power on/change mode: press
Power off: press and hold
- 2 Volume
- 3 Audio source
Radio: radio tuner
CD: disc/track/file (MP3/WMA) select

Air Conditioning System (without navigation system)

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".



- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Driver side temperature control | 6 Passenger side temperature control |
| 2 Windshield defog/defrost | 7 Dual mode switch |
| 3 Switch to automatic mode | 8 Fan speed controls |
| 4 OFF button | 9 Air flow controls |
| 5 Outside air/recirculated air mode switch | 10 A/C switch |

Using the automatic mode



- 1 Press the AUTO button.
- 2 Adjust the temperature using the TEMP button.

Adjusting the temperature in DUAL mode

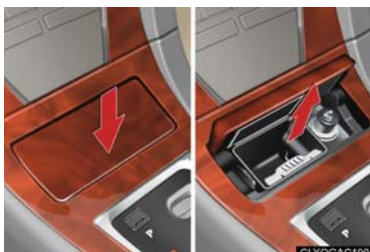


In DUAL mode, driver and passenger side temperature settings can be adjusted separately.

Press the PASSENGER TEMP button to adjust the temperature for the passenger side.

To cancel the DUAL mode, press the DUAL button.

Ashtrays



To remove the ashtray, push the back part of the lid and pull the ashtray upwards.

Glove Box



- 1 Open: press the button.
- 2 Lock
- 3 Unlock

The glove box can be locked and unlocked using the mechanical key.

Auxiliary Box



To open, press down the knob.

Console Boxes



► Front

To open, press the button.

To close, pull up the lever.



► Overhead console box

To open, press the lid.

There is a power outlet located in the front console box.



Cup Holders



► Front

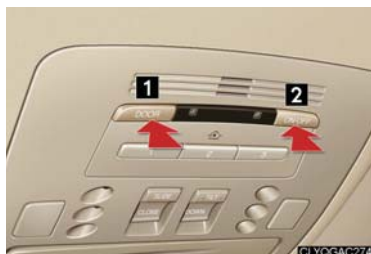
To open, press down on the front of the lid.



► Rear

To open, pull up the knob.

Interior Lights



1 Door position ON/OFF

2 ON/OFF

Compass



To display the compass, press and hold the AUTO button for 3 or more seconds.

To cancel the display, press and hold the AUTO button again for 3 or more seconds.

Entering and Exiting

Before Driving

When Driving

Rain and
Night Driving

Driving Comfort

Opening and Closing

What to do if ...

Customizing
Your Lexus

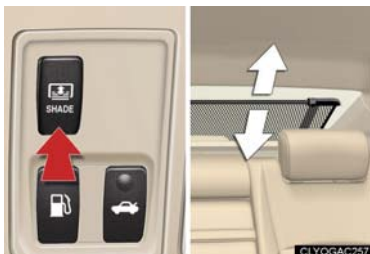
Seat Heaters and Ventilators (If Equipped)



Seat heaters: turn the dial toward **1**.

Ventilators: turn the dial toward **2**.

Rear Sunshade (If Equipped)



To raise the rear sunshade, press the switch.
Press the switch again to lower it.

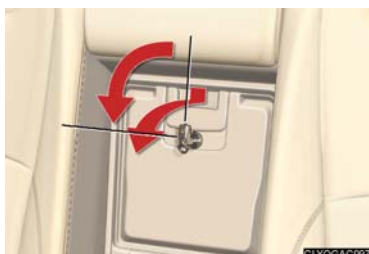
The sunshade automatically lowers to ensure visibility when reversing.

Extended Trunk

Longer items can be loaded in the vehicle by utilizing the trunk space and rear seat area.



- 1 Pull down the rear armrest.



- 2 Unlock the armrest door using the mechanical key.

Luggage Mat



Pull the lever upwards when lifting the luggage mat up.



The lever can be hooked on the edge of the trunk.

Door Locks

■ Locking the vehicle from inside



► Inside lock button

- 1 Locks
- 2 Unlocks



► Door lock switch

Operates all door locks.

- 1 Locks
- 2 Unlocks

■ Locking the vehicle from outside

- Using the entry function or wireless remote control (→P.7, 8)

■ Rear door child-protector lock



Setting the switch to the LOCK position prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Always set the child protector locks when children are seated in the rear seat.

Power Windows



1 Power window switches

To open: press the switch.

To close: pull the switch up.

Fully pulling up and releasing the switches causes the windows to close fully. Fully pressing down and releasing the switches causes the windows to open fully.

2 Window lock switch

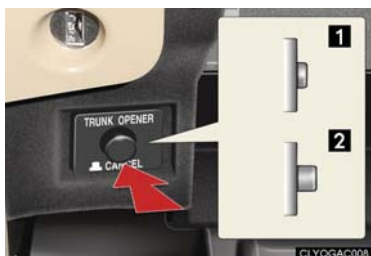
The window lock switch disables the operation of all windows other than the driver's door window.

Trunk

Trunk opener



To open the trunk from inside the cabin, simply press the trunk opener.



To disable the trunk opener, turn OFF the main switch in the glove box.

1 ON

2 OFF

When the trunk opener is disabled, the trunk cannot be opened using the wireless remote control or the entry function.

Entry function and wireless remote control

→P.7, 8

Fuel Tank Cap



1 Press the fuel filler door opener.



2 Slowly remove the cap by turning it counter-clockwise.

After the cap is removed, it can be hung on the inside of the fuel filler door.

Hood



1 Pull the hood release lever.



2 Insert your fingers under the hood, pull the hood catch up and lift the hood.

Moon Roof

Standard type



► Opening and closing

1 Opens

The moon roof stops slightly before the fully opened position.

To fully open, press the switch again.

2 Closes



► Tilt up and down

1 Tilts up

2 Tilts down

Glass type



► Opening and closing

1 Opens

2 Closes (press and hold)

The moon roof stops once.

To fully close, push and hold the switch again.



► Tilt up and down

1 Tilts up

2 Tilts down (press and hold)

Regular maintenance is essential to obtaining the highest level of performance, safety and reliability from your Lexus. It can also enhance your vehicle's resale value. This section of the *Warranty and Services Guide* is designed to help you make sure your vehicle receives proper and timely maintenance. It includes factory-recommended maintenance guidelines as well as logs in which to document your vehicle's maintenance history.

In addition to scheduled maintenance, your Lexus requires ongoing general

maintenance such as fluid checks and visual inspections. These procedures are listed on page 41 of this booklet and described in detail in the "Maintenance" section of the *Owner's Manual*.

With proper maintenance and care, your vehicle will last longer and deliver more dependable, economical performance. Follow this booklet's recommendations and you'll enjoy maximum reliability and peace of mind from your Lexus for many years to come.



Maintaining your vehicle according to the recommendations in this booklet is required to ensure that your warranty coverage remains intact. You should keep detailed records of vehicle maintenance, including date of service, mileage at time of service and a description of service and/or parts installation performed. The maintenance logs in this booklet are a good place to record this information. If you sell your vehicle, be sure to give your maintenance records to the new owner.

Lexus will not deny a warranty claim solely because you do not have records to show that you maintained your vehicle. However, damage or failures caused by lack of proper maintenance are not covered under warranty.

Maintenance and repair services may be performed by you or by any automotive service provider you choose. Lexus will not deny a warranty claim solely because you used a service

provider other than a Lexus dealership for maintenance and repairs. However, damage or failures caused by improper maintenance or repairs are not covered under warranty.

Your dealer may recommend more frequent maintenance intervals or more maintenance services than those listed in the scheduled maintenance log. These additional services are not required to maintain your warranty coverage. Ask your dealer for an explanation of any recommended maintenance not included in the scheduled maintenance log.

For a complete description of Lexus warranty coverages, see pages 16–32 of this booklet.

To ensure that your vehicle receives first-quality service and factory-authorized parts, Lexus recommends having maintenance performed by an authorized Lexus dealership. To locate your nearest authorized Lexus dealership, contact Lexus Customer Satisfaction at (800) 255-3987 or log on to www.lexus.com.

Lexus dealership technicians are experts in the maintenance and repair of Lexus vehicles. They stay current on the latest service information through Lexus technical bulletins, service publications and training courses. Many are also certified through the Lexus Commitment to Perfection Certification Program, which requires specialized, state-of-the-art training as well as rigorous exams through both Lexus and the National Institute for Automotive Service Excellence.

Additionally, when you have your vehicle serviced at a Lexus dealership, your service information is recorded in the Lexus National Service History database. This is the first database of its kind in the automotive industry. It can be accessed by

any Lexus dealership in the U.S. — a great convenience if you relocate or need to have your vehicle serviced while traveling.

You can be confident you're getting the best possible service for your vehicle when you take it to a Lexus dealership. Don't trust your investment to anything less than a team of Lexus specialists.

Maintenance and repairs not performed by an authorized Lexus dealership should be performed by a qualified technician following procedures in Lexus service and repair publications.

In addition to scheduled maintenance, your Lexus requires ongoing general maintenance such as fluid checks and visual inspections. The recommended guidelines for inspections are listed below. Please refer to the "Maintenance" section of the *Owner's Manual* for a detailed description of inspection procedures.

When Refueling

When refueling, perform these inspections:

- Check engine oil level using the dipstick
- Visually check engine coolant level on the see-through reservoir (under cover)
- Visually check brake fluid level on the see-through reservoir
- Visually check power steering fluid level on the see-through reservoir (under cover)
- Visually check condition of battery (under cover)
- Check level of windshield washer fluid

Every 30 Days

At least once every 30 days, perform these inspections:

- Check tire pressure
- Check tires for damage and wear

Determining Your Maintenance Interval: Months vs. Mileage

Lexus recommends obtaining scheduled maintenance for your vehicle every six months or 5,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

For example:

- If at six months you have driven less than 5,000 miles, you should obtain maintenance at **six months**; don't wait until 5,000 miles.
- If you drive 5,000 miles in less than six months, you should obtain maintenance at **5,000 miles**; don't wait until six months.

Be sure to keep an eye on your mileage so that you obtain maintenance when recommended. If you are a low-mileage driver, mark your calendar to remind yourself to obtain maintenance every six months.

Complimentary First Scheduled Maintenance Service

Lexus provides your first scheduled maintenance service at no charge. The service is performed at six months or 5,000 miles, whichever occurs first, and includes the service items listed on page 44. To obtain this complimentary scheduled maintenance service, contact your Lexus dealership.

Complimentary Lexus
Personalized Settings

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. For example, doors can be programmed to remain locked when you shift into "Park."

Programming of these preferences is performed

once at no
charge, pro-



LEXUS
PERSONALIZED
SETTINGS

vided you obtain the service at the time of delivery or within 12 months of the vehicle's in-service date. Programming of your Lexus Personalized Settings requires special equipment and may be performed only by an authorized Lexus dealership.

To obtain your Lexus Personalized Settings, please contact your Lexus dealership. The dealership may verify performance of the service in the box on this page.

Lexus Personalized Settings*

Must be obtained within 12 months
of vehicle's in-service date.

In-service date: _____

Date personalized
settings programmed: _____

Notes:

**This service is complimentary when performed
by an authorized Lexus dealership.*

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

6 Months or 5,000 Miles¹

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

12 Months or 10,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

¹This service is complimentary when performed by an authorized Lexus dealership.

18 Months or 15,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Clean air conditioner filter
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

___ Axle shaft boots	___ Engine coolant (see page 65)
___ Ball joints and dust covers	___ Exhaust pipes and mountings
___ Body	___ Rack and pinion assembly
___ Brake lines and hoses	___ Steering linkage and boots

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

24 Months or 20,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

30 Months or 25,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

36 Months or 30,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Measure brake pad thickness and rotor runout
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter
- ☐ Replace brake fluid
- ☐ Replace engine air filter
- ☐ Road-test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

___ Axle shaft boots ___ Ball joints and dust covers ___ Body ___ Brake lines and hoses ___ Engine coolant (see page 65) ___ Exhaust pipes and mountings ___ Fuel lines and connections, fuel tank band and fuel tank vapor vent system hoses	___ Fuel tank cap gasket ___ Rack and pinion assembly ___ Steering linkage and boots ___ Transmission for signs of leakage
---	---

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

42 Months or 35,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

48 Months or 40,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

54 Months or 45,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Clean air conditioner filter
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

___ Axle shaft boots	___ Engine coolant (see page 65)
___ Ball joints and dust covers	___ Exhaust pipes and mountings
___ Body	___ Rack and pinion assembly
___ Brake lines and hoses	___ Steering linkage and boots

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

60 Months or 50,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

66 Months or 55,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

72 Months or 60,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Measure brake pad thickness and rotor runout
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter
- ☐ Replace brake fluid
- ☐ Replace engine air filter
- ☐ Road-test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ☐ Axle shaft boots
 - ☐ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ☐ Body
 - ☐ Brake lines and hoses
 - ☐ Drive belt
 - ☐ Engine coolant (see page 65)
 - ☐ Exhaust pipes and mountings
 - ☐ Fuel lines and connections, fuel tank band and fuel tank vapor vent system hoses
 - ☐ Fuel tank cap gasket
 - ☐ Rack and pinion assembly
 - ☐ Steering linkage and boots
 - ☐ Transmission for signs of leakage

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Replace transmission fluid
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

78 Months or 65,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

84 Months or 70,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

90 Months or 75,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Clean air conditioner filter
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

___ Axle shaft boots	___ Engine coolant (see page 65)
___ Ball joints and dust covers	___ Exhaust pipes and mountings
___ Body	___ Rack and pinion assembly
___ Brake lines and hoses	___ Steering linkage and boots
___ Drive belt	

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

96 Months or 80,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

102 Months or 85,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

108 Months or 90,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Measure brake pad thickness and rotor runout
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter
- ☐ Replace brake fluid
- ☐ Replace engine air filter
- ☐ Road-test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

___ Axle shaft boots ___ Ball joints and dust covers ___ Body ___ Brake lines and hoses ___ Drive belt ___ Engine coolant (see page 65) ___ Exhaust pipes and mountings	___ Fuel lines and connections, fuel tank band and fuel tank vapor vent system hoses ___ Fuel tank cap gasket ___ Rack and pinion assembly ___ Steering linkage and boots ___ Transmission for signs of leakage
---	---

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

114 Months or 95,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

120 Months or 100,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Replace engine coolant (see page 65)
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

126 Months or 105,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Clean air conditioner filter
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

___ Axle shaft boots	___ Drive belt
___ Ball joints and dust covers	___ Exhaust pipes and mountings
___ Body	___ Rack and pinion assembly
___ Brake lines and hoses	___ Steering linkage and boots

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

132 Months or 110,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

138 Months or 115,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Inspect engine coolant (see page 65)
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

144 Months or 120,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Measure brake pad thickness and rotor runout
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter
- ☐ Replace brake fluid
- ☐ Replace engine air filter
- ☐ Replace spark plugs¹ (use Denso FK20HR11 plugs or equivalent)
- ☐ Road-test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

☐ Axle shaft boots ☐ Ball joints and dust covers ☐ Body ☐ Brake lines and hoses ☐ Drive belt ☐ Exhaust pipes and mountings ☐ Fuel lines and connections, fuel tank band and fuel tank vapor vent system hoses	☐ Fuel tank cap gasket ☐ Rack and pinion assembly ☐ Steering linkage and boots ☐ Transmission for signs of leakage
--	---

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Replace transmission fluid
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

¹Required under the terms of the Emission Control Warranty.

150 Months or 125,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

156 Months or 130,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Inspect engine coolant (see page 65)
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

162 Months or 135,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Clean air conditioner filter
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

☐ Axle shaft boots	☐ Drive belt
☐ Ball joints and dust covers	☐ Exhaust pipes and mountings
☐ Body	☐ Rack and pinion assembly
☐ Brake lines and hoses	☐ Steering linkage and boots

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

168 Months or 140,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

174 Months or 145,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Inspect engine coolant (see page 65)
- ☐ Visually inspect brake pads and rotors
- ☐ Road-test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Inspect axle shaft boots
- ☐ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

180 Months or 150,000 Miles

- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter; reset reminder light
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Measure brake pad thickness and rotor runout
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter
- ☐ Replace brake fluid
- ☐ Replace engine air filter
- ☐ Replace engine coolant (see page 65)
- ☐ Road-test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

☐ Axle shaft boots ☐ Ball joints and dust covers ☐ Body ☐ Brake lines and hoses ☐ Drive belt ☐ Exhaust pipes and mountings ☐ Fuel lines and connections, fuel tank band and fuel tank vapor vent system hoses	☐ Fuel tank cap gasket ☐ Rack and pinion assembly ☐ Steering linkage and boots ☐ Transmission for signs of leakage
--	---

Additional Maintenance Required If You Drive Primarily Under the Following Conditions

Driving on dirt roads or dusty roads:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Driving while towing:

- ☐ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

Date: _____ Mileage: _____

Notes:

The following descriptions are provided to give you a better understanding of the maintenance services that should be performed on your vehicle. The scheduled maintenance log indicates at which time/mileage intervals each service should be performed. Please note that many maintenance services should be performed only by a qualified technician.

For further information on maintenance services that you can perform yourself, see the maintenance sections of your *Owner's Manual*.

Air Conditioner Filter

Clean or replace at specified intervals. More frequent cleaning or replacement may be required when driving in dusty conditions.

Axle Shaft Boots

Check the axle shaft boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration and damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease. A qualified technician should perform these operations.

Ball Joints and Dust Covers

Check the suspension and steering linkage ball joints for looseness and damage. Check all dust covers for deterioration and damage. A qualified technician should perform these inspections.

Body Inspection

Visually check for corrosion, scratches and other damage. Check outer body panels, inner panels of the hood and doors, and underneath the vehicle. Apply touch-up paint to any chips and scratches or have them repaired by a qualified technician.

Brake Fluid

Replace using fluid type specified in your *Owner's Manual*. A qualified technician should perform this operation.

Brake Lines and Hoses

Visually inspect for proper installation. Check for chafing, cracks, deterioration and signs of leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts. A qualified technician should perform these operations.

Brake Pads/Rotors and Parking Brake Linings/Drums

Check brake pads and rotors for excessive wear; check brake rotors for runout. Check brake calipers for fluid leakage. Check the parking brake linings (shoes) and drums for scoring, burning, fluid leakage, broken parts and excessive wear. A qualified technician should perform these inspections.

Drive Belt

Inspect for cracks, excessive wear and oiliness. Check the belt tension and adjust if necessary. Replace the belt if it is damaged.

Engine Air Filter

Check for damage, excessive wear and oiliness. Replace if necessary.

Engine Coolant

When inspecting, visually check the engine coolant level on the see-through reservoir. Add coolant as necessary. When replacing, drain and flush the cooling system and refill with coolant. Always use Genuine Toyota Super Long-Life Coolant or similar high-quality non-silicate, non-amine, non-borate ethylene-glycol coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology (i.e., a combination

of low phosphates and organic acids). A qualified technician should perform these operations.

Note: Initial replacement is at 120 months/100,000 miles. Replace every 60 months/50,000 miles thereafter.

Engine Oil and Oil Filter

Replace the oil filter and drain and refill the engine oil at specified intervals. For recommended oil grade and viscosity, refer to your *Owner's Manual*. The ES 350 is equipped with a replaceable oil-filter element and oil-filter cap O-ring; replace both at each oil change. For instructions on how to reset the reminder light, refer to your *Owner's Manual*.

Engine Valve Clearance

The ES 350 is equipped with hydraulic valve lash adjusters that require no periodic clearance inspection or adjustment.

Exhaust Pipes and Mountings

Visually inspect the exhaust pipes, muffler and hangers for cracks, deterioration and damage. Start the engine and listen carefully for any exhaust leakage. Tighten connections and replace parts as necessary.

Fuel Lines and Connections, Fuel Tank Band and Fuel Tank Vapor Vent System Hoses

Visually inspect for corrosion, damage, cracks, and loose or leaking connections. Tighten connections and replace parts as necessary.

Fuel Tank Cap Gasket

Visually inspect for cracks, deterioration and damage and replace if necessary.

Nuts and Bolts on Chassis

Check that tightness of the seat-mounting bolts and front/rear suspension-member retaining bolts matches torque measurements specified in the *Repair Manual*.

Power Steering Fluid

When inspecting, visually check the power steering fluid level on the see-through reservoir. Add fluid as necessary. For fluid specifications, refer to your *Owner's Manual*.

Rack and Pinion Assembly

Inspect the rack and pinion assembly for signs of leakage, damage and loose electrical connections. Tighten connections and if you discover any leakage or damage, have it repaired immediately by a qualified technician.

Road Test

While driving the vehicle, check for proper operation of engine, transmission, brakes and steering. Also check for abnormal noise or vibration from any part of the vehicle.

Spark Plugs

Replace at specified interval. To ensure optimum engine performance, replace only with Denso FK20HR11 plugs or equivalent. A qualified technician should perform this operation.

Steering Linkage and Boots

With the vehicle stopped, check for excessive freeplay in the steering wheel. Inspect the linkage for bending and damage and the dust boots for deterioration, cracks and damage. Replace any damaged parts. A qualified technician should perform these operations.

Timing Chain

The ES 350 is equipped with a timing chain that requires no periodic inspection.

Tire Rotation

Tires should be rotated according to the instructions in your *Owner's Manual*. When rotating tires, check pressure and check for damage and uneven wear. If the spare is not rotated, check the condition and pressure of the spare.

Tire-Pressure Warning Sensors

A tire-pressure sensor is mounted on each full-size wheel. These sensors do not require periodic maintenance. When a sensor's long-life lithium battery becomes discharged, the battery should be replaced by a qualified technician following procedures in Lexus service and repair publications.

Transmission

Inspect each transmission component for signs of leakage. If you discover any leakage, have it repaired immediately by a qualified technician.

Note: On the ES 350, the transmission and transmission fluid are a completely sealed unit. Therefore, periodic checks and replacement of the transmission fluid are not required, and there is no dipstick on the transmission. Any repairs that require adding or replacing fluid should be performed by a qualified technician following procedures in Lexus service and repair publications.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION

Model _____

Body style _____

In-service date _____

Mileage at delivery _____

Selling dealership _____

Selling dealership phone number _____

Key number _____

Vehicle Identification Number _____